

THE TEACH YOURSELF BOOKS
EDITED BY LEONARD CUTTS

CHINESE

**Uniform with this volume
and in the same
series**

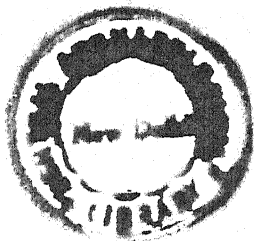
Teach Yourself Afrikaans
Teach Yourself Arabic
Teach Yourself Colloquial Arabic
Teach Yourself Czech
Teach Yourself Danish
Teach Yourself Dutch
Teach Yourself English for Swahili-speaking People
Teach Yourself English Grammar
Teach Yourself Good English
Teach Yourself Esperanto
Teach Yourself Finnish
Teach Yourself French
Teach Yourself Everyday French
Teach Yourself French Grammar
Teach Yourself French Phrase Book
Teach Yourself German
Teach Yourself German Grammar
Teach Yourself More German
Teach Yourself German Phrase Book
Teach Yourself German Reader
Teach Yourself Greek
Teach Yourself New Testament Greek
Teach Yourself Modern Greek
Teach Yourself Hebrew
Teach Yourself Icelandic
Teach Yourself Irish
Teach Yourself Italian
Teach Yourself Italian Phrase Book
Teach Yourself Japanese
Teach Yourself Latin
Teach Yourself Malay
Teach Yourself Norwegian
Teach Yourself Old English
Teach Yourself Modern Persian
Teach Yourself Polish
Teach Yourself Portuguese
Teach Yourself Russian
Teach Yourself Russian Phrase Book
Teach Yourself Samoan
Teach Yourself Serbo-Croat
Teach Yourself Serbo-Croatian Phrase Book
Teach Yourself Spanish
Teach Yourself Everyday Spanish
Teach Yourself Spanish Phrase Book
Teach Yourself Swahili
Teach Yourself Swedish
Teach Yourself Swedish Phrase Book
Teach Yourself Turkish
Teach Yourself Urdu
Teach Yourself Welsh

TEACH YOURSELF CHINESE

By

H. R. WILLIAMSON

M.A., B.D., D.Lit.



THE ENGLISH UNIVERSITIES PRESS LTD

102 NEWGATE STREET

LONDON E.C.1

First Printed 1947

44075....

17.2.1966

495.1

Wil...

This volume is published in the U.S.A. by
David McKay Company Inc., 750 Third Avenue,
New York, N.Y. 10017

*Printed in Great Britain for the English Universities Press Ltd.,
by Cox and Wyman Ltd.,
London, Reading and Fakenham*

PREFACE

MUCH of the world's progress in mutual understanding and co-operation depends on our being able to understand one another's speech, and on our acquaintance with each other's literature. With the idea of contributing a little towards these worthy objectives, I have prepared this short introduction to the language of the Chinese people, many of whom I have learned to respect, and whose culture I greatly admire.

I am conscious of many imperfections in the work, which has been prepared mainly in the course of long journeys.

I am greatly indebted to many friends who have co-operated with me in preparing the book for publication. Such include Mr. and Mrs. Su Cheng of the Chinese section of the B.B.C. who, with other Chinese co-workers there, have helped with the Chinese translation of the dialogues. In addition Mr. Su has written the whole of the Chinese characters at the end of the book. Professor Edwards of the School of Oriental Studies has given me many helpful suggestions, and I have found Professor Simon's book on the Study and Writing of Chinese Characters most useful. The Rev. A. J. Garnier, formerly General Secretary of the Christian Literature Society for China, has rendered generous help in the reading of the proofs. He has also prepared the valuable Dictionary and Character

Received from Mr. J. K. S. New Delhi 2/10/1942

Index at the end of the volume. I owe much also to my wife and daughter Evelyn for work on the manuscript itself.

Finally I should like to express my thanks to my publishers for their patience in waiting for the manuscript and for many courtesies attendant upon the preparation of the work for publication.

H. R. WILLIAMSON.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	1
GUIDE TO PRONUNCIATION	6
SPELLING CHART OF CHINESE WORDS	22
INTRODUCTION TO THE DIALOGUES—NOTES ON THE TONE	27
DIALOGUES	
1. A friend arrives	30
2. The Chinese teacher arrives	38
3. Conversation with Chinese teacher	44
4. Illustrating basic rules A.	52
5. " " " B.	60
6. Discussion on domestic matters	66
7. A Chinese and a foreigner meet	72
8. " " " " (<i>cont.</i>)	84
9. On the use of the numerals, A & B	90
10. Discussing the time, etc.	102
11. " "	110
12. Windows, doors, wages and the well	118
13. Domestic matters, (various)	130
14. Weights and Measures	140
15. A talk with the cook	148
16. Hiring a rickshaw	156
17. An intimate personal matter	162
18. Expressions of comparison	172

	PAGE
19. At the drapery store	180
20. At the shoe shop	188
21. Lighting, heating, etc.	194
22. Washing, waking, wages, etc.	200
23. The week's work in the home	206
24. Talking accounts with the cook	214
25. Travelling by road	222
26. Travelling by train	232
27. Travelling by steamer and train	242
28. Some common idioms	250
29. Clothing and personal matters	256
30. Discussion on tones, dialects, etc.	262
31. On time idioms	270
32. Talk with a Chinese official	276
33. Doctor and patient	286
34. Personal characteristics and relationships	294
35. On scissors, the tailor, etc.	300
36. Idiomatic phrases	306
37. A walk in the country	312
38. Proverbs	322
39. In the city	330
40. On war and peace	340
 CHINESE TEXT OF THE DIALOGUES	 353
GRAMMAR NOTES	425
CHARACTER INDEX IN THE WRITTEN FORM	437
HOW TO USE A DICTIONARY FROM THE RADICALS	503
INDEX TO CHINESE CHARACTERS ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED	517

INTRODUCTION

THIS book is issued in the hope that it will be useful to many who desire to acquaint themselves with the elements of the spoken and written language of the Chinese people. As a student of the language for nearly forty years I am well acquainted with the difficulties which confront the student who may have to work without the aid of a Chinese teacher. But I can assure the student at the outset, that if he or she will persevere for a period of six months, concentrating for two hours daily, genuine and satisfying progress will be made.

I recommend strongly that two friends should if possible study together. The main section of the book consists of forty dialogues. These should be recited aloud. If you can form a small group for study, the dialogues might be recited by couples in turn for the benefit and criticism of the rest. If you are working alone, by all means read the dialogues aloud, and endeavour to memorise them. As they are arranged in the main as connected discourses, memorising should be quite feasible.

If there should be a Chinese who knows the National Language (kuo yü) in your neighbourhood, avail yourself of his help. Your main difficulty will lie in acquiring the correct intonation of the words, and the right rhythm of the phrases and sentences. The best progress in this connection will be achieved by reading or conversing with a Chinese.

There are about 1,200 different characters in the book. These, if thoroughly learned, will enable the student to converse freely on matters of everyday importance. I urge the student to *write* the Chinese characters as the best means of memorising them, as the book is designed

to enable the student to read and write Basic Chinese as well as to speak it.

Don't let the difficulty of intonation unduly discourage you. For your comfort let me say that intonation varies considerably in different parts of China, and that the Chinese themselves experience difficulty in this respect as they move about the country.

PLAN AND SCOPE OF THE BOOK

1. *Sound Tables, Spelling Chart, Romanisation, Tone-marks.*

After reading this Introductory Chapter, the student should make himself thoroughly acquainted with the Table of Sounds and the Spelling Chart. From these it will be seen that there are 409 different sounds in the language, and that these are built up from sixty-two basic syllables, either independently or in combination.

No system of Romanisation has as yet been devised which reproduces the sounds of the Chinese language with perfect accuracy. But the divergencies between the sounds as actually spoken, and as reproduced by the system of Romanisation adopted in this book, are so slight that no discouragement need be felt on that account.

The system of Romanisation adopted is that of the late Sir Thomas Wade. The writer has found that system extremely helpful himself, and many of the better known writers of Chinese text-books and dictionaries, both British and American, like Hillier, Goodrich, Soothill, Giles, Wells-Williams and MacGillivray, adopted it. Dictionaries and text-books by these noted sinologists are likely to be on the market for many years to come. The Chinese Government has recently promulgated a new system of Romanisation which aims at showing the tone as well as the actual pronunciation of the words without extraneous aids. But as yet there are no dictionaries published in that particular system, and that

is a serious obstacle to those who want to study Chinese now.

The tones are marked by numbers, 1, 2, 3 and 4, both in the vocabularies which accompany the dialogues, and in connection with the Chinese character index which is included at the end of the book. This also is in line with the method adopted by the aforementioned scholars.

2. *The Dialogues.*

There are forty dialogues on various topics designed to make the student familiar with the terminology of everyday affairs, domestic, social, travel, personal, political and the like. The selection of the themes of these dialogues has been guided by a desire to meet the need of a student making his first contacts with the Chinese people.

Chinese is a living language, and is constantly changing in form and terminology. I have sought with expert Chinese assistance to select phrases and sentences as they are spoken by Chinese of average intelligence to-day. A few phrases of modern newspaper Chinese are introduced here and there, and I have not ignored altogether the older and picturesque language of Chinese etiquette. But the aim of the writer is to make the student feel at home with the ordinary folk in China to-day. The language is rich in proverbial expressions, and so I have devoted one lesson to that particular aspect of the colloquial.

3. *The Vocabularies.*

Each dialogue is accompanied by a vocabulary, which includes the new characters as they appear in Romanised and Chinese form, with their meaning and intonation. Most Chinese characters have many meanings. The vocabularies do not give exhaustive definitions of the characters. But the particular meaning of the character as found in the lesson under review is given, together

with the other more important meanings as found in the popular dictionaries.

4. *The Notes.*

Each dialogue also is followed by a few short notes, consisting chiefly of idiomatical and grammatical comments, designed to introduce the student gradually to the chief idioms and rules.

5. *The Chinese Text of the Dialogues.*

This section follows the dialogues in the Romanised form. Some students will perhaps choose to confine themselves to the Romanised section, and the writer knows many good speakers of Chinese who scarcely recognise a single Chinese character. But it is hoped that the student will include this section in his studies, as it will not only add to his interest in the spoken language, but will also prepare him for reading a Chinese newspaper, most of which are now printed in the colloquial style.

The two sections are separated in the book so that the student can test himself by trying to reproduce the Chinese from the English and Romanised section, and *vice versa*. That is one of the most profitable ways of learning the language. The student will note that the lessons in the Chinese section read from right to left and from top to bottom of the page. That is the way that Chinese is printed.

6. *The Grammar Section.*

The writer has endeavoured to introduce the student to the main rules of grammar gradually and piecemeal in the dialogues. But it seemed advisable to gather up the basic rules in this special section, which has been kept as compact as possible. The student can refer to this section at any time in the course of his study. The main purpose, however, in the mind of the student should

be to memorise the dialogues, sentence by sentence, phrase by phrase. If that is done the rules of grammar will be unconsciously acquired. Do not be too analytic in your approach to Chinese. Remember that a sentence in Chinese is the equivalent of a sentence in English. In other words, acquaint yourself with ideas and thoughts as they are expressed, rather than with individual words.

7. *The Writing of Chinese Characters.*

All the characters found in the dialogues have been reproduced as a Chinese writes them, and collated at the end of the book in the order in which they appear in the body of the book. The short introduction to this section gives the student the main rules of writing Chinese. He will be well advised to copy these characters, not only for the artistic interest which this will impart, but also for the aid it will afford to the memory. May I repeat that the best way to memorise the Chinese characters is to write them.

This section also forms a dictionary of the book, and is followed by a few paragraphs to guide the student in the use of a Chinese dictionary by means of the 214 Radicals.

In conclusion let me say that anyone of average intelligence and perseverance can gain a working knowledge of Chinese. So in the words of one of the Chinese proverbs which you will find in the book: "Don't mind going slow, as long as you keep going."

GUIDE TO PRONUNCIATION

This Chart or Guide represents an attempt to reproduce in the letters of the English alphabet the sounds of Chinese words as they are pronounced in the National or Official language. Admittedly any attempt of this kind is open to criticism, as the pronunciation of certain Chinese words cannot be exactly reproduced by the letters of the English alphabet. But the following table, comprising 409 different sounds, will be found to approximate sufficiently closely to the generally accepted Chinese pronunciation.

The system of "orthography" adopted is that of the late Sir Thomas Wade, which is found in the popular dictionaries and text-books produced by British and American scholars, like Wells-Williams, Giles, MacGillivray, Hillier, Soothill, etc.

The famous dictionary of K'ang-Hsi contains over 40,000 different Chinese characters. Giles' dictionary contains 10,859. But the actual number of different sounds (if we exclude for the moment the device of "intonation", which multiplies the sounds by anything from four to eight times this number, according to the district in which the language is spoken), is just over four hundred, accepting the limitation referred to in the first paragraph above.

The multiplication of basic sounds arrived at by "intonation" will be referred to separately.

Here then are the 409 different sounds found in Chinese.

Written No. form.	Approximate sound in English spelling.
1. A. Ah!	
2. Ai or Ngai. I as in bind, or ngai, the -ng being the final sound of -ing.	
3. An or Ngan. As in man.	

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|-----|-----------------|---|
| 4. | Ang or Ngang. | Ahng. |
| 5. | Ao or Ngao. | Ow as in how, owl, etc. |
| 6. | Cha. | Jah as in jar. |
| 7. | Ch'a. | Chah as in Charge, Charlie. |
| 8. | Chai. | Ji, the -j sound being the equivalent of the soft g in gibe. |
| 9. | Ch'ai. | Chi as in China. |
| 10. | Chan. | Jan as in January. |
| 11. | Ch'an. | Chann as in channel. |
| 12. | Chang. | Jahng. |
| 13. | Ch'ang. | Chahng. |
| 14. | Chao. | Jou as in joust. |
| 15. | Ch'ao. | Chow, the Peking dog, or chow as in chowder. |
| 16. | Chê. | Jer as in Jeremiah, the -ch being the equivalent of the soft g in germ. |
| 17. | Ch'ê. | Cher as in cherish. |
| 18. | Chên. | Jun as in junk. |
| 19. | Ch'ên. | Chun as in chunk. |
| 20. | Chêng. | Jung as in junction. |
| 21. | Ch'êng. | Chung, the "ung" as in bung. |
| 22. | Chi. | Jee as in jeep. |
| 23. | Ch'i. | Chee as in cheese. |
| 24. | Chia. | Jyah, the "y" being as short -i in bin, the whole being something like the -jia in Fujiama. |
| 25. | Ch'ia. | Chyah, the medial "y" being like short -i as in chin. |
| 26. | Ch'iai or K'ai. | Chi-eye, the -i being short as in chin, the -kai as in kite. |
| 27. | Chiang. | Jiahng, the -i being short. |
| 28. | Ch'iang. | Chiahng, the -i being short. |
| 29. | Chiao. | Giow, the -i being short and "ow" as in how. |
| 30. | Ch'iao. | Chiw, the -i being short and "ow" as in how. |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|-----|---------------|--|
| 31. | Chieh. | Jyeh, the -yeh being equivalent of -ye in yes, preceded by a short -i, <i>e.g.</i> , jiye, the whole sound being like -gia in collegian. |
| 32. | Ch'ieh. | Chyeh, the yeh being equivalent of ye in yes, preceded by a short -i. |
| 33. | Chien. | Jyen, the en sounding like the en in enter, and the -y like a short -i as in bin. |
| 34. | Ch'ien. | Chyen, the en sounding like the en in enter, and the -y like a short -i as in bin. |
| 35. | Chih. | Jirr, like the initial sound in giraffe. |
| 36. | Ch'ih. | Chirr, the nearest being the chir in chiropodist. |
| 37. | Chin. | Jin, the -j being like soft -g in ginger. |
| 38. | Ch'in. | Chin as in English or as in chink. |
| 39. | Ching. | Jing as in jingle. |
| 40. | Ch'ing. | Ching as heard in chink, without the final "k". |
| 41. | Chio. | Jeo or as -gio in prodigious. |
| 42. | Ch'io. | Cheo, the -eo as in geology. |
| 43. | Chiu. | Ju or Jew or Jioo, but the short -i sound must be pronounced between the -j and the -oo. |
| 44. | Ch'iu. | Chu or chioo, the -i being short as in bin, and the -oo sounding like -oo in ooze (<i>cf.</i> chew). For the above two sounds, parallels may be found in deuce, the -eu coming fairly close to the -iu of the Chinese, or tune, where the -u approximates fairly closely to the -iu in the Chinese. |
| 45. | Chiung. | Jyung, in which the -y is like a short -i as in bin, and the -ung is sounded like -ong in mongrel. In fact it is practically the Lancashire hung as in hunger, hungry and the like. |
| 46. | Ch'iung. | Chyung. And see the last. |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|-----|---------------|--|
| 47. | Cho. | Joh as in John, but drawled slightly like jorn, horn. |
| 48. | Ch'o. | Ch'oh, the -oh as in chores. |
| 49. | Chou. | Joe as in Jones. |
| 50. | Ch'ou. | Choe as in anchovy. |
| 51. | Chu. | Ju, the -u as -oo in moon. (<i>N.B.</i> —There is no suggestion of a short -i after the J as suggested for chiu above.) |
| 52. | Ch'u. | Choo as in choose. |
| 53. | Chua. | Jwah. |
| 54. | Ch'ua. | Chwah. |
| 55. | Chuai. | Jwi, the -i being long as in wine. |
| 56. | Ch'uai. | Chwi, the -i being long as in wine. |
| 57. | Chuan. | Jwan, the -an as in man. |
| 58. | Ch'uan. | Chwan, the -an as in man. |
| 59. | Chuang. | Jwahng. |
| 60. | Ch'uang. | Chwahng. |
| 61. | Chui. | Jway. |
| 62. | Ch'ui. | Chway. |
| 63. | Chun. | Jun, the -un being like the -on in motion (the Lancashire -un). |
| 64. | Ch'un. | Chun, the -un being like the -on in motion (the Lancashire -un). |
| 65. | Chung. | Jung, the -un being like the -on in motion (the Lancashire -un). |
| 66. | Ch'ung. | Chung, the -un being like the -on in motion (the Lancashire -un). |
| 67. | Ch'uo. | Chwo, the -o being short as in lock. |
| 68. | Chü. | Jü, the -ü being as in French. Say -oo with pursed lips, the tip of the tongue being close to the front teeth. |
| 69. | Ch'ü. | Chü, the -ü being French as in the last. |
| 70. | Chüan. | Jüan, the -ü being French and -an as in man. |
| 71. | Ch'üan. | Chüan, the -ü being French and -an as in man. |

Written
No. form.

Approximate sound in English spelling.

72. Chüeh. Jüe, the -ü being French and -e as in yes.
73. Ch'üeh. Chüe, the -ü being French and -e as in yes.
74. Chün. Jün, the -ü being French and -i very short.
75. Ch'ün. Chüin, the -ü being French and -i very short.
76. Ê or Ngê. Er as in hesitant speech, or as -er in herd.
77. Ên or Ngên. Un as in under.
78. Êrh. Er as in her, tip of tongue pointing to roof
of the mouth and mouth slightly open.
79. Fa. Fah as in father.
80. Fan. As in fancy.
81. Fang. Fahng.
82. Fei. Fay as in faint.
83. Fên. Fun as in funny.
84. Fêng. Fung, the fun as in English.
85. Fo. For as in fortune, or the -o as -oa in hoary.
86. Fou. Foe, the -oe sounded as the -o in photo.
87. Fu. Foo as in fool.
88. Ha. Hah as the har in harness, with the -r scarcely
sounded.
89. Hai. Hi as in high.
90. Han. Han as in handy.
91. Hang. Hahng.
92. Hao. As in how.
93. Hê. Hu as in huddle.
94. Hei. As in hay.
95. Hên. As in hun.
96. Hêng. As in hung.
97. Ho. Hoar as in hoary.
98. Hou. As hoe.
99. Hsi. She, although the -h is a little lighter than
in the English, with the upper teeth protruding
slightly.
100. Hsia. Shya, the -h being light, the -y being like -i
in bin, and the -a being short as in sham.
101. Hsiang. Shyahng, the -h being light, the -y being
like -i in bin, and the -a being long as in father.

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|------|---------------|---|
| 102. | Hsiao. | Shyow, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and the -ow as in how. |
| 103. | Hsieh. | Shye, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and the -ye as in yes. |
| 104. | Hsien. | Shyen, the -h being light, the -y being like -i in bin, and yen like the Japanese coin. |
| 105. | Hsin. | Shin, the -h being light. |
| 106. | Hsing. | Shing, the -h being light. |
| 107. | Hsio. | Sheo, the -h being light, almost as in sheol, with -e like short -i. |
| 108. | Hsiu. | Shyou, the -h being light and you as in English. |
| 109. | Hsiung. | Shyung, the -h being light, the -y being like short -in in bin, and the -un in -ung being like the -on in motion. |
| 110. | Hsü. | Shü, the -ü being the French -ü. |
| 111. | Hsüan. | Shüan, the -ü being the French -ü and the -an as in man. |
| 112. | Hsüeh. | Shüe, the -ü being the French -ü and the -e as in yes. |
| 113. | Hsün. | Shüin, the -ü being the French -ü and the -i short as in pin. |
| 114. | Hu. | Hoo as in hoot. |
| 115. | Hua. | Hwah. |
| 116. | Huai. | Why as in English. |
| 117. | Huan. | Hwan, with the -an as in can. |
| 118. | Huang. | Hwahng. |
| 119. | Hui. | Hway, the -way as in sway. |
| 120. | Hun. | 'Hun, the -un being like the -on in motion. |
| 121. | Hung. | Hung, the -un being like the -on in motion. |
| 122. | Huo. | Hwo, the -wo being like the -wo in wonder, or the whole like -hoa in hoary. |
| 123. | I. | Ee as in weed. |
| 124. | Jan. | Ran, the J being practically the English R. |
| 125. | Jang. | Rahng, the J being practically the English R. |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|------|---------------|---|
| 126. | Jao. | Row, the J being practically the English R and -ow as in how. |
| 127. | Jê. | Ru as in rubble. |
| 128. | Jên. | Run as in English. |
| 129. | Jêng. | Rung as in English. |
| 130. | Jih. | Rirr, the -irr being like the -hir in chiropodist, with the lightest possible emphasis on the -r. |
| 131. | Jo. | Ro as in roster, robin, etc. |
| 132. | Jou. | Roe as in English. |
| 133. | Ju. | Rue as in English. |
| 134. | Juan. | Ruan, the -u being neither short nor long and the -an short as in man. |
| 135. | Jui. | Ruay, the -u being neither short nor long and the -ay as in hay. |
| 136. | Jun. | Run, but with the -un sounding like the -on in motion. |
| 137. | Jung. | Rung, but with the -un sounding like the -on in motion. |
| 138. | Ka. | Gah as in garden. |
| 139. | K'a. | Kah as in card. |
| 140. | Kai. | Gi as the first syllable of gynecology. |
| 141. | K'ai. | Ki as in kind. |
| 142. | Kan. | Gan as in began. |
| 143. | K'an. | Kan as the English can. |
| 144. | Kang. | Gahng, the -g being hard as in garden and the -ah as the long -a in father. |
| 145. | K'ang. | Kahng, the -ah being like long -a in father. |
| 146. | Kao. | Gow, the -g being hard as in garden and the -ow as in cow. |
| 147. | K'ao. | Cow as in English. |
| 148. | Kei. | Gay as in English. |
| 149. | Kên. | Gun as in English. |
| 150. | K'ên. | Kun sounded as the first syllable in country. |
| 151. | Kêng. | Gung, the gun being as in English. |
| 152. | K'êng. | Kung, the -un as in English gun. |
| 153. | Ko. | Go as in gore, with -o modified by -r. |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|------|---------------|---|
| 154. | K'o. | Ko as in cord, with the -o modified by the -r. |
| 155. | Kou. | Go as in English. |
| 156. | K'ou. | As coa in coat. |
| 157. | Ku. | Goo, the -g being hard as in gum and the -oo as in moon. |
| 158. | K'u. | Coo as in English. |
| 159. | Kua. | Gwah, the -g being hard as in gun and the -ah long as in father. |
| 160. | K'ua. | Kwah as in quarrel. |
| 161. | Kuai. | Gwi, the -g being hard as in guy and the -i as in wine. |
| 162. | K'uai. | Kwi, the -i being long as in wine, the whole as -qui in quite. |
| 163. | Kuan. | Gwan, the -g being hard as in gun and -an as in man. |
| 164. | K'uan. | Kwan, the -an as in man. |
| 165. | Kuang. | Gwahng, the -g being hard as in gun and the -ah like long -a in father. |
| 166. | K'uang. | Kwahng, the -ah like long -a in father. |
| 167. | Kuei. | Gway, hard -g. |
| 168. | K'uei. | Kway, as the -qua in equator. |
| 169. | Kun. | Gun, -g being hard and -un as the -on in motion. |
| 170. | K'un. | Kun, the -un as the -on in motion. |
| 171. | Kung. | Gung, the -g being hard and the -un as -on in motion. |
| 172. | K'ung. | Kung, the -un as the -on in motion. |
| 173. | Kuo. | Gwo, hard -g and the -wo like the carter's whoa! |
| 174. | K'uo. | Kwo. See 173; like the -qua in equal. |
| 175. | La. | As la in pentatonic scale. |
| 176. | Lai. | Lie as in English. |
| 177. | Lan. | As in languor. |
| 178. | Lang. | Lahng. |
| 179. | Lao. | Low, the -ow as in cow. |
| 180. | Lê. | Lo as in gallon. |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|------|---------------|--|
| 181. | Lei. | Lay as in English. |
| 182. | Lêng. | Lung as in English. |
| 183. | Li. | Lee as in leeward. |
| 184. | Lia. | Liah, the -i short as in gin, the -ah long as in yard. |
| 185. | Liang. | Liahng. See 184. |
| 186. | Liao. | Liow, the -i short and the -ow as in cow. |
| 187. | Lieh. | Lieh, the -i short and the -eh as the -u in butt. |
| 188. | Lien. | Lien, the -i short as in bin and the -en as in hen. |
| 189. | Lin. | As in linen. |
| 190. | Ling. | As in filling. |
| 191. | Liu. | Lioo, the -i being short as in bin and the -oo as in ooze. |
| 192. | Lo. | Like the -lo in lord. |
| 193. | Lou. | Low as in below. |
| 194. | Lu. | Like the -loo in balloon. |
| 195. | Luan. | Lu-an, the -lu as the -loo in look and -an as in man. |
| 196. | Lun. | The -un as the -on in motion. |
| 197. | Lung. | The -un as the -on in motion. |
| 198. | Lü. | The French -ü. |
| 199. | Lüan. | The French -ü and -an as in man. |
| 200. | Lüeh. | The French -ü and the -eh as the -u in butt. |
| 201. | Ma. | As in English. Ma, nearly mar. |
| 202. | Mai. | My as in English. |
| 203. | Man. | As in English. |
| 204. | Mang. | Mahng. |
| 205. | Mao. | Mow, the -ow as in how. |
| 206. | Mei. | As in English may. |
| 207. | Mên. | As Mon in Monday. |
| 208. | Mêng. | The -en as -on in Monday. |
| 209. | Mi. | As English me. |
| 210. | Miao. | Miow, the -i being short as in bin and the -ow as in cow. |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|------|---------------|--|
| 211. | Mieh. | Mieh, the -i being short as in bin and the -eh as -u in butt. |
| 212. | Mien. | Mi-en, the -i being short as in bin and the -en as in hen. |
| 213. | Min. | As in English mint. |
| 214. | Ming. | As in English looming. |
| 215. | Miu. | As in English mew. |
| 216. | Mo. | More. |
| 217. | Mou. | Mow a meadow. |
| 218. | Mu. | Moo as cows do. |
| 219. | Na. | As in English nasty. |
| 220. | Nai. | Nigh. |
| 221. | Nan. | As in English Nancy. |
| 222. | Nang. | Nahng. |
| 223. | Nao. | Now, meaning at present. |
| 224. | Nei. | Nay. |
| 225. | Nen. | Nun, as in English. |
| 226. | Neng. | Nung, the -ung as in lung. |
| 227. | Ni. | Knee. |
| 228. | Niang. | Ni-ahng, the -i being short as in bin and the -ah long as in father. |
| 229. | Niao. | Ni-ow, the -i short and the -ow as in cow. |
| 230. | Nieh. | Ni-eh, the -i short and the -eh as the -u in butt. An alternative would be the -ia in brilliant. |
| 231. | Nien. | Ni-en, the -i short and the -en as in hen. |
| 232. | Nin. | As in nincompoop. |
| 233. | Ning. | Ning as in beginning. |
| 234. | Nio. | Nio as in quaternion. |
| 235. | Niu. | New as in English. |
| 236. | No. | Noah of the Ark. |
| 237. | Nou. | No as in English. |
| 238. | Nu. | Noo as in noon. |
| 239. | Nuan. | Nüan, the -ü as in French and the -an as in man. |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|------|---------------|--|
| 240. | Nung. | Nung, the -un as -on in motion. |
| 241. | Nü. | Nü, the French -ü. |
| 242. | O or Ngo. | Oar as in English, or Ngoar. |
| 243. | Ou or Ngou. | Owe as in English, or Ngowe. |
| 244. | Pa. | Bah! as in English. |
| 245. | P'a. | Pa as in English. |
| 246. | Pai. | Buy. |
| 247. | P'ai. | Pie as in piebald. |
| 248. | Pan. | Ban as in band. |
| 249. | P'an. | Pan as in English. |
| 250. | Pang. | Bahng, the -ah being as the long -a in father. |
| 251. | P'ang. | Pahng, the -ah being as the long -a in father. |
| 252. | Pao. | Bow, the -ow as in how. |
| 253. | P'ao. | Pow as in powder. |
| 254. | Pei. | Bay as in English. |
| 255. | P'ei. | Pay as in English. |
| 256. | Pên. | Bun as in bundle. |
| 257. | P'ên. | Pun as in pundit. |
| 258. | Pêng. | Bung as in English. |
| 259. | P'êng. | Pung, the -ung as in the last. |
| 260. | Pi. | Bee. |
| 261. | P'i. | Pea. |
| 262. | Piao. | Bi-ow, the -i being short as in bin and -ow as in how. |
| 263. | P'iao. | Pi-ow, the -i being short as in pin and -ow as in how. |
| 264. | Pieh. | Bi-eh, the -ieh being like the -ia in brilliant. |
| 265. | P'ieh. | Pi-eh, the -ieh being like the -ia in brilliant. |
| 266. | Pien. | Bi-en, the -ien being like -ien in Oriental. |
| 267. | P'ien. | Pi-en, the -ien being like -ien in Oriental. |
| 268. | Pin. | Bin as in English. |
| 269. | P'in. | Pin as in English. |
| 270. | Ping. | Bing as in scrubbing. |
| 271. | P'ing. | Ping as in shopping. |
| 272. | Po. | Boa as in feather-boas. |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|------|---------------|---|
| 273. | P'o. | Por as in port but the -r only lightly sounded. |
| 274. | Pou. | Bow, rhyming with show. |
| 275. | P'ou. | Poe, Edgar Allan, rhyming with toe. |
| 276. | Pu. | Bu as in bush, or Boo as in boot. |
| 277. | P'u. | Poo as in pool. |
| 278. | Sa. | Sah, sounded as in sartorial, with light -r sound. |
| 279. | Sai. | Sigh as in sight. |
| 280. | San. | San as in sanatorium. |
| 281. | Sang. | Sahng, the -ah long as the -a in father. |
| 282. | Sao. | Sow, rhyming with now. |
| 283. | Sê. | Su as in sun. |
| 284. | Sên. | Sun as in English. |
| 285. | Sêng. | Sung as in English. |
| 286. | Sha. | Shah of Persia. |
| 287. | Shai. | Shy as in English. |
| 288. | Shan. | Shan as in shanty. |
| 289. | Shang. | Shahng, the -ah like long -a in father. |
| 290. | Shao. | Shou as in shout, rhyming with snout. |
| 291. | Shê. | Like shir in shirt. |
| 292. | Shên. | Shun as in English. |
| 293. | Shêng. | Shung, the -un as in the last. |
| 294. | Shih. | Shih, almost like the chi- in chivalry, but
with the -i carrying a slight -r sound after it. |
| 295. | Shou. | Show as in English. |
| 296. | Shu. | Shoe as in English. |
| 297. | Shua. | Shwah. |
| 298. | Shuai. | Shwy, the -wy as in why. |
| 299. | Shuan. | Shwan, the -an as in man. |
| 300. | Shuang. | Shwahng. |
| 301. | Shui. | Shway. |
| 302. | Shun. | Sh-un, the -un as the -on in motion. |
| 303. | Shuo. | Shwo, the -wo as in won. |
| 304. | So. | Soa as in soar. |
| 305. | Sou. | Sow, rhyming with mow. |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|------|---------------|--|
| 306. | Ssu. | The sound when men are hissing, Ssss . . . ssss . . . followed by the -u lightly sounded. If you say bus as in omnibus, carry on the final -s with the sound of the preceding -u to follow; you will get somewhere near the correct pronunciation. |
| 307. | Su. | Soo as in soothing. |
| 308. | Suan. | Swan as in swank. |
| 309. | Sui. | Sway. |
| 310. | Sun. | S followed by -un with the sound of -on in motion. |
| 311. | Sung. | S followed by -un as -on in motion and -g. |
| 312. | Ta. | Dah as in dart, but with -r very lightly sounded. |
| 313. | T'a. | Ta as the child says thank you. |
| 314. | Tai. | Dye as in English. |
| 315. | T'ai. | Tie as in English. |
| 316. | Tan. | Dan as in Daniel. |
| 317. | T'an. | Tan as in English. |
| 318. | Tang. | Dahng. |
| 319. | T'ang. | T'ahng. |
| 320. | Tao. | Dow, rhyming with now as in down. |
| 321. | T'ao. | Tow, rhyming with now as in town. |
| 322. | Tê. | Der, almost as the -der in yonder, but with -r scarcely sounded. |
| 323. | T'ê. | Ter, almost as the -ter in daughter, but with -r scarcely sounded. |
| 324. | Tei. | Day. |
| 325. | T'ei. | Tay, the river of that name. |
| 326. | Têng. | Dung as in English. |
| 327. | T'êng. | Tung as in tungsten. |
| 328. | Ti. | Dee, the river of that name. |
| 329. | T'i. | Tea as in English. |
| 330. | Tiao. | Di-ow, short -i as in bin, with -ow as in how. |
| 331. | T'iao. | Ti-ow, short -i as in bin, with -ow as in how. |
| 332. | Tieh. | Di-eh, the -ieh being like the -ia in brilliant. |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|------|---------------|--|
| 333. | T'ieh. | Ti-eh, the -ieh being like the -ia in <i>brilliant</i> . |
| 334. | Tien. | Di-en, short -i as in <i>bin</i> , with -en as in <i>hen</i> . |
| 335. | T'ien. | Ti-en, short -i as in <i>bin</i> , with -en as in <i>hen</i> . |
| 336. | Ting. | Ding as in <i>pudding</i> . |
| 337. | T'ing. | Ting as in <i>putting</i> . |
| 338. | To. | Doa, almost like the -dore in <i>adore</i> , with -r lightly stressed. |
| 339. | T'o. | Toa, almost like <i>tore</i> , but -r scarcely stressed. |
| 340. | Tou. | Doe as in <i>English</i> . |
| 341. | T'ou. | Toe as in <i>English</i> . |
| 342. | Tsa. | Dzah, nearly like <i>Tsar</i> of <i>Russia</i> . |
| 343. | Ts'a. | Tsah. |
| 344. | Tsai. | Dzigh, rhyming with <i>sigh</i> . |
| 345. | Ts'ai. | Tsigh, rhyming with <i>sigh</i> . |
| 346. | Tsan. | Dzan, the -an as in <i>man</i> . |
| 347. | Ts'an. | Tsan, the -an as in <i>man</i> . |
| 348. | Tsang. | Dzahng. |
| 349. | Ts'ang. | Tsahng. |
| 350. | Tsao. | Dzow, the -ow as in <i>how</i> . |
| 351. | Ts'ao. | Tsow, the -ow as in <i>how</i> . |
| 352. | Tsê. | Dzu, the -u sound as in <i>sun</i> . |
| 353. | Ts'ê. | Tsu, the -u sound as in <i>sun</i> . |
| 354. | Tsei. | Dzay, rhyming with <i>hay</i> . |
| 355. | Tsên. | Dzun, rhyming with <i>run</i> . |
| 356. | Ts'ên. | Tsun, rhyming with <i>run</i> . |
| 357. | Tsêng. | Dzung, rhyming with <i>bung</i> . |
| 358. | Ts'êng. | Tsung, rhyming with <i>bung</i> . |
| 359. | Tso. | Dzoa, rhyming with <i>boa</i> . |
| 360. | Ts'o. | Tsoa, rhyming with <i>boa</i> . |
| 361. | Tsou. | Dzoe, rhyming with <i>doe</i> . |
| 362. | Ts'ou. | Tsoe, rhyming with <i>toe</i> . |
| 363. | Tsu. | Dzoo, rhyming with <i>zoo</i> . |
| 364. | Ts'u. | Ts'oo, rhyming with <i>too</i> . |
| 365. | Tsuan. | Dzwan, the -an as in <i>man</i> . |
| 366. | Ts'uan. | Tswan, the -an as in <i>man</i> . |
| 367. | Tsui. | Dzway. |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|------|---------------|---|
| 368. | Ts'ui. | Tsway. |
| 369. | Tsun. | Dzun, the -un as the -on in motion. |
| 370. | Ts'un. | Tsun, the -un as the -on in motion. |
| 371. | Tsung. | Dzung, the -un as the -on in motion. |
| 372. | Ts'ung. | Tsung, the -un as the -on in motion. |
| 373. | Tu. | Do as in English. |
| 374. | T'u. | Too as in English. |
| 375. | Tuan. | Dwan, the -an as in man. |
| 376. | T'uan. | Twan, the -an as in man. |
| 377. | Tui. | Dway. |
| 378. | T'ui. | Tway. |
| 379. | Tun. | Dun, but with the -un as the -on in motion. |
| 380. | T'un. | Tun, but with the -un as the -on in motion. |
| 381. | Tung. | Dung, but with the -un as the -on in motion. |
| 382. | T'ung. | Tung, but with the -un as the -on in motion. |
| 383. | Tzu. | Dzuh, with teeth closed, lips open, tip of tongue pointing downwards and close against the lower front teeth. |
| 384. | Tz'u. | Tsuh, with teeth closed, lips open, tip of tongue pointing downwards and close against the lower front teeth. Take guts, say the -ts and carry on some of the preceding -u. |
| 385. | Wa. | Wah, the -ah as the -a in jar. |
| 386. | Wai. | Wye as the river of that name. |
| 387. | Wan. | Wan, the -an as in man. |
| 388. | Wang. | Wahng. |
| 389. | Wei. | Way. |
| 390. | Wên. | Won as in English. |
| 391. | Wêng. | Wung, to rhyme with lung as in English. |
| 392. | Wo. | Whoa as the carter to his horse. |
| 393. | Wu. | Woo as in English. |
| 394. | Ya. | Yah, almost like -yar in yard, but with scarcely any -r sound. |
| 395. | Yai. | Yigh, to rhyme with sigh. |
| 396. | Yang. | Yahng. |
| 397. | Yao. | Yow, to rhyme with cow. |

- | No. | Written form. | Approximate sound in English spelling. |
|------|---------------|---|
| 398. | Yeh. | Ye as in yes. |
| 399. | Yen. | Yen, the Japanese coin. |
| 400. | Yi. | Yih, the -i short as in bin. |
| 401. | Yin. | Yin. |
| 402. | Ying. | Ying. |
| 403. | Yo. | Yoa, to rhyme with boa. |
| 404. | Yu. | You as in English. |
| 405. | Yung. | Yung, with the -un as the -on in motion. |
| 406. | Yü. | Y, with French -ü. |
| 407. | Yüan. | Yü-an, the -ü being French and the -an as in man. |
| 408. | Yüeh. | Yü-eh, the -ü being French and the -eh like -u in butt. |
| 409. | Yün. | Yün, the -ü being French and the -i very short, almost unsounded. |

SPELLING CHART OF CHINESE WORDS

The 409 different sounds, which are found in the Guide to Pronunciation, and which, within the limits of the Roman alphabet, represent all the sounds in the Chinese language as spoken to-day, are made up of sixty-two separate syllabic sounds, if we confine ourselves to what are usually termed Initials and Finals. Chinese has often been designated a monosyllabic language. That is true in the sense that all the separate characters, or words, in the language can be pronounced as one syllable. However, on close analysis, it is found that many of these so-called monosyllables can be more accurately regarded as di-syllables or even tri-syllables, allowing for a Medial between the Initial and Final sounds. Moreover, in the language as spoken to-day, very frequently two or even three separate characters are required to denote a single concept or term.

The student will find below a chart of the sixty-two sounds which, in various combinations, form the 409 different sounds of the language. These are divided primarily into two sections, called respectively Initials and Finals. There are twenty-four Initials and thirty-eight Finals. Of the Finals, however, eleven sounds are used independently to form separate words, although they also enter into combination with other sounds. These eleven sounds are listed in a separate Section III.

I. INITIALS

Written
No. form.

English equivalent.

1. Ch. J as in jeep.
2. Ch'. Ch as in cheap.
3. F. F as in fan.
4. H. H, the aspirate, as in hand.

Written
No. form.

English equivalent.

5. Hs. Sh, a sound varying in different parts of China between a real -sh as in shell, and a pure -s as in sell, varying according to the extent to which the upper teeth are advanced beyond the lower when the sound is made.
6. J. R as in run, ran, etc., varying again between -r and -y.
7. K. G hard as in gay, gum, etc.
8. K'. K as in kerb, and many initial hard c's like can, card.
9. L. L as in lane, long, etc.
10. M. M as in man, maze, etc.
11. N. N as in nap, near, nose, etc.
12. P. B as in bow, band, bin, etc.
13. P'. P as in pin, pool, pan, etc.
14. S. S as in sand, sum, sin, etc.
15. Sh. Sh as in shun, shot, etc., but also varying between this and -s, approximating especially to the latter when preceding -a, -ai, -an.
16. Ss. Ss, a hissing initial sound as in snake. To produce this sound say "bus" as in omnibus, then add the sound of the "-u" which precedes. Put "the b-us" in reverse!
17. T. D as in done, dab, etc.
18. T'. T as in time, tan, tin, etc.
19. Ts. Dz, the terminal sound of pods -ds, or the initial of Tsar.
20. Ts'. Ts, the terminal sound of pots -ts.
21. Tz. Z, the terminal sound of goods -ds, or as the -z in zebra. It is difficult to distinguish between 19 and 21. If possible make the sound in 19 a little lighter.
22. Tz'. Ts as you hear the terminal in blitz -tz.
23. W. W as in wand, win, won, etc.
24. Y. Y as in you, yellow, etc.

II. FINALS

[*Note.*—Di-syllables with medial vowels -i, -ǔ or -ü are eighteen in number. They are 35-40, 44-46, 50-54, 57 and 59-61.]

- | Written
No. form. | English equivalent. |
|---|---------------------|
| 25. A. Ah, the long "a" in father, rather, etc. | |
| 26. Ai. I as in wine, sigh, lime, etc. | |
| 27. An. An, shortly sounded as in man, can, tan, etc. | |
| 28. Ang. Ahng, with the "a" always long as in father, etc. | |
| 29. Ao. Ow as in owl, how, etc. | |
| 30. E. Er, like the -ea in earn, learn, etc., the -r scarcely being heard. | |
| 31. Ei. Ay as in way, pay, say, etc. | |
| 32. En. Un as in junk, hung, under, etc. | |
| 33. Eng. Ung as in bung, lung, sung, etc. | |
| 34. I. Ee as in peep, jeep, deep, etc. | |
| 35. Ia (medial -i). Ya, the -a being short as in Yankee, yam, etc. | |
| 36. Iai (medial -i). Yai, a short -i as in bin, followed by a long -i as in high. The sound is represented by the e-i- in b-e(h)-i(nd). | |
| 37. Iang (medial -i). Yang, short -i as in 36, followed by -ahng as in 28. | |
| 38. Iao (medial -i). Yao, short -i as in 36, followed by -ow as in 29. | |
| 39. Ieh (medial -i). Yeh, short -i, followed by the -u sound in butt, or like the -ie in experience. | |
| 40. Ien (medial -i). I-en like the -ien in experience, or short -i as in 36, followed by -en as in hen. | |
| 41. Ih. Irr as -ir in chiroprapist or in giraffe. | |
| 42. In. In as in English, bin, gin, etc. | |
| 43. Ing. Ing as in English, telling, willing, etc. | |
| 44. Io (medial -i). Yo like the -io sound in prodigious. | |
| 45. Iu (medial -i). Yiu as in view or the initial -u in union. | |

- | Written
No. form. | English equivalent. |
|-----------------------|--|
| 46. Iung (medial -i). | Yung, in which an initial short -i as in 36 is followed by -ung sounded like -ong in mongrel, or as the Lancastrian pronounces the -ung in hungry. |
| 47. O. | Either -oa as in oar, soar, etc., or as in whoa!, the carter's "halt" to his horse. |
| 48. Ou. | Oe as in toe, foe, etc. |
| 49. U. | Oo as in choose, noose, etc. |
| 50. Ua (medial ü). | Wa like the -ua in suave. |
| 51. Uai (medial ü). | Wi as in wine, wide, etc. |
| 52. Uan (medial ü). | Wan, with the -an short as in man, can, etc. |
| 53. Uang (medial ü). | Wang, with the -a long as -ah in 25. |
| 54. Ui (medial ü). | Way, but approximating to the French oui (the difference between 31 and 54 lies here). |
| 55. Un. | Un as the Lancastrian pronounces the -un in hungry. |
| 56. Ung. | Ung as the Lancastrian pronounces the -ung in hungry. |
| 57. Uo (medial ü). | Wo as in woman, wooden, etc. |
| 58. Ü. | Ü as in French, as you would say "oo" with pursed lips, with the tip of the tongue close to the front teeth. |
| 59. Üan (medial ü). | U-an, the French -ü, followed by -an as in man. |
| 60. Üeh (medial ü). | U-eh, the French -ü, followed by -u as in butt. |
| 61. Ün (medial ü). | U-in, the French -ü, followed by -in with -i very short. |
| 62. Erh. | Er as in earnest, the -r with a burr, thus distinguishing between this and 30. |

III. FINALS USED INDEPENDENTLY

Eleven of the Final sounds as found in Section II are also used as rather independent sounds. But when so used some of them, as indicated below, are preceded by either an -ng or a -w in certain districts of China. In others there is no such modification, but as the modification is very common it is well to note it.

The eleven sounds referred to are as follows:—

- 63. A *or* Nga, as 25.
- 64. Ai *or* Ngai, as 26.
- 65. An *or* Ngan, as 27.
- 66. Ang *or* Ngang, as 28.
- 67. Ao *or* Ngao, as 29.
- 68. E *or* Nge, as 30.
- 69. En *or* Ngen, as 32.
- 70. I, as 34.
- 71. O *or* Ngo *or* Wo, as 47.
- 72. Ou *or* Ngou, as 48.
- 73. Erh, as 62.

INTRODUCTION TO THE DIALOGUES

NOTES ON THE TONES

The tones in Chinese are inflections of the voice, and the particular inflection of the voice when pronouncing a word determines the meaning. To put the matter in another way, tones serve the purpose of distinguishing one word from another. It is therefore important that attention should be paid to them.

As indicated in Dialogue No. 30, five tones are recognised in what used to be called Mandarin, or the official language of China. This is being gradually supplanted by the National language, "kuo yü", but in pronouncing this National language, the five tones of the old Mandarin are still current. It is true that the tendency is for the "Ju shêng" (entering or fifth tone) to die out. But it is still in common use in many parts of China, particularly in the north-west, so it is just as well that the student should be prepared for it.

The names of the tones are—

1. Shang P'ing Shêng, or Upper even.
2. Hsia P'ing Shêng, or Lower even.
3. Shang Shêng, or Rising tone.
4. Ch'ü Shêng, or Departing tone.
5. Ju Shêng or Entering tone.

As commonly heard in the vicinity of Peking, the true home of the Mandarin language with its four tones (1-4), the first is a falling tone, uttered somewhat sharply; the second is a curt upper rising tone; the third is a long rising tone broken in the middle; while the fourth is what its designation more or less suggests, namely, a short finishing falling away intonation. The "Ju shêng", as the writer is familiar with it, is a very abrupt

intonation in which the vowel sounds are shortened and hardened. It is usual to show this by romanising the characters in this tone by a final "h". E.g., in Shansi the character "ch'u" 出 to go out, is spoken as a "Ju shêng" and pronounced "ch'üh". "Cho tzu" 桌子 table, normally in the first tone, is pronounced "Chŭōh tzu" in the "Ju shêng".

It is practically impossible to convey the actual sounds of these tones in writing, but try to find a Chinese to repeat the lessons with you, and observe the inflections of his voice as he pronounces the different words.

It should be noted that the tones alter in different combinations, and also that they vary considerably in different parts of China.

I have tried to indicate the character of the tones as pronounced in Peking and vicinity, with the addition of the "Ju shêng" as I am familiar with it in Shansi province.

THE DIALOGUES

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 1

- 第 Ti.⁴ Number, degree, used to introduce ordinal numbers.
- 一 I.¹ One.
- 課 K'o.⁴ Task, exercise.
1. 門 Mén.² Door, gate.
- 口 K'ou.³ Mouth, opening.
- 有 Yu.³ There is, there are, has, have.
- 人 Jên.² Man.
2. 誰 Shui.² Who, whom.
3. 我 Wo.³ I, me.
4. 是 Shih.⁴ Is, are, am, etc.
5. 不 Pu.¹ No, not.
- 知 Chih.¹ To know.
- 道 Tao.⁴ Way, truth.
- 知道 Chih-tao. To know.
6. 去 Ch'ü.⁴ To go.
- 看 K'an.⁴ To look, to look at.
- 看一看 K'an i k'an. To look, see.
7. 用 Yung.¹ Need, use.
- 叫 Chiao.⁴ To call, cause, order.

8. *H. Lung Fu.*

8. Lung Fu!

9. *S. Ai.*

9. Ai! (the servant's response).

10. *H. Lai pa.*

10. Come here!

"Pa" is used to add emphasis to the verb, especially when giving a command. It has other uses which will be explained later. But you should not use "pa" when addressing your equals or superiors, unless you are on extremely familiar terms with them.

11. *S. Ai!*

11. Yes!

12. *H. Mên k'ou yu jên.*

Ni ch'ü, k'an i
k'an shih shui.

12. There is someone at
the door. Go and
see who it is.

The use of "Ni" you, in addressing servants, etc., is permissible. Care should be exercised in using it in speaking directly to others. Sometimes the word "Nin" is used to address superiors.

13. *S. Ai.*

13. Right!

14. *S. (to friend at door).*

Hsien shêng kuei
hsing.

14. What is your name,
sir?

"Kuei" honourable, the commonest form of polite epithet in addressing others. There are equivalents of question marks in Chinese, but in sentences like this they are unnecessary. See sentence 15 for an example.

15. *F. Wo hsing Li. Wang*

Hsien shêng tsai
chia ma.

15. My name is Lee. Is
Mr. Wang at home?

I have said (see 5 above) that the first personal pronoun is often omitted. It is, however, more commonly used than, say, thirty years ago. There are at least three ways of replying to the question in sentence 14:—

Chien hsing Li. Humble name Li.

Wo chien hsing Li. I humble name Li.

Pu kan tang, wo chien hsing Li. I am unworthy, I humble name Li.

Pu kan tang. Lit. "not dare bear (such honorific address)" is a very common reply to any complimentary or polite remarks. "Ma" is one of the Chinese marks of interrogation.

8. 隆福 Lung-Fu. A name (for the servant in this case).
9. 哎 Ai.³ Exclamation.
10. 來 Lai.² to come.
吧 Pa.⁴ Final particle.
14. 先生 Hsien.¹ Before, formerly, first.
先生 Shêng.¹ Born, to beget, life.
先生 Hsien-shêng. Teacher, Mr., Mrs.
貴 Kuei.⁴ Honourable, dear, costly.
姓 Hsing.⁴ Surname, clan.
15. 李 Li.³ A surname. Plum.
王 Wang.² A surname. King, prince.
在 Tsai.⁴ At, in, on, present, living.
家 Chia.¹ Home, house, family, class.
嗎 Ma.¹ Interrogative.

16. S. Tsai chia. Ch'ing chin lai. 16. Yes he is. Please come in.

17. F. Hao. 17. Good (thank you).

Here we might have used "pu kan tang" (see on 15 above), instead of "Hao" which means good. But "hao" may be used in expressing appreciation of favours offered.

18. S. (to host). Li Hsien shêng lai lo (la). 18. Mr. Lee has come.

"Lo" is short for "liao", which denotes the completed action of the verb (perfect tense).

19. H. Ch'ing chin lai pa. 19. Ask him to come in.
20. H. (to friend). Ya, 20. Hello Mr. Lee, how
(ah) Li Hsien are you?
shêng hao ya
(ah).

"Ah" or "ya" at the end of sentences has mainly euphonic value, i.e., it helps to round off the sentence smoothly.

21. F. Hao. Wang Hsien shêng, Chang Hsien shêng, tou hao ya (ah). 21. Quite well. Are you Mr. Wang and Mr. Chang, both well?

"Tou" or "tu" both, all. Note that it follows nouns, or pronouns, to which it refers.

22. H. and V. Hao, hao. Ch'ing tso, Ch'ing tso. 22. Quite well. Please take a seat.

The duplication of polite forms of speech is very common.

23. F. Hsieh hsieh. 23. Thank you, thank you.
24. H. (to servant). P'ao ch'a. 24. Prepare tea!

16. 請 Ch'ing.³ Invite, please, call, engage.
進 Chin.⁴ Enter, advance.
進來 Chin-lai. To enter.
17. 好 Hao.³ Good, well, complete.
18. 了 Liao.³ Lo.³ La.³ To end, finish, sign of
past tense.
20. 呀 Ya.¹ Particle, exclamation, initial or
final.
21. 張 Chang.¹ A surname, also classifier of
nouns.
都 Tou,¹ tu.¹ Both, all, together.
22. 坐 Tso.⁴ To sit, a seat.
23. 謝 Hsieh.⁴ To thank, thanks.
24. 泡 P'ao.⁴ To brew, soak, bubble, infuse.
茶 Ch'a.² Tea.
泡茶 P'ao ch'a. To make tea (in the teapot).

25. *S. Shuo hua, chiu lai.* 25. Coming in a moment.
(Lit. "as you speak I come").

"Chiu" is a word of many uses. Here it implies sequence, with a suggestion of immediacy.

26. *H. Ch'ing Li Hsien* 26. Take some tea Mr. Lee.
shêng ho ch'a.
27. *F. Pu kan tang.* 27. Thank you. (Lit. "unworthy").

28. *H. (as friend rises to leave).* Tsai tso 28. (Can't you) stay a little longer.
i hui'rh.

Lit. Again sit awhile, "i hui erh" awhile. But in speech the hui and erh coalesce and are pronounced huerh.

29. *F. Tui pu chu. Yu* 29. Sorry! There is some-
jên têng cho wo, one waiting for me.
tê hui ch'ü. I must return.

"Tui pu chu"—a common phrase signifying regret or apology.

"Cho" is the sign of the present participle, and denotes the continuing action of the verb. "Têng" wait; "têng cho" waiting.

"Tê" must, or should, in the sense of ought.

"Hui" return, "ch'ü" go, another instance of the double verb, the second of which indicates completion of the action.

30. *F. (as host rises to see him off).* Pu 30. Stay where you are.
sung, pu sung. (Lit. "don't escort me").
31. *H. and V. Na'erh ti* 31. Never heard of such a
hua. thing! (Lit. "where does such talk come from?").
32. *(All together.) Tsai* 32. Good-bye, good-bye.
chien, tsai chien. (Lit. "again see").

25. 說 Shuo.¹ To speak, say, narrate.
 話 Hua.⁴ Words, language, speech.
 說話 Shuo-hua. To speak.
 就 Chiu.⁴ Immediately, then, so, etc.
26. 喝 Ho.¹ To drink.
27. 敢 Kan.³ Dare, presume.
 當 Tang.¹ To bear, act as, ought.
 不敢當 Pu-kan-tang. I am unworthy, I dare not presume, etc.
28. 再 Tsai.⁴ Again, repeat.
 會 Hui.² A time, a turn, able to, etc.
 兒 Ērh.¹ Enclitic, added to nouns, suffix.
 一會兒 I-hui-ih. Awhile, a little time.
29. 對 Tui.⁴ To face, pair, opposite.
 住 Chu.⁴ To dwell, to stop.
 對不住 Tui-pu-chu. To offend, apologise, regrets.
 等 Têng.³ To wait, a class.
 着 Cho.² Particle, sign of present, participle.
 得 Tê.² Must, ought, get.
 回 Hui.² To return, go back.
 回去 Hui-ch'ü. To return.
30. 送 Sung.⁴ To send, escort, accompany.
31. 那 Na.^{3 4} Where, how, why? There, that.
 的 Ti.¹ Sign of possessive 's.
32. 見 Chien.⁴ To see, perceive.
 再見 Tsai-chien. Good-bye.

DIALOGUE No. 2

The Chinese Teacher Arrives

Lady, *L.* Teacher, *T.* Servant, *S.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>S.</i> Wang Hsien shêng
lai la. | 1. Mr. Wang has come. |
| 2. <i>L.</i> Ch'ing t'a chin lai. | 2. Ask him to come in |
| 3. <i>L.</i> Wang Hsien shêng
hao ya. | 3. How are you, Mr.
Wang? |
| 4. <i>T.</i> Hao. T'ai t'ai ch'ih
kuo fan mei yu. | 4. Well, (thank you)
Have you Lady par-
taken of food? |

This illustrates the full form of common questions in the Past or Perfect tenses. "Ch'ih liao (kuo) mo yu". Lit. Eaten—not have (eaten)? The object "food" comes between the two halves of the question form.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| 5. <i>L.</i> Ch'ih la. Hsien
shêng ch'ih la
ma. | 5. Yes, have you (teacher)
eaten? |
|---|--------------------------------------|

Now you see that the interrogative sign "ma" is but a shortened form of "mo yu" or mei yu as used in sentence 4 (above).

- | | |
|---|--|
| 6. <i>T.</i> Hai mei yu ch'ih
(or) P'ien kuo la. | 6. I have not yet eaten
(or) Yes I have (I am
ashamed to say). |
|---|--|

Chinese avoids redundancy wherever possible. If the tense is otherwise indicated there is no need to add extra words to the verb to show the tense. Here the word "huan" pronounced "hai", yet, serves in that way. So it is unnecessary to use "la" or "liao" after "ch'ih".

Inquiries about food form the usual method of greeting, particularly in the earlier parts of the day.

The alternative in sentence 6. "p'ien kuo la" is the very polite form of reply, and means "I have deprived you of your share", or "I have acted in a selfish or improper manner".

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 7. <i>L.</i> Ch'ing Hsien shêng
tso (or) Hsien
shêng ch'ing tso. | 7. Please (teacher) take a
seat. |
|--|-------------------------------------|

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 2

- 二 Erh.⁴ Two. Second.
2. 他 T'a.¹ He, she, it.
4. 太 T'ai.⁴ Too, very, superlative, exalted.
 太太 T'ai-t'ai. Madame, Lady.
 喫 Ch'ih.¹ To eat, used of tobacco as well as food.
- 過 Kuo.⁴ Sign of past tense, to pass over.
 飯 Fan.⁴ Rice, food.
 沒 Mei,² mu, mo.⁴ Negative, used with the verb "yu" to have.
6. 還 Huan, hai.² Still, yet, precedes negative.
 偏 P'ien.¹ Deflected, on the contrary, prejudiced.

8. T. Ch'ing T'ai t'ai 8. Please (Lady) be seated
hsien tso. first.
9. L. Hsien shêng t'ai k'o 9. You (teacher) are much
ch'i. too polite (Lit.
"too much guest's
flavour").
10. T. Pu k'o ch'i. Shih li 10. Not at all. Noblesse
tang ti. oblige.
- "Li" courtesy: "tang" ought: "ti" the possessive sign, used to turn verbal, adjectival or other phrases into composite noun clauses. Here, e.g., it makes this sense—"It is something that courtesy demands".
11. L. (to servant). K'o i 11. Make tea for the
kei Hsien shêng teacher.
p'ao ch'a (or)
ch'i ch'a.
- The "k'o i" modulates the sense of command, and so is appreciated by servants. Use it frequently if you want to get good service.
12. S. Ya. (Ah) Yü pei 12. Right, it is ready.
hao la.
13. (L. to teacher). Ch'ing 13. Take a cup of tea
Hsien shêng ho (teacher).
ch'a.
14. T. Hsieh, hsieh. 14. Thank you, thank you.
15. L. Chung kuo hua, wo 15. I don't understand
pu ta tung. Chinese very well.
- Note the order of words. "Chung kuo hua", lit. Middle Kingdom words, is placed first for the sake of emphasis.
"Ta" is used to qualify the verb and has adverbial use, "greatly".
16. T. T'ai t'ai, chi shih 16. When did you (Lady)
tao pi kuo lai ti. arrive in our
country?
- Note that "lai" without "la" or "liao" indicates past tense, because that is obvious from the context.

9. 客 K'o.⁴ Guest, traveller.
氣 Ch'i.⁴ Breath, air, vapour, flavour.
10. 理 Li.³ Right, principle, arrange, fitting.
11. 可 K'o.⁴ May, might, can, be able.
以 I.³ To take, by means of.
可以 K'o-i. May, can, will do.
給 Kei. Chi.³ Give, for, to, sign of dative.
沏 Ch'i.³ Infuse, brew, alternative for
“p'ao”.
12. 預 Yü.⁴ Beforehand.
備 Pei.⁴ Prepare, ready.
預備 Yü-peí. To prepare, make ready.
15. 中 Chung.¹ Middle.
國 Kuo.² Country, kingdom.
中國 Chung-kuo. China, the Middle Kingdom.
大 Ta.⁴ Big, great, much
懂 Tung.³ To understand.
16. 幾 Chi.³ Many, interrogative how much?
how many?
時 Shih.² Time, season.
幾時 Chi-shih. When?
到 Tao.⁴ Arrive, reach.
敵 Pi.⁴ Humble, my (polite).

17. L. Wo shih shang yüeh 17. I came to your country
ts'ai tao kuei kuo only last month.
lai ti.

"Ts'ai" is a connecting word, here indicating the definite point of time, with a certain qualifying sense of "only, just then", etc.

18. T. T'ai t'ai ti Chung 18. But you (Lady) speak
kuo hua, shuo tê Chinese well (Lit.
hao. "Lady's China
country words speak
get well").

19. L. Kuo Chiang, kuo 19. You flatter me (Lit.
Chiang. "over-praise").

20. T. Chên ti. Shih tsai 20. It is the truth. (You
hao. speak) really well.

21. L. Chung kuo hua 21. Is Chinese easy to
yung i hsüeh pu learn?
yung i hsüeh.

22. T. Ping pu t'ai nan. 22. Not too difficult.

"Ping"—really—for emphasis.

23. L. Wo yüan i pa Chung 23. I should like to learn
kuo hua, hsüeh Chinese well.
hao.

24. T. Wo chin hsin ti 24. Then I will do my best
chiaio ni, chiu to teach you.
shih la.

Lit. "I exhaust heart teach give you".

"Chiu shih la"—a final rounding off phrase.

17. 上 Shang.⁴ The last in point of time, above,
on, go up.
月 Yüeh.⁴ Month, moon.
才 Ts'ai.² Just, thereupon, scarcely.
19. 獎 Chiang.³ Praise, commend.
過獎 Kuo-chiang. Excessive praise, flattery.
20. 眞 Chên.¹ True, real.
實 Shih.² Solid, sincere, true, real.
實在 Shih-tsai. Truly, really.
21. 容 Yung.² Jung.² Easy, contain, face, looks.
易 I.⁴ Easy.
學 Hsüeh.² Learn.
22. 並 Ping.⁴ Together, abreast, all.
難 Nan.² Difficult.
23. 願 Yüan.⁴ Wish, willing.
意 I.⁴ Idea, wish, intention, meaning.
願意 Yüan-i. Willing, wish, desire.
把 Pa.³ Take, take hold. Introduces object
of verb.
24. 盡 Chin.⁴ Limit, exhaust, utmost.
心 Hsin.¹ Heart, mind.
教 Chiao.¹ Teach, instruct.
你 Ni.³ You.

DIALOGUE No. 3

*Conversation with Teacher*Teacher, *T.* Pupil, *P.*

1. *P.* Chê ko shih shih-mo. 1. What is this?

Note the order of words, exactly the reverse of English. "This is what?"

2. *T.* Na shih i pên shu. 2. That is a book.

"Pên" is a classifier of the noun "shu". There are many of these, such as pên, ko, kuan. "Ko", a piece, is the most common, and may be almost universally used. But if you want to speak Chinese well, you must learn to use the appropriate classifier with its noun. A list of the more common classifiers is given in Grammar Lesson, p. 427.

3. *P.* Shih shih-mo shu. 3. What (kind of) book is it?
4. *T.* Shih i pên tzu tien. 4. It is a dictionary.

5. *P.* Na ko tung hsi chiao shih mo. 5. What is that (thing) called?

6. *T.* Na shih i kuan ch'ien pi. 6. That is a pencil.

7. *P.* Wo mên k'o i tso shih-mo. 7. What shall we do?

Note the use of "k'o i". Let us, we may, may we, shall we, etc., generally speaking of permissive significance.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 3

- 三 San.¹ Three.
1. 這 Chê.⁴ This.
 個 Ko.⁴ Piece, classifier of nouns.
 這個 Chê-ko. This.
 甚什 Shen.² Shih.² What, very, any, the second
 form being more commonly used.
 麼 Mo.¹ Interrogative particle.
 什麼 Shih-mo. What? anything.
2. 本 Pên.³ Classifier of books, documents, root,
 source.
 書 Shu.¹ Book.
4. 字 Tzu.⁴ Word, written word.
 典 Tien.³ Constant, rule, record
 字典 Tzu-tien. Dictionary.
5. 東 Tung.¹ East.
 西 Hsi.¹ West.
 東西 Tung-hsi. Thing, things.
6. 管 Kuan.³ Tube, classifier of tubular things.
 鉛 Ch'ien.¹ Lead (metal).
 筆 Pi.³ Pen, pencil, brush.
 鉛筆 Ch'ien-pi. Lead-pencil.
 們 Mên.² Sign of plural.
7. 我們 Wo-mên. We, us.
 作做 Tso.⁴ To do, to make, to act.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 8. T. Wo mên k'o i nien
shu. | 8. Let us read. |
| 9. P. Wo mên k'o i nien
shih-mo shu. | 9. What book shall we
read? |
| 10. T. Wo mên k'o i nien
chê ko tu pên. | 10. Let us read this
Reader. |
| 11. P. Ch'ing hsien shêng
nien, wo t'ing. | 11. Will you please read
(teacher). I will
listen. |
| 12. T. Na ko fa tzu pu ta
hao. | 12. That is not a very good
method. |

The verb "shih", is, are, etc., is usually omitted in direct speech where no special emphasis is needed.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 13. P. Na mo, hsien shêng
hsien nien, wo
chiu kên cho
nien, hsing pu
hsing. | 13. Then will you (teacher)
read first, and I will
read after you. Will
that do? |
|---|---|

Na mo, a very common phrase in conversation, indicating connective logical sequence, as in English we say, "Then", "That being so", "In that case", etc.

"Nien" usually indicates reading aloud. "Tu" or "k'an", which also mean to read, are used of reading to oneself.

"Hsing pu hsing", a very common way of finishing up a sentence, seeking, or assuming the approval of the person addressed.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 14. T. Hsing. Chê ko fa
tzu hên hao. | 14. Yes, that's a very good
method. |
| 15. P. Yao shih wo nien
ts'o la, ch'ing
hsien shêng kao
su wo. | 15. You (teacher) will
please tell me if I
make mistakes in
reading. |

Your first introduction to the Conditional Mood. "Yao shih", if. The "la" is short for "Liao", which latter is not often heard in colloquial. Here it indicates the future-perfect tense, as the act of reading wrongly would have been completed before the teacher would be called upon to correct.

8. 唸 Nien.⁴ To read aloud.
唸書 Nien-shu. To study, read aloud.
10. 讀 Tu.² To read.
讀本 Tu-pên. A reader (book).
11. 聽 T'ing.¹ To listen.
聽一聽 T'ing-i-t'ing. To listen.
12. 法子 Fa.^{2 3 4} Method, way of doing things, law.
子 Tzu.³ Son, terminal of nouns, child.
13. 那麼 Na-mo. Then, seeing that it is so.
跟 Kên.¹ To follow, accompany, the heel,
with.
行 Hsing.² To go, to do.
行不行 Hsing-pu-hsing. Will that do? Is it possible?
14. 很 Hên.³ Extreme, very.
15. 要 Yao.⁴ If, necessary, want.
錯 Ts'o.⁴ Mistake, error, wrong.
告 Kao.⁴ Inform, accuse.
訴 Su.⁴ Inform, explain.
告訴 Kao-su. Tell, inform.

16. *T. Li tang, li tang.* 16. (Certainly), that is my bounden duty.

This is a shortened form in duplicate of sent. 10, dial. 2.

17. *P. Hsien tsai nien wan la shu, wo mên hai k'o i tso shih-mo.* 17. Now that we have finished reading, what else shall we do?

The character "huan" in colloquial is almost always read "hai", indicating something that is not yet done. As we should say in English, "What else shall we do?"

18. *T. Wo mên k'o i hsieh tzu.* 18. We might write.
19. *P. Hao. Wo hsi huan hsieh tzu.* 19. Good. I like writing.
20. *T. Hui hsieh tzu pu hui.* 20. Can you write?

"Hui" is "to know *how* to do a thing".

21. *P. Pu hui, k'o shih wo yüan i hsüeh.* 21. No, but I am willing to learn.
22. *T. Na mo, wo chiu chin hsin ti chiao ni.* 22. Then I will do my best to teach you.
23. *P. Hsieh tzu, yung shih mo tung hsi.* 23. What do we need for writing?
24. *T. Wo men yung i kuan pi, i chang chih, i k'uai mo, ho i fang yen t'ai. Tsai chia shang i tie'rh shui, yen mo.* 24. We need a pen (brush), a sheet of paper, a piece of ink (Chinese) and an ink slab. Then we must also have (lit. add) a little water to mix the ink. (Lit. rub the ink.)

17. 現 Hsien.⁴ Now, at present.
 現在 Hsien-tsai. At present, now. At this
 完 point.
 Wan.² To finish, complete, end.
18. 寫 Hsieh.³ To write.
19. 喜 Hsi.³ Joy, pleased, glad.
 歡 Huan.¹ Rejoice, take pleasure.
 歡 Hsi-huan. To rejoice, be pleased, happy.
21. 可 K'o.³ But.
24. 紙 Chih.³ Paper.
 塊 K'uai.⁴ Piece.
 墨 Mo. Mei.⁴ Ink.
 和 Ho.^{2 4} With, together, harmony.
 方 Fang.¹ Square, classifier of pieces of
 Chinese ink.
 硯 Yen.⁴ Ink-slab.
 台 T'ai.² Slab.
 硯台 Yen-t'ai. Slab for mixing Chinese ink.
 加 Chia.¹ To add.

25. P. Wo pa chê hsieh tung hsi na lai.
Wo mên chiu
hsieh tzu.
25. I will get these things,
and we will (begin
to) write.
26. T. Hao. Wo mên hsieh
tzu pa.
26. Good, we will (begin
to) write.

24. 點 Tien.³ A little, point, dot.
一點兒 I tie'rh. A little.
水 Shui.³ Water.
研 Yen.² To grind, as ink on the slab. To inquire.
25. 把 Pa.³ To take, handle, grasp.
些 Hsieh.³ A few, some, sign of plural, with adjectives.
拿 Na.² To take.
拿來 Na-lai. To bring.

DIALOGUE No. 4

Between two friends A and B who are learning Chinese together. This dialogue provides some basic rules of grammar in the form of useful sentences. Learn this lesson thoroughly, and you will be well repaid.

1. A. Chê ko tung-hsi 1. What is this called?
chiao shih-mo.

Note again the order of the words. "This thing called what?"

2. B. Na shih i ko ch'a 2. That is a teacup.
pei (wan).

It is not necessary to use "ko" after "na" if "ko" comes later in the sentence in reference to the same thing.

3. A. Ch'a pei ho ch'a 3. What is the difference
wan yu shih-mo between a ch'a pei
fên pieh. and a ch'a wan?

Notice carefully the framework of this sentence, "Cup with bowl have what difference?"

4. B. Ch'a pei yu pa'rh, 4. A ch'a pei has a handle
ch'a wan mu yu while a ch'a wan has
pa'rh. not.

5. A. Na shih shih-mo 5. What is that?
tung hsi.

6. B. Na shih i ko (pa) 6. That is a teapot.
ch'a hu.

"Pa" is the correct classifier of teapots, but "ko" is also used.

7. A. Ch'a hu ho shui hu, 7. Is a ch'a hu the same
i yang pu i yang. as a shui hu?

Lit. "Teapot with (compared with) kettle one kind not one kind?"

8. B. Pu i yang. Ch'a hu 8. No. A teapot is used
shih p'ao ch'a for making tea and
yung ti, shui hu a kettle for boiling
shih shao shui water.
yung ti.

Note "ti" after "yung" making an adjectival phrase. "A teapot is making tea's use". So "used for".

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 4

四 Ssu.⁴ Four.

2. 盃 Pei.¹ Cup, with or without handle, glass.
碗 Wan.³ Cup, bowl, usually without handle.

3. 分 Fên.^{1 4} (1) Verbal form, to divide. (4)
Part, tenth.

別 Pieh.² To distinguish, also "do not".
分別 Fên-pieh. Difference.

4. 把 Pa.⁴ Handle, classifier of teapots, etc., also
introduces object of verbs.

6. 壺 Hu.² Kettle, pot.
茶壺 Ch'a-hu. Teapot.

7. 水壺 Shui-hu. Kettle.
樣 Yang.⁴ Pattern, way, manner.
一樣 I-yang. The same, similar.

8. 燒 Shao.¹ To burn, bake (to boil).

9. A. Chê hsieh yen chüan'rh shih shui ti. 9. Whose are these cigarettes?

Chê-hsieh, these. Na-hsieh, those. "Hsieh" is the sign of the plural with distinguishing or demonstrative adjectives.

Note order of words. "These cigarettes are whose?"

10. B. Na hsieh yen chüan' rh shih wo ti. 10. Those cigarettes are mine!

11. A. Yu yang huo (huo ch'ai) mei yu. 11. Have you any matches?

Yu mo (mei) yu. Have you? (anything).

12. B. Yu, ni yao pu yao. 12. Yes, do you want some?

Yao pu yao. Do you want (anything). Note the use of "mo" and "pu" as negatives in questions of a direct character. Always use "mo" with "yu". "Pu" is used only in the present and future tenses. In the past tense you say "T'a yao la mu yu". Did he want?

13. A. Pu yao. Wo pu ch'ih (ch'ou) yen. 13. No, I don't smoke.

14. B. Chê liang kuan pi shih ni ti ma. 14. Are these two pens yours?

"Liang" in sense of "two" is used when qualifying a noun. In complex multiple numbers and in ordinals you use "erh".

15. A. Chê i kuan kang pi shih wo ti. 15. This steel pen is mine.

16. B. Na i kuan ni. 16. And what about that one?

17. A. Na i kuan mao pi, shih pu shih ni ti ya. 17. That Chinese brush is yours, isn't it?

Note the difference in tone of the two "na". In questions it is third, and in statements fourth, tone.

9. 這些 Chê-hsieh. These.
 煙 Yen.¹ Tobacco, snuff, smoke, opium.
 捲 Chüan.³ A roll, to roll up.
 煙捲兒 Yen-chüan-rh. Cigarettes ("rh" being short for "êrh").
- 誰的 Shui-ti. Whose?
 10. 那些 Na-hsieh. Those.
 我的 Wo-ti. My, mine.
11. 洋 Yang.² Foreign, the sea, over the sea, vast.
 火 Huo.² Fire.
 柴 Ch'ai.² Firewood, fuel.
 火柴 Huo-ch'ai. Matches.
13. 喫煙 Ch'ih-yen. To smoke (lit. to eat smoke).
 抽 Ch'ou.¹ To draw, pull out.
 抽煙 Ch'ou-yen. To smoke, as tobacco.
14. 兩 Liang.³ Two, preceding nouns.
15. 鋼 Kang.¹ Steel.
 鋼筆 Kang-pi. Steel pen.
16. 那一管 Na-i-kuan. Which one? Note that the tone is 3 for na.
 呢 Ni.¹ Mark of interrogation, and final enclitic.
17. 毛 Mao.² Hair.
 毛筆 Mao-pi. The hair-brush, Chinese pen.
 你的 Ni-ti. Your, yours.

18. B. Pu shih wo ti. Shih wo p'êng yu ti. 18. No, it is not mine. It belongs to my friend.

There is no need to use "ti" the possessive after "wo" in the second half of this sentence. It would be too clumsy to say "Shih wo ti p'êng yu ti". Where the sense is clear, Chinese prefer to avoid repetition of these small words.

19. A. Na i p'ing mo shui, yeh shih t'a ti ma. 19. Is that bottle of ink his too?
 20. B. Pu shih t'a ti, shih hsien shêng ti. 20. No, it belongs to the teacher.
 21. A. Chê hsieh yen chüan'rh hao pu hao. 21. Are these good cigarettes?

22. B. Pu ta hao. 22. Not very good.
 23. A. Ni tsai na'rh mai ti. 23. Where did you buy them?

Notice carefully the two words spelled the same "mai", but meaning respectively "buy" and "sell". In the Chinese character (see Chinese exercises at end of book) these two words are written differently. But the tones for "buy" and "sell" are different. For "buy" use the third tone, and for "sell" the fourth.

24. B. Tsai shih ch'ang shang mai ti. 24. In the market.
 25. A. Tsai chê li yu mai ti mei yu. 25. Are there any on sale here?
 26. B. Tsai chê li mei yu mai ti. 26. No, there are none on sale here.
 27. A. Tsai na li yu mai ti ni. 27. Where are there any on sale?
 28. B. Shang ta chieh shang ch'ü, huo che k'o i mai. 28. If you go on to the main street, you may be able to buy some.

18. 朋 P'êng.² Companion, friend, mate.
友 Yu.³ Intimate acquaintance, friend.
朋友 P'êng-yu. Friend, mate.
19. 瓶 P'ing.² Bottle.
也 Yeh.³ Also.
23. 那兒 Na³ 'rh. Where?
買 Mai.³ To buy.
24. 市 Shih.⁴ The market.
場 Ch'ang.² An open place, square.
市場 Shih-ch'ang. The public market.
25. 裡裏 Li.³ In, inside, within.
這 Chê-li. Here.
賣 Mai.⁴ To sell. (Notice the tone is 4; cf. with mai 3, to buy.)
買賣 Mai-mai. Business, trade.
27. 那裡 Na-li. Alternative for "na'rh", where?,
tone 3.
28. 街 Chieh.² Street.
或 Huo.⁴ Perhaps, if, someone.
者 Che.³ Particle, to form adverbs, abstract nouns, etc.

29. A. Tsa men lia, k'o i 29. Let us two go on the
shang chieh ch'ü, street to buy a few.
mai chi ko pa.

Tsa-men is a friendly familiar form for "wo-men", "we". Tsa-men-lia is a shortened form for "Tsa-men-liang-Ko".

30. B. Hao. Tsa mên i 30. Right, let us go to-
k'uai'êrh ch'ü. gether.

I-k'uai-êrh. Lit. one piece, so together.

29. 咱 Tsa.² We (familiar).
 倆 Lia.³ Two.
 咱們倆 Tsa-mên-lia. We two.
30. 一塊兒 I-k'uai-êrh. Together (all one piece).

DIALOGUE No. 5

Between two friends A and B, comprising a series of short sentences, to be fired at one another in quick rotation, and illustrating grammatical rules of a basic character.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. A. T'a lai la mei yu. | 1. Has he come? |
| 2. B. T'a mei yu lai. | 2. No he has not. |
| 3. A. Ni lai pu lai. | 3. Are you coming? |
| 4. B. Wo lai. | 4. Yes, I am coming (in reference to the place where they are standing). |
| 5. A. Tso t'ien t'a mên lai la ma. | 5. Did they come yesterday? |
| 6. B. T'a men lai la. | 6. Yes, they did. |
| 7. A. Ming t'ien ni mên lai pu lai. | 7. Are you coming to-morrow? |
| 8. B. Ming t'ien wo mên pu lai. | 8. No, we are not coming to-morrow. |
| 9. A. Chin t'ien ni ch'ü pu ch'ü. | 9. Are you going to-day? |
| 10. B. Wo ch'ü. | 10. Yes, I am going. |
| 11. A. Ming t'ien ni hui lai pu hui lai. | 11. Are you coming back to-morrow? |
| 12. B. Ming t'ien pu hui lai. | 12. No, I shall not come back to-morrow. |
| 13. A. Ming t'ien t'a (f) hui ch'ü pu hui ch'ü. | 13. Will she go back to-morrow? |
| 14. B. Shih ti, ming t'ien t'a hui ch'ü. | 14. Yes, she will go back to-morrow. |

Note that expressions of time usually precede everything else in simple direct questions and answers.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 5

五 Wu.³ Five.

5. 昨 Tso.³ Yesterday.
天 T'ien.¹ Day, Heaven.
昨天 Tso-t'ien. Yesterday.
7. 明 Ming.² The dawn, also bright, clear, open.
明天 Ming-t'ien. To-morrow.
9. 今 Chin.¹ Now, the present.
今天 Chin-t'ien. To-day.
11. 回來 Hui-lai. To return (here).
13. 她 T'a.¹ She. Note feminine form of character.
12. 是的 Shih-ti. Yes, affirmation. Often expressed by "shih" alone.

15. A. Ni shang na li ch'ü. 15. Where are you going?

Note that the verb ch'ü comes last in these sentences. That is because it is part of the composite verb shang-ch'ü. Sometimes this verb is put first, e.g., 18. "Ni ch'ü kan shen-mo".

16. B. Wo shang chieh ch'ü. 16. I am going on the street.

17. A. Wo yeh ch'ü. 17. I am going too.

18. B. Ni ch'ü kan shih mo. 18. What are you going for?

19. A. Wo ch'ü mai tung hsi. 19. I am going to buy some things.

20. B. Mai shih mo tung hsi. 20. What are you going to buy?

21. A. Mai i ting mao tzu, 21. A hat and a pair of
hoi shuanghsieh. shoes.

Note "ting", the classifier of "mao-tzu".

22. B. Tao kuo Pei-ching mei yu. 22. Have you ever been to Peking?

Pei-ching (Northern Capital), styled Pei-p'ing (Northern Peace) since the old Pei-ching was captured by Chiang K'ai Shek in 1926, when Nanking (Southern Capital) became the new capital of all China.

23. A. Mei yu tao kuo. 23. No, I have never been.

24. B. Ch'i lai, wo mên tsou pa. 24. Get up, let us go.

Tsou is simply to go, without any goal being indicated. If you use "ch'ü", some idea of a goal is implied.

25. A. Têng i têng, tê na chi ko ch'ien. 25. Wait a bit, I must get some money.

26. B. Na pu yao chin, wo tai tê yu ch'ien. 26. That doesn't matter, I have some money on me.

The "tê" in "tai tê", followed by "yu", which some would consider redundant, is really equivalent to "la", the past tense.

18. 幹 Kan.⁴ To do, manage, ability.
-
21. 頂 Ting.³ The classifier of hats, caps, etc.,
 top, button.
 帽 Mao.⁴ Hat, cap.
 雙 Shuang.¹ A couple, both, pair.
 鞋 Hsieh.² Shoe.
 一雙鞋 I-shuang-hsieh. A pair of shoes.
22. 北 Pei.^{3 4} North.
 京 Ching.¹ Capital city.
 北 京 Pei-ching. Old name for Peking, now
 called Peiping.
-
24. 起 Ch'i.³ To get up, rise, mount.
 起 來 Ch'i-lai. To get up, rise.
 走 Tsou.³ To walk, to go (without reference
 to a specific goal).
25. 等 一 等 Têng-i-têng. To wait a bit.
 錢 Ch'ien.² Money.
26. 緊 Chin.³ Tight, pressing.
 緊 要 Yao chin. Important (lit. want urgent).
 帶 Tai.⁴ To carry on the person.

27. A. K'o shih chieh jên 27. But borrowing other
 ti ch'ien pu ta people's money is not
 hao. a very good (habit).

"Chieh" means both to borrow and to lend, and there is no difference in tone to help in differentiating the two meanings. You have to look to the context to discover the difference. As a help, sometimes "chieh-lai" is used for "to borrow", and "chieh-ch-ü" for "to lend". "Chieh-kei" is also used in the latter sense.

28. B. Na yao k'an ch'ing 28. That depends on cir-
 hsing tsên yang. cumstances.

"Yao", must, need to.

"K'an" is used in the sense of "depends on", as well as of "look at".

29. A. Yu ti shih hou hao, 29. Sometimes it is all right,
 yu ti shih hou pu sometimes not, isn't
 hao, shih pu shih. it?

"Yu ti shih hou", sometimes. Lit. "There are times".

30. B. Tui la. 30. Right.

Note how "tui" means "right" as well as agreeing, etc.

27. 借 Chieh.⁴ To borrow anything, also means
to lend!
28. 看 K'an.⁴ To look at, regard, depends (in the
sense as translated).
情 Ch'ing.² Facts, affairs, feelings, nature.
形 Hsing.⁴ Form, appearance.
情形 Ch'ing-hsing. Circumstances.
怎 Tsên.³ How? In what way?
怎樣 Tsên-yang. How? In what way, manner,
etc.
29. 時 Shih.² Time, season.
候 Hou.⁴ A time or period, to wait, expect.
時候 Shih-hou. Time, season, time of day.
30. 對 Tui.⁴ Right, to agree with.

DIALOGUE No. 6

Mistress and Servants discuss domestic matters.

Mistress, *M.* Servant(s), *S.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>S.</i> T'ai t'ai chiao wo pa. | 1. Did you (Lady) call me? |
| 2. <i>M.</i> Shih ti. Chiao ch'u tzu ho k'an mên ti (mên fang) lai, wo yao ho ni mên shuo chi chü hua. | 2. Yes, call the cook and gate-man. I want to say something to you (lit. say a few sentences to you). |
| 3. <i>S.</i> T'a mên chiu lai. Ai, lai la. | 3. They will be along shortly. Ah, here they come! |
| 4. <i>M.</i> Tso hsia pa. | 4. Sit down! |
| 5. <i>S.</i> (In a body.) Pu yung tso. Wo mên chan cho ti hao. | 5. No need for us to sit. It is more fitting that we stand. |

Servants naturally expect to stand in the presence of their mistress.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. <i>M.</i> Chin t'ien wo hên mang, yao ta chia pang mang. | 6. I am very busy to-day, and want you all to help. |
|---|---|

"Ta-ehia", a frequently used expression for "All of you".

- | | |
|--|---|
| 7. <i>S.</i> T'ai t'ai chiao wo mên tso shih-mo. Wo mên chao pan chiu shih la. | 7. What do you want us to do? We will do as you say (lit. we according do just so). |
|--|---|

"Chao-pan". According—act. Do as you say.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 8. <i>M.</i> Hsien pa ch'ih fan ti chia chü na lai, wo yao k'an i k'an. | 8. First bring the cutlery and crockery (lit. the eating utensils) and let me see them. |
|---|---|

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 6

- 六 Liu.⁴ Six.
2. 厨 Ch'u.² Kitchen, cook.
 房 Fang.² Room, house, with preceding
 means, kitchen, or cook.
- 句 Chü.⁴ Sentence, phrase.
4. 下 Hsia.⁴ Down, beneath, below.
5. 站 Chan.⁴ To stand, station, post, etc.
6. 忙 Mang.² Busy.
 家 Chia.¹ Home, family.
 大 Ta-chia. All, everybody.
 家 Pang.¹ Help, assist.
8. 傢 Chia.¹ Utensils.
 具 Chü.⁴ Utensils.

9. S. T'ai t'ai shih chiao 9. Do you want us to bring
 wo mên pa tao the knives, forks,
 tzu, ch'a tzu, spoons and ladles,
 t'iao shih ho shao the whole lot?
 tzu, tou yao na
 lai ma.

Notice the position of "tou", meaning all. It follows the enumeration of the things which form the compound subject, gathering them all up as it were.

10. M. Shih ti, yeh yao na 10. Yes, I also want you to
 ch'a pei, wan, bring the tea-cups,
 tieh tzu ho p'an bowls, saucers and
 tzu. plates.

The "ho", meaning "and", usually precedes the last of a number of items enumerated together.

11. S. Chê hsieh tung hsi 11. When we have brought
 na lai la, chiao them, where do you
 wo mên fang tsai want us to put them?
 na li ni.

12. M. Pa t'a mên tou fang 12. Put them all on the
 tsai cho tzu shang. table.

"T'a-men", here applied to inanimate things.

13. S. T'ai t'ai chin t'ien 13. Aren't you inviting
 wan shang, pu somegueststo-night?
 shih ch'ing k'o
 ma.

14. M. Pu shih wan shang 14. No, not this evening.
 ch'ing k'o, shih I am asking a few
 chin t'ien hsia wu folk to tea this after-
 ch'ing chi ko jên noon.
 lai ho ch'a.

15. S. Na mo, t'ai t'ai tê 15. Then you should tell
 chiao ch'u fang the kitchen (cook) to
 to k'ao mien pao bake a lot of bread
 ho tien hsin. and cakes.

Note the position of "to", meaning more. It precedes the verb.

- | | | |
|-----|----|--|
| 9 | 刀 | Tao. ¹ Knife, blade. |
| | 叉 | Ch'a. ¹ Fork. |
| | 調 | T'iao. ² To stir, mix. |
| | 匙 | Shih. ² Ch'ih. ² Spoon, key. |
| | 勺 | Shao. ² (tzu). Scoop, ladle. |
| | | |
| 10. | 碟 | Tieh. ² (tzu). Plate, saucer. |
| | 盤 | P'an. ² (tzu). Plate, dish. |
| | | |
| 11. | 放 | Fang. ⁴ Put, place. |
| | | |
| 12. | 桌 | Cho. ¹ (tzu). Table. |
| | | |
| 13. | 晚 | Wan. ³ Evening, late. |
| | | |
| 14. | 午 | Wu. ³ Noon. |
| | 下午 | Hsia-wu. Afternoon. |
| | | |
| 15. | 多 | To. ¹ Much, many, how (in figures). |
| | 烤 | K'ao. ² To bake, roast. |
| | 麵 | Mien. ⁴ Flour, bread. |
| | 包 | Pao. ¹ Parcel, wrap, with the preceding, a loaf, bread. |

16. M. Huang yu ho kuo tzu Chiang, to pu to. 16. Is there a fair quantity of butter and jam (in the house)?

17. S. Chê hsieh, tou kou shih lai ko k'o jen ch'ih. 17. There is enough of these for about ten guests.

"Lai", come, is used in multiples of ten, to indicate roughly that number.

18. M. Chia chü, yeh kou shih lai ko jên yung ma. 18. Are the table utensils (crookery, cutlery, etc.), sufficient for about ten people?

19. S. Pu ta kou. Yao shih tao tzu, ch'a tzu pu kou ti shih hou, k'o i yü pei k'uai tzu, chiao t'a mên shih. 19. Not quite enough. (But) if the knives and forks are insufficient, we might have chopsticks ready for them to use.

20. M. Chih p'a yu ti jên pu hui shih k'uai tzu. 20. My fear is that some of them will not be able to use chopsticks.

"Chih p'a". Only fear, A mental reservation.

21. S. Na tao mei yu fa tzu la. 21. Then there is nothing we can do.

15. 點 Tien.³ A dot, mark out, with the next,
cakes, pastry.
心 Hsin.¹ Heart, with the preceding, cakes,
pastry.
16. 黃 Huang.² Yellow, with the next, butter.
油 Yu.² Oil, with preceding, butter.
果 Kuo.³ (tzu). Fruit, consequences, etc.,
with the next, jam, preserve.
醬 Chiang.¹ Thick, paste, etc., with preced-
ing, jam, preserve.
17. 够 Kou.⁴ Enough, sufficient.
十 Shih.² Ten.
十來個 Shih-lai-ko. About ten.

19. 筷 K'uai.⁴ (tzu). Chopsticks.
使 Shih.³ To employ, use.

20. 只 Chih.³ Only.
怕 P'a.⁴ To fear.

21. 倒 Tao.⁴ On the contrary, used for emphasis
as, then in that case.

DIALOGUE No. 7

Between a Chinese villager, *V.*, and a foreigner, *F.*, meeting for the first time.

The student will note that in Chinese, as in many other languages, there are different ways of addressing a person, according to his education or social status. In this dialogue alternatives are offered for a number of sentences. These are marked respectively *C.* for common, and *P.* for polite. You can never go wrong in using the polite form of speech, even to the most rusticated. But if you find that they are embarrassed you can readily adopt the more common and familiar form.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>F.</i> Hsien shêng hao
ma. | 1. Good morning sir, are
you well? |
| 2. <i>V.</i> Hsieh hsieh, hsien
shêng ni hao. (<i>C.</i>)
Ch'êng wen. Ch'-
êng wen. (<i>P.</i>) | 2. Thank you, I hope you
are well?
(Thank you) I have
received your in-
quiry. |
| 3. <i>F.</i> Hsien shêng (nin)
ch'ih la fan mei
yu. | 3. Have you eaten? |
| 4. <i>V.</i> Ch'ih la. Hsien
shêng (nin) ch'ih
la ma. <i>or</i>
Hai mei yu ch'ih.
Hsien shêng (nin)
ch'ih la ma. | 4. Yes, have you had your
meal?

No, not yet; have you
had your meal? |
| 5. <i>F.</i> P'ien kuo la. (<i>P.</i>) | 5. Yes, I am ashamed to
say. |
| 6. <i>V.</i> Kuei hsing. (<i>P.</i>)
Hsing shih mo. (<i>C.</i>) | 6. What is your name? |

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 7

七

Ch'i.¹ Seven.

2. 承

Ch'êng.² To receive.

問

Wên.² To inquire, ask, a question.

承問

Ch'êng-wên. Used together politely, in reply to any personal inquiry.

3. 您

Nin.² Polite form of Ni—You, Sir.

7. *F.* Chien (pi) hsing Wang. (P.)
Wo hsing Wang. (C.)
7. My humble name is Wang.
My name is Wang.
8. *V.* T'ai fu. (P.)
8. What is your honourable appellation?
9. *F.* Ts'ao tzu Ch'ing Chang. (P.)
9. My unworthy (lit. grass) name is Ch'ing Chang.
10. *V.* Ming tzu chiao shih mo. *or*
Shih mo ming tzu. (C.)
10. What is your name?,
i.e., given or Christian name.
11. *F.* Ming chiao Ch'ing Chang. *or*
Ch'ing Chang. (C.)
11. My name is Ch'ing Chang.
Ch'ing Chang.
- The Chinese usually have at least two names, in addition to the surname, one for everyday use and the other for special occasions.
12. *V.* Hsien shêng to ta nien chi. *or*
Hsien shêng to ta sui shu. (C.)
12. How old are you sir?
- Note the expression "to", introducing questions about quantities, size, age, distance, etc., equivalent to our "how". "Ma" is sometimes added, *e.g.*, "to ma yüan", how far?
13. *F.* Wu shih wu. *or*
Wu shih wu sui.
13. Fifty-five.
Fifty-five years (old).

7. 賤 Chien.⁴ Humble, mean, low, cheap.
8. 甫 Fu.³ Designation, title or rank, etc., surname.
9. 草 Ts'ao.³ Grass, so humble, used as a term of self-depreciation.
- 字 Tzu.⁴ The ordinary character for a name, used here in contrast with the very honourable appellation used by the inquirer.
- 清 Ch'ing.¹ Clear, used as a name.
- 長 Chang.⁴ A staff, used as a name.
10. 名 Ming.² Name, not surname, fame.
12. 多 To.¹ Much, many, how many. With "mo" means How much, how many?
- 大 Ta.⁴ Big, great.
- 多 To-ta. How big, great, etc.
- 年 Nien.² Year, years.
- 紀 Chi.⁴ To record.
- 年 Nien-chi. One's age.
- 歲 Sui.⁴ The year, years.
- 數 Shu.⁴ Number, to count, etc.
- 歲 Sui-shu. One's age.

14. V. Hsien shêng kuei 14. What is your esteemed
 kêng. or age?
 Hsien shêng kuei
 chia tzu. (P.)

A question like "kuei chia tzu" might elicit a cryptic reply, as the person asked might indicate the animal which presides over the year of birth. There is a clear question relating to this, *viz.*, "Hsien shêng shu shêm-mo ti": "What (animal) do you belong to?" The "chia tzu" refers to the ten stems, which, with the twelve branches combined in pairs, give the Chinese sexagenary cycle (sixty years). Cf. Tennyson's lines in Locksley Hall: "Better fifty years of Europe than a cycle of Cathay." I wonder whether Tennyson knew there was only ten years' difference between the two! The older Chinese were very fond of guessing ages by means of the "animal" system. There are twelve animals, corresponding to the twelve "branches" or horary characters referred to above. The animals, in order of sequence, are: rat, ox, tiger, hare, dragon, serpent, horse, sheep, monkey, cock, dog, boar. These again correspond with certain constellations, and ultimately the calculation of age is based on the particular constellation which was paramount at the time of birth.

15. F. Hsien shêng kao 15. What is your exalted
 shou. (P.) age sir?
 16. V. Hsiung ti hai hsiao, 16. I (younger brother) am
 hsü tu la wu shih still young. I have
 wu sui. (P.) lived vainly for fifty-
 five years.

17. V. Hsien shêng kuei 17. Which is your honour-
 kuo. or able country?
 Kuei kuo shih na i
 kuo. or Where is your honour-
 Kuei kuo shih na able country?
 li. (P.)
 18. F. Pu kan tang. Pi 18. My humble country is
 kuo Ying Kuo. England.
 (P.)

Ying-kuo is England. Ta Ying-kuo is Great Britain.

14. 庚 Kêng.¹ Age, used only in polite language.
 甲子 Chia-tzu. The first term of the Sexagenary
 cycle, which the Chinese use for the
 reckoning of time. Here it is a
 honorific.
15. 高 Kao.¹ High.
 壽 Shou.⁴ Age, old age, long life.
16. 兄 Hsiung.¹ Elder brother.
 弟 Ti.⁴ Younger brother.
 兄 弟 Hsiung-ti. Younger brother. Used in self-
 depreciation.
- 小 Hsiao.³ Small, young.
 虛 Hsü.¹ In vain, empty, useless.
 度 Tu.⁴ To ford, pass over, pass.
17. 英 Ying.¹ Brave, illustrious. Used for Eng-
 land.

19. V. Hsien shêng shih na li lai ti. (C.) 19. Where do you hail from? or
Where have you come from?
20. F. Wo shih Nan Ching lai ti. 20. I (have) come from Nanking.
21. V. Hsien shêng kuei ch'u. or
Fu shang tsai na li. (P.) 21. Where do you reside?
22. F. Pu kan tang. Pi ch'u Peip'ing. (P.) 22. Unworthy, my humble abode is at Peip'ing.
23. V. Peip'ing li chê li to yuan. (C.) 23. How far is Peip'ing from here?
Lit. Peip'ing distant here how far?
24. F. San pai to li lu. 24. Over three hundred li.
25. V. Hsien shêng wang na li ch'ü. 25. Where are you going sir?
26. F. Wo shang Han k'ou ch'ü. 26. I am going to Hankow.
27. V. Ko hsia shih tsou shui lu, hai shih tsou han lu lai ti ni. 27. Did you travel by sea or overland sir?
28. F. Wo mei yu tsou shui lu, yeh mei yu tsou han lu, wo shih tsou fei chi lai ti. 28. I travelled neither by sea nor by land. I came by plane.

20. 南 Nan.² South.
 南 京 Nan-Ching. Nanking. Lit. Southern Ca-
 pital.
21. 處 Ch'u.³ Place, dwelling place.
 府 Fu.³ Home, residence (polite).
 上 Fu-shang. Residence.
 平 P'ing.² Peace, level, tranquil, ordinary.
23. 離 Li.² Apart from, separated from.
 遠 Yüan.³ Far, distance, distant.
24. 百 Pai. Po.^{3 2 4} Hundred.
 里 Li.³ The Chinese measure of distance.
 "Li" about one-third of a mile.
 路 Lu.⁴ Road.
25. 往 Wang.^{3 4} Towards, synonym for "Shang".
26. 漢 Han.⁴ The word for ancient Chinese dy-
 nasty. Part of Hankow.
27. 閣 Ko.² Council, title of respect. With next
 means Sir.
 閣 下 Ko-hsia. Sir.
 旱 Han.⁴ Dry, dry land.
28. 飛 Fei.¹ To fly.
 機 Chi.¹ A machine, opportunity.
 飛 機 Fei-chi. Aeroplane.

29. *V.* Tsou la chi t'ien ti 29. How many days were
 kung fu. you en route?
30. *F.* I kung ssu t'ien ti 30. Four days in all.
 kung fu.
31. *V.* Ai ya, fei ch'ang ti 31. I say, that is quick.
 k'uai.

29. 工夫 Kung.¹ Work. With the next means time.
夫 Fu.¹ A man. With the preceding means time.
30. 工夫 Kung-fu. Time in which to do things.
一共 I-kung. Altogether.
31. 非 Fei.¹ Not. With the next means unusual.
常 Ch'ang.² Usual, ordinary. With the preceding means unusual, extraordinary.
- 非常 Fei-ch'ang. Unusual, extraordinary.
快 K'uai.⁴ Quick, lively.

DIALOGUE No. 8

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. F. Chia li yu chi ko jên. | 1. How many are there in your family? |
| 2. V. T'ung kung liu ko. | 2. Six in all. |
| 3. F. Fu mu hai tsai ma.
or
Fu mu tou tsai pu tsai. | 3. Are your parents living? |
| 4. V. Fu ch'in tsai, mu ch'in pu tsai la. | 4. My father is living, but my mother is dead. |
| 5. F. Ling tsun kao shou.
(P.) | 5. What is the exalted age of your esteemed father? |
| 6. V. Pa shih erh sui. | 6. Eighty-two. |
| 7. F. Ling t'ang ch'ü shih, shih to ta nien chi. | 7. What was the age of your honoured mother when she died? |
| 8. V. Wu shih liu sui. | 8. Fifty-six. |
| 9. F. K'o hsi. K'o hsi. | 9. How sad! (what a pity). |
| 10. V. Hsien shêng yu pao chüan mei yu. | 10. Have you a family? (precious wife). |
| 11. F. Hai mei yu ch'êng chia. | 11. I have not yet set up a home (not yet married). |

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 8

- 八 Pa.¹ Eight.
2. 統 T'ung.² Together, connected.
共 Kung.⁴ Together, combined.
統共 T'ung-kung. All together.
3. 父 Fu.⁴ Father.
母 Mu.³ Mother.
父母 Fu-mu. Parents.
在 Tsai.⁴ Note special meaning of "to be living".
4. 親 Ch'in.¹ Close relationship, especially in family or clan.
父親 Fu-ch'in. Father.
母親 Mu-ch'in. Mother.
5. 令 Ling.⁴ Honourable, used in ceremonious language.
尊 Tsun.¹ Honourable, used in ceremonious language.
- 令尊 Ling-tsun. Your honourable father.
7. 堂 T'ang.² The hall, principal room, honorific for mother.
令堂 Ling-t'ang. Your mother.
世 Shih.⁴ The world, this life, generation.
9. 惜 Hsi.¹ To pity, sympathise.
可惜 K'o-hsi. What a pity! pitiable.
10. 寶 Pao.³ Precious, valuable.
眷 Chüan.⁴ Family, wife.
寶眷 Pao-chüan. Your family, or wife.
11. 成 Ch'êng.² Complete, finish, accomplish, become.

12. V. Hsien shêng ting la 12. Are you engaged?
 hun mei yu.
 13. F. Ting la. 13. Yes.

Alternative questions and answers to the foregoing.

14. V. Hsien shêng chieh 14. Are you married?
 la hun ma.
 "Ch'ü ch'in" is still heard for "to marry". But "chieh hun" is more up to date.
 15. F. Chieh la hun la. 15. Yes, I am.
 16. V. Hsien shêng yu chi 16. How many children
 ko hai tzu. have you?
 17. F. Ssu ko. 17. Four.
 18. V. Nan ti yu chi ko 18. How many boys?
 [wei. (P.)].
 19. F. Liang ko nan ti, 19. Two boys and two girls.
 liang ko nü ti.
 20. V. Hao fu ch'i. 20. You have great happiness.
 21. F. T'o fu, t'o fu. (P.) 21. My happiness is due to you.

The expression "t'o fu" is frequently used after a person has been congratulated, the idea being that such felicity as has been gained is due to the other person's merit.

22. V. Hsien shêng ling 22. How many boys (noble
 lang chi wei. princes) have you?
 23. F. Hsiao ch'üan liang 23. Two (small puppies).
 ko.
 24. V. Ling ai yu chi wei. 24. How many daughters
 (P.) (esteemed loved
 ones).

These sentences are included here for the convenience of the student. They are not often heard in China now. But it is just possible they may be used, and it is well to be ready for the emergency.

12. 訂 Ting.⁴ Fix, settle, become engaged to be
 婚 married.
 訂 婚 Hun.¹ Marriage, marry.
 Ting-hun. To be engaged to be married.
14. 結 Chieh.² To tie a knot, join together.
 結 婚 Chieh-hun. To marry, to be married.
16. 孩 Hai.² Child, children.
 男 Nan.² Male (of human beings).
 位 Wei.⁴ Classifier of persons (polite).
19. 女 Nü.³ Female (of persons).
20. 福 Fu.² Happiness, felicity.
 福 氣 Fu-ch'i. Happiness, felicity.
21. 托 T'o.⁴ Rely upon, due to, depend on.
 郎 Lang.² Prince, your son.
23. 犬 Ch'üan.³ Dog, pup.
24. 嫖 Ai, ngai.⁴ Loved, beloved, used of other
 people's daughters.

25. 差 Ch'ai.¹ Commission, send.
事 Shih.⁴ 'Affair, matter, business.
差事 Ch'ai-shih. Commission, public work, ap-
pointment.
辦 Pan.⁴ To do, manage, transact.
公 Kung.¹ Public, official.
26. 商 Shang.¹ Commerce.
27. 奉 Fêng.⁴ To join, attach oneself to.
教 Chiao.¹ Instruction, church.
29. 耶穌 Yeh¹-su.¹ Jesus.
基督 Chi¹-tu.¹ Christ, Christian, Protestant.
主 Chu.³ Lord, used of Christ.
天主 T'ien¹-chu.³ Roman Catholic (lit. Hea-
ven's Lord).

31. V. Chê li yu Yeh su 31. There is a Protestant
 Chiao t'ang. or Church here (Gospel
 Chê li yu fu yin hall).
 t'ang.
32. F. Yu mu shih, nũ 32. Is there a pastor or a
 chiao shih, tsai woman missionary
 chê li ma. here?
- “Chiao-shih” is a term that is commonly used of all foreigners in office in the Church, both men and women. “Chiao-hsi” is teacher. used of those in school work. But “nũ”, female, is usually prefixed to indicate the women.
33. V. Yu chiao shih, mei 33. There is a woman
 yu mu shih. missionary, but no
 pastor.
34. V. Hsien shêng shih 34. When did you come to
 mo shih hou tao China?
 ti Chung Kuo.
35. F. Wo shih san ko 35. I came over three
 yüeh i ch'ien lai months ago.
 ti.
36. V. Ai ya. Hsien shêng 36. My! you speak Chinese
 shuo ti Chung really well.
 Kuo hua chên
 hao.
37. F. Kuo Chiang, kuo 37. You flatter me. I can
 Chiang. Wo pu speak only a few
 kuo hui Chiang sentences.
 chi chũ.
- “Chiang” is the usual term for “preaching”. But as here indicated it also means to speak, perhaps intelligibly!
38. V. and F. Tsai chien, 38. Good-bye, good-bye.
 tsai chien.

31. 堂 T'ang.² Hall, church.
音 Yin.¹ Sound.
福音 Fu-yin. Gospel.
32. 牧 Mu.⁴ Shepherd, pastor.
師 Shih.⁴ Teacher.
士 Shih.⁴ Scholar, teacher.
教士 Chiao-shih. Teacher (used of missionaries).

35. 前 Ch'ien.² Before, formerly.
以前 I ch'ien. Before, ago.

37. 不過 Pu-kuo. But.
講 Chiang.¹ Expound, preach, say.

DIALOGUE No. 9A

THE NUMERALS

I. CARDINALS

A. The numbers one to ten are as follows:—

1. One. I.
2. Two. Erh. Liang.
3. Three. San.
4. Four. Ssu.
5. Five. Wu.
6. Six. Liu.
7. Seven. Ch'i.
8. Eight. Pa.
9. Nine. Chiu.
10. Ten. Shih.

Note that "erh" and "liang" both mean "two". Amongst the numerals "liang" is used with 2,000, *i.e.*, "liang ch'ien", and 20,000, which is "liang wan". In most other cases "erh" is used.

However, when "two" is used as a numeral adjective, *i.e.*, when it precedes nouns in a qualifying sense, "liang" is the correct form, *e.g.*:—

11. Two men. Liang ko jen.
12. Two books. Liang pen shu.

B. The numbers eleven to nineteen are made up of 10 plus the digit, *e.g.*:—

13. Eleven. Shih i. *i.e.*, ten-one.
14. Seventeen. Shih ch'i. *i.e.*, ten-seven, etc.

C. Exact multiples of ten, *i.e.*, 20–90, are made up by the reverse process, *viz.*, the digit followed by 10, as follows:—

15. Twenty. Erh shih. *i.e.*, two-ten.
16. Eighty. Pa shih. *i.e.*, eight-ten, etc.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 9A

9. 九 Chiu.³ Nine.

D. Hundreds and compound numbers above a hundred (pai) are as follows:—

17. One hundred. I pai.
18. Six hundred. Liu pai.
19. Nine hundred. Chiu pai, etc., for the exact hundreds.
20. 110. I pai i shih. (or) i pai i.
21. 112. I pai i shih erh.
22. 115. I pai i shih wu.
23. 170. I pai ch'i.
24. 768. Ch'i pai liu shih pa.

Now exercise yourself and your fellow-student in these numbers, using the following sentence:—

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 25. Che ko shu mu tzu, fan | 25. How do you translate |
| ch'u lai, shih tsen | this number? |
| yang ti nien ni. | |

E. Where a “nought” comes in the middle of the figures, it is usual, though not the universal practice, to insert “ling”, e.g.:—

26. 105. I pai ling wu.
27. 209. Erh pai ling chiu.

To leave out the “ling” in combinations of this kind would lead to confusion, as “i pai wu” would be 150.

F. “Thousand” is “ch'ien”. Compounds and multiples of thousands follow these examples, viz.:—

28. 2,000. Liang ch'ien (erh ch'ien is sometimes used).
29. 1,089. I ch'ien ling pa shih chiu. or I ch'ien pa shih chiu.

There is no possibility of confusion in this instance, so the use of “ling” is optional.

30. 3,903. San ch'ien chiu pai ling san (“ling” is necessary).
31. 3,930. San ch'ien chiu pai san (cf. 30).
32. 10,000. I wan.

25. 目 Mu.⁴ Index, list, eye.
 Shu-mu-tzu. Number(s), figures.
 繙 Fan.¹ To translate, turnover.

26. 零 Ling.² Nought, cipher.

28. 千 Ch'ien.¹ Thousand.

32. 萬 Wan.⁴ Ten thousand, myriad.

33. 11,042. I wan i ch'ien *ling* ssu shih erh.
 34. 30,056. San wan *ling* wu shih liu.
 35. 40,007. Ssu wan *ling* ch'i ko. or
 Ssu wan *ling ling* ch'i.

The device of adding "ko" in the first of these two alternatives serves to indicate that "seven" is a digit. Only multiply the "ling" when it is absolutely essential for clarity. In reading out complex numbers for records more frequent use is made of "ling".

II. ORDINALS

These are formed by the simple expedient of preceding the Cardinal numbers by "ti", as follows:—

36. The first. Ti i.
 T'ou i ko. (This is a common alternative,
 lit. Head one piece.)
 37. The eighteenth. Ti shih pa.
 38. The 135th. Ti i pai san shih wu, etc.

III. FRACTIONS

39. A half. I pan. (One and a half is "i ko pan".)
 40. A tenth. Shih fen chih i.
 41. Three-quarters. Ssu fen chih san.
 42. Seven-eighths. Pa fen chih ch'i.

All fractional numbers are formed in this way, *i.e.*, by putting the greater number, *i.e.*, the denominator, first, add "fen", which means "part", follow this by "chih", which is a possessive, and then finish by the smaller number, *i.e.*, the numerator. *E.g.*, a tenth is "ten parts one", or one out of ten, etc.

36. 頭 T'ou.² Head, first, beginning.

39. 半 Pan.⁴ Half.

40. 分 Fên.¹ A tenth, portion, part, to divide.

Chih.¹ Sign of possessive, like "ti", etc.

DIALOGUE No. 9B

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. A. Tsai ti hsia yu chi
ko tung-hsi. | 1. How many things are
there on the floor? |
| 2. B. Têng i teng, wo
shu shu pa. | 2. Wait a moment while I
count them. |
| 3. A. Tung hsi kou shu
pu kou shu ni. | 3. Are there any things
missing? (lit. are the
full number of things
there) ? |

"Kou shu", enough number, so the full number.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 4. B. Wo k'an shao (ch'a,
tuan) cho i ko. | 4. I think there is one
short. |
| 5. A. Na mo t'a mên pi
hsü pu shang. | 5. Then they must make
it up. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. B. Chin t'ien shih hsing
ch'i (li pai) chi. | 6. What is the day of the
week to-day? |
|---|---|

"Hsing ch'i chi". Note how the "chi" comes at the end, What is the number? (Lit. Day of the week how many?)

- | | |
|---|-------------------------|
| 7. A. Chin t'ien shih hsing
ch'i (li pai) san. | 7. To-day is Wednesday. |
|---|-------------------------|

"Li pai san". Here again note the position of "san", three.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 8. B. Chin t'ien ch'u chi.
Chin t'ien shih-chi.
Chin t'ien êrh shih
chi. | 8. What day of the month
is it to-day (applies
only from first to
tenth), 2. from
eleventh to twen-
tieth, 3. to the rest. |
|---|---|

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| 9. A. Chin t'ien shih ch'u
pa. | 9. It is the eighth. |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|

"Ch'u pa". The expression "ch'u" applies to the first ten days of the month.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 9B

1. 地 Ti.⁴ Earth, floor, locality.

4. 少 Shao.³ Few, little, short of.

5. 必 Pi.⁴ Must, certainly, necessary.
 湏 Hsü.¹ Necessary, must, wait, a moment.
 補 Pu.³ Patch, repair, mend, make up for.
6. 星 Hsing.¹ Star, spark.
 期 Ch'i.² Date, appointed time, expect.
 Hsing-ch'i, week.

7. 禮 Li.³ Ceremony, courtesy, politeness.
 拜 Pai.⁴ Worship, pay respect. Li-pai, week.

8. 初 Ch'u.¹ Beginning, first.

10. B. T'ou i ko yüeh chiao chêng yüeh, mo i ko yüeh (huo ti shih êrh ko yüeh) chiao la yüeh. 10. The first month of the year is called Cheng Yueh, and the last month (orthetwelfth) is called La Yueh.
11. A. Ch'i yü na chi ko yüeh chiao shên-mo. 11. What are the rest of the months called?

"Ch'i yü", the remainder. "Ch'i" is equal to "the", "that", etc.

12. B. Êrh yüeh, san yüeh, ssu yüeh i chih tao shih i yüeh tou shih i yang (tou shih chao li ti). 12. The second, third, fourth, up to the eleventh are the same (or follow the same rule).

"I chih tao", up to, in a series.

Note that in speaking of the months the numeral precedes, just contrary to what has been said above regarding the days of the week.

13. A. K'o shih shih i yüeh yeh chiao tung yüeh. 13. But the eleventh month is also called Tung Yueh (Winter month).
14. B. Nien ti shih shên-mo i ssu. 14. What is meant by "nien ti"?
15. A. Nien ti chiu shih la yüeh tsui hou chi t'ien ti i ssu. 15. It means the last few days of the twelfth month.

Compare the expressions for the first and the last. "T'ou" is used for the former and "mo" for the latter. "T'ou chi t'ien", the first few days. "Hou chi t'ien", the last few days, when the reference is to a fraction of the whole.

16. B. Kuo nien shih shên-mo i ssu. 16. What does "kuo nien" mean?

10. 月 Yüeh.⁴ Moon, month.
正 Chêng.⁴ Right, correct, chief, first month.
末 Mo.⁴ Last, end, dust, not, branches.
腊 La.⁴ Twelfth moon, winter sacrifice.
11. 其 Ch'i.² He, she, it.
餘 Yü.² Surplus. Ch'i yü, the remainder,
surplus.
12. 至 Chih.⁴ Reach, reach to, send.
隨 Sui.² Comply with, according to, follow.
一直 I chih. Straight.
13. 冬 Tung.¹ Winter.
14. 思 Ssu.¹ Think on, ponder, thought.

17. A. "Kuo nien" chiu shih hsin nien,
t'ou i t'ien ti i
ssu. 17. That is the first day of
the New Year.
18. B. Pa chê hsieh wan i êrh, fen k'ai kei
hai tzu wan. 18. Divide these toys up
and give them to the
children to play with.
19. A. Pa chê hsieh t'ang yeh fên kei t'
amen. 19. Divide this toffee
amongst them too.
20. B. K'o i, mei i ko jên kei t'a i fen. 20. Yes, let each have a
portion.
21. A. Wo i ching fên la liang tz'u. 21. I have divided it twice
already.

17. 新 Hsin.¹ New.
18. 玩 Wan.⁴ Enjoy, amuse, play.
藝 I.¹ Skill, craft.
玩藝兒 Wan-i-erh. Playthings, toys.
耍 Shua.² To play, sport, joke.
19. 糖 T'ang.² Sugar, sweets.
20. 每 Mei.³ Each, every.
份 Fên.¹ A portion.
21. 經 Ching.¹ Pass through, manage.
已經 I Ching. Already.

DIALOGUE No. 10

Time by the clock, and other temporal expressions.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. A. Ni shên shang tai la
piao mei yu. | 1. Have you a watch with
you? |
| 2. B. Mei yu. Tan shih
tui mie'rh yu
chung. | 2. No, but there is a clock
opposite. |
| 3. A. Ni k'an yu chi tien
chung. | 3. What time is it? <i>or</i>
See what time it is. |
| 4. B. Wo chin shih yen,
k'an pu ch'ing
ch'u. | 4. I am short-sighted, and
cannot see clearly. |

"K'an pu ch'ing ch'u", an illustration of two words being used together, with the negative in between to denote a qualification of the verbal action—"see . . . not clear".

- | | |
|--|---|
| 5. A. Wo k'an chien la.
Hsien tsai shih
(yu) i tien chung. | 5. I can see. It is one
o'clock now. |
|--|---|

"Shih", is, or "yu", have, are both in common use for expressions of time.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 6. B. Ai. Wo yo la i ko
p'êng yu, shih êrh
tien pan chung
chien mien. I
ching tan wu la. | 6. Oh dear! I made an
appointment with a
friend to see him at
12.30. I am already
late. |
|--|---|

"Tan shih" or "k'o shih" for "but" might be included before "i ching tan wu liao". But, as has been frequently hinted, Chinese are disinclined to use extra words if the sense is already clear.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 7. A. Yeh hsü t'a hai tsai,
têng ni. | 7. Perhaps he is still there,
waiting for you. |
|---|---|

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 10

1. 身 Shên.¹ Body, self.
 身上 Shên-shang. On one's person.
 表 Piao.³ Watch.
2. 面 Mien.⁴ Face, front, side, aspect.
 對面 Tui-mien. Opposite, the opposite side.
 鐘 Chung.¹ Clock, bell.
3. 點 Tien.³ A stroke, mark, dot.
 幾點鐘 Chi-tien-chung. What is the time?
4. 近 Chin.⁴ Near.
 視 Shih.⁴ See, look.
 近視眼 Chin-shih-yen. Near-sighted.
 眼 Yen.³ Eye, the eye.
5. 見 Chien.⁴ To see, perceive.
6. 約 Yüeh.¹ Yo.¹ To make an appointment,
 covenant, bind, agree.
 見面 Chien-mien. To see anyone, interview.
 已 I.³ Particle used as sign of perfect tense
 already.
 經 Ching.¹ Pass through, pass.
 已經 I-ching. Already, past action.
 耽 Tan.¹ Obstruct, prevent, delay.
 誤 Wu.⁴ To thwart, hinder, delay.
7. 許 Hsü.³ Perhaps, may be.
 也許 Yeh-hsü. Perhaps, implying a certain
 doubt, but not too strong a doubt.

8. B. K'ung p'a t'a têng
pu tao wo, tsou
la.
8. I fear he will not have
been able to wait and
will have gone.

"Teng pu tao", cannot wait. Lit. wait not arrive. "Pu tao" is commonly used with verbs to express inability.

9. A. Hsien tsai chi tien
chung.
9. What time is it now?
10. B. I tien kuo i k'o. or
I tien i k'o.
10. A quarter past one.
11. A. Yao shih shih êrh
tien i k'o, wo hai
k'oikantêshang.
11. If it were a quarter past
twelve I could still
be there in time.

"Kan tê shang". Lit. catch up get up. Notice the use of "shang", which with "tê" is commonly used for ability to do this or that. Cf. note 8 above.

12. B. Yao shih shih êrh
tien ch'a i k'o, na
chiu kêng hao.
12. If it were a quarter to
twelve, it would be
better.

"Kêng", more, is the most common form of expressing the comparative degree.

13. A. Hsien tsai chi tien
chung.
13. What time is it now?
14. B. I tien êrh shih wu
fen.
14. Twenty-five minutes
past one.
15. A. Na mo, tsai têng
shih fen chung,
chiu shih liang
tien ch'a êrh shih
wu fên, shih pu
shih.
15. Then in ten minutes
time (lit. again wait
ten minutes), it will
be twenty-five min-
utes to two, won't
it?

Note "liang" for two. The other form "erh" is used with most numeral expressions. "Liang" is commonly used before nouns.

"Shih pu shih", is not is, right not right, commonly used at the end of statements to throw what precedes into question form, like the French n'est ce pas, and many other Continental languages.

8. 恐 K'ung.³ Fear.
怕 P'a.⁴ Fear, afraid.
恐 K'ung-p'a. Fear, I fear.
怕
10. 刻 K'o.⁴ A quarter, fifteen minutes.
11. 趕 Kan.³ To catch up, pursue, drive.
12. 更 Kêng.⁴ Sign of comparative, more, more
so.
差 Ch'a.¹ Short of, to err, differ, also read
Ch'ai¹, to send.

16. B. Pu ts'o, pu ts'o. 16. Quite so (lit. not wrong).

"Pu ts'o", not wrong, a common alternative to "tui la", right, and used in same sense.

17. A. Ch'ü nien hsia t'ien, 17. Where did you go last
ni shang na'erh Summer, to avoid
pi shu ch'ü ti. the great heat?

18. B. Ch'ü nien wo mên 18. We did not go any-
na'erh yeh mei yu where last year, but
ch'ü. Ch'ien nien the year before last
wo mên tao Lao we went to Lao Shan
Shan ch'ü, pi shu to escape the heat.
ti.

"Na'erh yeh mei yu ch'ü", "anywhere also have not gone", so "we went nowhere". This is a very common idiom. Cf. sentence 20 for another example.

19. A. Ni ts'ung Lao Shan 19. What did you do after
hui lai i hou, tso you returned from
la shih mo. Lao Shan?

"I hou", after, like "i ch'ien", before (see 11²⁹) follows the verb to which it refers.

20. B. Shih mo yeh mei yu 20. I did nothing. I just
tso, wo tsai chia remained idly at
li hsien cho. home.
21. A. Ts'ung ch'ien ni pu 21. Weren't you fond of
shih ai ta wang tennis at one time?
ch'iu ma.

22. B. Na ko shih hou, ta 22. In those days I liked
wang ch'iu, t'i both tennis and foot-
chüeh ch'iu, tou ball.
shih wo hsi huan
ti.

16. 錯 Ts'o.⁴ Wrong, fault.
17. 夏 Hsia.⁴ Summer.
 避 Pi.⁴ Avoid, escape, flee.
 伏 Fu.² Summer heat.
 暑 Shu.³ Summer heat.
18. 前 Ch'ien.² Before.
 前年 Ch'ien nien. The year before last.
 嶗 Lao.³ Name of hill.
 山 Shan.¹ Hill, mountain.
19. 從 Ts'ung.² From, follow, obey.
 後 Hou.⁴ After, behind.
20. 閒 Hsien.² Leisure, idle.
21. 愛 Ai.⁴ To love, to like.
 打 Ta.³ To beat, strike, to play at . . .
 球 Ch'iu.⁴ Ball.
 打球 Ta ch'iu. To play with a ball, tennis.
 打網球 Ta wang ch'iu. Tennis, to play tennis.
22. 網 Wang.³ Net; see the last.
 脚 Chiao.² Chüeh.² Foot.
 脚 Chüeh-ch'iu. Football.
 踢 T'i.¹ To kick.
 喜 Hsi.³ Joy, glad, pleased.

23. A. Na mo, ni hou t'ien lai, ho wo ta wang ch'iu, hao ma. 23. Then come and play tennis with me the day after to-morrow; does that appeal?
24. B. Ta hou t'ien hsing pu hsing. 24. Will three days hence do?
25. A. Pu kan shuo, yin wei ch'ien t'ien wo ho i ko p'êng yu yo hao, ta hou t'ien ho t'a ta p'ai. 25. I can't say. The day before yesterday I fixed up with a friend to play cards with him three days hence.
26. B. Na mo, chiu shih hou t'ien pa. 26. Then let it be the day after to-morrow.
27. A. Hao, ni tai liang ko ch'iu p'ai tzu lai. 27. Good, bring two racquets with you.

22. 歡 Huan.¹ Rejoice, pleased.
 喜 Hsi-huan. To be pleased.
24. 大後天 Ta-hou-t'ien. Three days hence.
25. 因 Yin.¹ Cause, because.
 爲 Wei.² Because, do, make, be.
 朋 P'êng.² Friend, comrade, associate.
 友 Yu.³ Friend.
 定 Ting.⁴ Fix, settle, certain.
 規 Kuei.¹ Rule, fix.
 定規 Ting-kuei. To have arranged, settled, settle,
 fix.
 牌 P'ai.³ Cards, dominoes.
 打牌 Ta p'ai. To play cards, etc.
27. 拍 P'ai.² To beat, clap, etc.
 球拍子 Ch'iu-p'ai-tzu. Tennis racquet.

DIALOGUE No. 11

More about watches, and expressions of time.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. A. Ni yu piao mei yu. | 1. Have you a watch? |
| 2. B. Mei yu. Tan shih
wo chia li yu i tso
chung. | 2. No, but there is a clock
at home. |

Note that expressions of place or time tend to come early in Chinese sentences. Here "tsai chia li", or "chia li", at home, comes first, whereas in English we put such expressions last.

"Tso", a classifier for clock, bell, etc.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3. A. Na ko chung tui pu
tui. | 3. Is the clock right? |
| 4. B. Pu tui, na ko chung
tsou tê man. | 4. No, that clock is slow
(lit. goes slow). |
| 5. A. Wo ti piao tsou tê
k'uai. | 5. My watch gains (lit.
goes fast). |
| 6. B. Na mo, tê pa k'uai
man kai i kai. | 6. Then you must alter
the regulator. |

"K'uai man", lit. quick, slow, a good illustration of the way in which adjectives of opposite meaning are joined together to express the abstract noun connected with the idea of both. Here, e.g., "k'uai man" means speed, regulator.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 7. A. Kai la, yeh mei yu
yung. | 7. I have altered it, but
without effect. |
| 8. B. Tsên yang mei yu
yung ni. | 8. How is that? |
| 9. A. Wo ti piao tsou ti
mei yu chun. | 9. My watch is unreliable
(goes without a stan-
dard). |
| 10. B. Na mo, ni ti piao tê
hsiu li. | 10. Then your watch should
be repaired. |

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 11

2. 座 Tso.⁴ The classifier of clocks, bells, etc.

4. 走 Tsou.³ To go, walk, movement of any kind.

慢 Man.⁴ Slow.

5. 快 K'uai.⁴ Quick, quickly.

快慢 K'uai-man. The speed, speed.

6. 改 Kai.³ Alter, change.

7. 用 Yung.⁴ Use, usefulness.

9. 準 Chun.³ Standard, a standard.

10. 修 Hsiu.¹ Repair, put in order.

理 Li.² Adjust, arrange.

11. A. Pu ts'o. K'o shih 11. Quite right, but I do
 pu chih tao shui not know who can
 nêng t'i wo hsiu repair it for me.
 li.

"T'i" or "kei" are used for the Dative Case, to do anything for anyone.

12. B. Wo jên tê i ko chung 12. I know a watch and
 piao Chiang. clock maker.

"Jên tê", to know a person. "Chih tao", to know, is used mostly of things and affairs.

13. A. Hao, ni na wo ti 13. Good, would you be
 piao, chiao t'a good enough to take
 k'an k'an, hao pu my watch and let
 hao. him see it?

"Hao pu hao", lit. good not good, used at end of statements, like "shih pu shih" above (see Dialogues 10, 15) to throw statement into polite form of question.

14. B. K'o i. Pu kuo chin 14. Certainly, but I have
 t'ien shang wu, no time this morning.
 wo mei yu kung
 fu.

15. A. Hsia wu ni yu kung 15. Will you have time this
 fu mei yu. afternoon?

16. B. Pu i ting. Ni pa 16. I am not sure. But
 piao kei wo, Yao give me the watch,
 shih hou pan t'ien and if I have time
 yu kung fu, wo this afternoon I will
 chiu kei ni sung take it for you.
 ch'ü.

17. A. Lao chia, lao chia. 17. Thank you very much.
 Sorry to trouble you.

18. B. Na mei yu shih mo. 18. That's nothing.

10. 修理 Hsiu-li. To repair.
11. 能 Nêng.² Can, able.
替 T'i.⁴ For, instead of.
12. 認 Jên.⁴ To recognise, to know, acknowledge.
得 Jên-tê.² To recognise, be acquainted with,
to know.
匠 Chiang.⁴ An artisan.
鐘表匠 Chung-piao-chiang. A watch-maker.
13. 拿 Na.² To take, take hold of.
14. 午 Wu.³ Noon.
上午 Shang-wu. Forenoon.
工 Kung.¹ Work, task.
工夫 Kung-fu. Time, leisure.
15. 下 Hsia.⁴ Below, beneath.
下午 Hsia-wu. Afternoon.
16. 定 Ting.⁴ Fix, settle, certain.
一定 I-ting. Certainly, without doubt.
要 Yao.⁴ In the sense of "if", introducing
the Conditional mood.
後 Hou.⁴ After, afterwards, later.
後半天 Hou-pan-t'ien. Afternoon (later half day).
17. 勞 Lao.² To trouble, hinder.
駕 Chia.⁴ Chariot, progress.

19. A. Chin t'ien wan shang, wo ch'ing chi ko p'êng yu ch'ih fan. Ni nêng lai pu neng lai.
19. I am inviting a few friends to dinner this evening. Can you come?

"Neng lai pu neng lai", lit. can come no can come", the usual form of verbal question.

20. B. Pu kan tang. Wo hai yu shih.
20. Thank you, but I have something else on.
21. A. Ni tsui hao nêng lai. Wo ch'ing ni p'ei k'o.
21. I do hope you can come. I want you to help to entertain the guests (lit. best you can come, I want, etc.).
22. B. Ch'ih fan yao chi ko chung t'ou.
22. How long will the meal last?

"Chung t'ou" is actual hours of protracted time. "Tien" in "tien chung" is used of hours of time by the clock.

23. A. Ta kai yung liang ko chung t'ou.
23. Probably about two hours.

"Ta-kai", probably, on the whole, etc. "Kai" means a summary of anything. "Ta" is big, so big summary, summarising the matter.

24. B. Ch'ih la fan i hou, yao ta p'ai ma.
24. Are you going to play cards after dinner?
25. A. Sui pien. Wo tzu chi tao hsiang hsia chi p'an ch'i.
25. Just as you please. For myself I should like a few games of chess.

17. 勞駕 Lao-chia. Polite expression of thanks. Lit.
I have hindered your chariot.
19. 晚上 Wan-shang. Evening.
21. 最 Tsui.⁴ Most, every.
-
- 陪 P'ei.² To accompany, entertain, help to entertain.
- 陪客 P'ei-k'o. Help to entertain guests.
-
22. 鐘頭 Chung-t'ou.² An hour, an hour's time.
概 Kai.⁴ All, general.
-
23. 大概 Ta-kai. Probably, presumably.
-
25. 便 Pien.⁴ Convenient; read p'ien, cheap.
隨便 Sui-pien. Suit your own convenience, be at ease.
- 自 Tzu.⁴ Self, natural, from.
- 己 Chi.³ Self, personal.
- 自己 Tzu-chi. Oneself.
- 盤 P'an.² Plate, board, classifier of games of chess.
- 下 Hsia.⁴ To play (chess), with the following.
棋 Ch'i.² Chess.

26. B. Ní mên hsia ch'i, ta chia k'o i ch'u ch'ü, kuang i kuang.
 26. You play chess, the rest (lit. all) will go out for a stroll.
27. A. Na tao pu hsing. Nü k'o k'o i tso chên hsien, nan k'o ch'ih yen, t'an t'an pa.
 27. That won't do. The ladies can get on with their sewing, while the gentlemen smoke and chat.

Here "tao" comes in again—meaning "on the contrary".

28. B. Tsa mên pu tao pan yeh i ch'ien, pu hui fên shou ti.
 28. (In that case) we shall not be able to break up before midnight.
- "Fên shou", lit. divide or separate hands, is used of "taking one's leave or departure".
29. A. Shih i tien chung i ch'ien, hui ch'ü chiu hao.
 29. If you leave before eleven, that should be all right.

26. 大家 Ta-chia. All together, the group.
 逛 Kuang.⁴ Stroll, visit.
 逛逛 Kuang-kuang. To take a stroll.
27. 倒 Tao.⁴ A strong adversative, but, nevertheless, on the contrary, to fall.³
 鍼 Chên.¹ Needle, needle-work (with the next).
 線 Hsien.⁴ Thread, needle-work (with the last).
 鍼線 Chên-hsien. Needle-work.
 男 Nan.² Male.
 客 K'o.⁴ Guest, traveller.
 喫煙 Ch'ih-yen. To smoke.
 抽煙 Ch'ou-yen. To smoke.
 譚 T'an.² To chat, talk, gossip.
 譚 T'an t'an. To have a chat.
 28. 夜 Yeh.⁴ Night.

DIALOGUE No. 12

Between Master and Servant on domestic matters, such as windows, doors, boxes, buckets and the well.

Master, *M.* Servant, *S.*

1. *M.* Pa ch'uang hu kuan shang. 1. Close the window.

Note again that "pa" introduces the object of the verb, and that the main verb comes after the object in this construction.

2. *S.* K'ung p'a kuan pu shang. 2. I fear I cannot close it.

Here we have another illustration of the rule of a negative coming between the two parts of a composite verb to express "impossibility" of the action being performed.

3. *M.* Tsê-mo kuan pu shang. 3. How is that?

4. *S.* Yu mao ping. 4. There is something wrong.

"Mao" is a fault—a defect.

"Ping" is a positive flaw—like a sickness.

"Mao ping" together equals "something wrong".

5. *M.* Yu shih mo mao ping. 5. What is wrong with it?

6. *S.* Chê chi t'ien, t'ien ch'i fa ch'ao, 6. The weather has been
chiao ch'uang hu very damp the last
k'uang tzu tsou few days, and the
la fêng. window-frame has
become warped.

"T'ien"—notice the various uses of this one word—day, weather, heaven, the heavens, etc.

Learn to use "fa" in the sense of "to be", "to become", "to be in a state of"; e.g., "hsin li fa mên"—I am sad. Literally—In my heart is produced sadness.

"Chiao"—to cause, causing, equivalent to our English "so that", and when used with a verb forming the passive voice.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 12

1. 窗 Ch'uang.¹ Window.
 戶 Hu.⁴ A hole, opening, screen.
 窗戶 Ch'uang-hu. Window.
 關 Kuan.¹ To close, bar, put to.
4. 毛 Mao.² Defective, hair, surface.
 病 Ping.⁴ Disease, illness.
 毛病 Mao-ping. Fault, defect, flaw.
6. 氣 Ch'i.⁴ Atmosphere, air, etc.
 天 T'ien.¹ Heaven, the upper air.
 天氣 T'ien-ch'i. The weather.
 發 Fa.¹ To produce, become.
 潮 Ch'ao.² Damp, dampness, humid, tide.
 框 K'uang.⁴ Frame.
 縫 Fêng.² A seam, split, crack.

7. *M. Na mo, tê chiao mu* 7. Then we had better call
 chiang lai, hsiu li, in a carpenter to put
 hsiu li. it right.

The Chinese are fond of repetition of the verb, especially when positive action is to be expressed.

8. *S. Shih ti. Wo chiao* 8. Yes, I will call in Crafts-
 Li Ssu fu lai, k'an man Lee to come and
 i k'an. look at it.

"Shih ti"—equal to "right!", "yes!", etc.

9. *M. Ch'ien mên so shang* 9. Is the front door
 la mei yu. locked?

10. *S. So shang la. or* 10. Yes, it is locked. *or*
 So pu shang. Na I can't lock it. The
 ko so shang la lock is rusty.
 hsiu.

"Shang la hsiu". "Shang" is "to add to", "become"; "hsiu" is rust. So "add rust"—rusty.

11. *M. Na yao shih lai,* 11. Bring the key and let
 shih i shih. us try it.

You could say "Pa yao shih na lai". Both constructions are common and equally correct.

"Shih i shih"—try a try—one the verbal form, the other a noun.

12. *S. Tsui hao hsien t'u i* 12. We had better try a
 tie'rh yu. little oil first.

"Tsui hao"—literally "the best"—indicating that any course of action other than the one suggested would be inferior—so "It would be best to do . . . so and so".

13. *M. Ni shuo ti tui, hsien* 13. You are right, first put
 t'u i tie'rh yu pa. a little oil on.

"Ni shuo ti" is a shortened form of the relative clause "Ni so shuo ti"—what you have said.

14. *M. Pa hou mên k'ai* 14. Open the back door.
 k'ai pa.

"K'ai k'ai". You could also use "K'ai i k'ai"—"open an opening"—on lines of 11 above.

7. 木 Mu.⁴ Wood, timber.
木匠 Mu-chiang. Carpenter, joiner.
8. 司 Ssu.¹ Master, manager, control.
夫 Fu.¹ A master of craft.
司夫 Ssu-fu. A leading workman, foreman,
skilled artisan.
9. 前 Ch'ien.² Front, before.
鎖 So.³ Lock, to lock.
10. 銹 Hsiu.⁴ Rust, to rust.
11. 鑰 Yao.⁴ Yo.⁴ A key.
匙 Shih.³ A key, a spoon.
鑰匙 Yao-shih. A key.
試 Shih.⁴ To try, to test, experiment.
12. 塗 T'u.² To grease, to oil, smear.
油 Yu.² Oil, fat, grease.
14. 開 K'ai.¹ To open.

15. S. Na ko mên wo i ching k'ai la. 15. I have already opened it.

"I ching"—already passed—so "already", the commonest expression for things already done.

16. M. Pu yao tsai kuan shang. 16. Keep it open (lit. don't close it again).

17. S. Yao shih pa mên ch'ang k'ai, k'ung p'a hsiao t'ou chin lai, t'ou tung hsi. 17. But if we leave the door wide open, I fear that thieves might come in and steal some things.

"Yao" usually means "want", and so it may be interpreted here—"if you want" to leave, etc., and so it becomes a sign of the Conditional mood.

18. M. K'o pu shih ma. Pu ju pa mên kuan shang. 18. That is so. You had better close the door.

"K'o pu shih ma"—But is it not so? so That is so!

19. S. Chê ko p'ing tzu ti sai tzu, wo ch'ü pu ch'u lai. 19. I can't extract the cork out of this bottle.

"Ch'ü pu ch'u lai"—literally take not come out.

20. M. Na shih yin wei mei yu ho shih ti tung hsi. Têyung iko lo ssu chuan. 20. That is because you haven't a suitable gadget. You must use a corkscrew.

21. M. Pa chê ko hsiang tzu ta k'ai. 21. Open this box.

16. 關 Kuan.¹ To close, bar, put to.
17. 敞 Ch'ang.³ To open, wide open, disclose.
偷 T'ou.¹ To steal, a thief.
19. 瓶 P'ing.² Bottle, vase.
塞 Sai.⁴ Se.⁴ Cork, stopper.
取 Ch'ü.² To take off or out.
20. 因 Yin.¹ Cause, reason.
爲 Wei.⁴ Because, on account of.
因爲 Yin-wei. Because.
式 Shih.⁴ Pattern, shape, fashion.
合式 Ho-shih. Suitable.
螺 Lo.² Conch, small screw.
絲 Ssu.¹ Wire, thread.
轉 Chuan.³ To turn—*re*, again.
螺絲轉 Lo-ssu-chuan. A corkscrew.
21. 箱 Hsiang.¹ Box.
匣 Hsia.² Small box, crate.

- Pa chē ko hsia tzu Open this small box.
 ta k'ai.
 Pa chē ko ho tzu ta Open this tin.
 k'ai.
 Pa chē ko t'ung tzu Open this tin, bucket,
 ta k'ai. etc.
22. S. K'ai chē ko hsiang 22. This box is hard to
 tzu, hên fei shih. open.
23. M. Tsên yang fei shih 23. What is the trouble?
 ni.

Note "ni" at the end of a question which already contains an interrogative word or phrase; here "tsên-ni"—how?

24. S. Ting tzu t'ai to, 24. There are too many
 ch'üan tou shang nails and they are all
 hsiu la. rusty.

Note position of "tou"; it always comes "second". At any rate it never occupies the first place in a sentence or clause.

25. M. Na ko hao pan. Ni 25. That's a small matter
 shang Wanghsien (lit. easy to manage).
 shêng na li ch'ü, Go over to Mr.
 chieh t'a ti ch'ien Wang's and borrow
 tzu. his pincers.

You cannot say "Ni shang Wang hsien shêng ch'ü". You must add the "na-li" after the name to express motion towards a person.

26. S. Yao shih Wang 26. But suppose Mr. Wang
 hsien shêng pu is not at home, whom
 tsai chia, wên shall I ask for the
 shui ch'ü chieh loan of them?
 ni.

Note "pu tsai chia" for not at home. Do not say "pu tsai" or "pu tsai la", as that would mean "he is dead".
 "Wên", "ken" or "ho" are all permissible—meaning "of" or "from" whom.

27. M. T'a chia li tsung yu 27. There must be a servant
 yung jên, chiu at home, ask him for
 hsiang t'a chieh, the loan (of the pin-
 hao la. cers).

"Tsung yu" or "pi shih yu" for "there must be".

21. 盒筒 Ho.² A tin or box, casket.
 T'ung.² A tin, container.
22. 費事 Fei.⁴ Waste, expend.
 Fei-shih. A wasteful affair, difficult.
24. 釘全 Ting.¹ A nail, to nail.
 Ch'uan.³ All.
25. 鉗 Ch'ien.² Pincers, tongs.
27. 用人 Yung-jen. Servant, one used.
 總 Tsung.³ Certainly.
 伺 Hsiang.⁴ Towards, of, etc.

28. S. Shih ti, wo chiu ch'ü. 28. Right, I will go along.

29. M. Ni ching kuo yüan tzu ti shih hou, k'an k'an shui ching, kai shang la mei yu. 29. As you pass through the garden (yard), just look to see if the well is covered.

Note this circumlocutory clause with the "when" represented by "ti-shih-hou" at the end. Literally "your passing over the yard's time".

30. S. Wo chin t'ien ch'ing tsao, ta wan la shui, chiu pa ching kai shang la. 30. I covered the well, after I had finished drawing water, early this morning.

31. M. Ni na chi ko t'ung tzu, tou ch'êng (tao) man la shui ma. 31. Have you filled all those buckets with water?

32. S. Chia li so yu ti t'ung tzu, wo tou ch'êng man la shui. 32. I have filled all the buckets there are in the house with water.

"So yu ti" = "what there are", equal to "all that there are".

33. M. Yüan tzu li na ko ta shui kang, chuang ti shih tsang shui, ni tao ch'u ch'ü la mei yu. 33. That big water butt in the garden was full of dirty water. Have you poured it all out?

After "yuan tzu li" you don't need to add "ti", the possessive, although the sense seems to require it. The "na ko" takes the place of the "ti".

29. 圍 Yüan.² Courtyard, garden.
井 Ching.³ A well.
蓋 Kai.⁴ To cover.
30. 清 Ch'ing.¹ Dawn, daybreak.
早 Tsao.³ Early.
打 Ta.³ To draw up.
完 Wan.² To finish, complete.
31. 桶 T'ung.³ A bucket, barrel.
盛 Ch'êng.² To fill, fill up; to contain. Also
read sheng⁴, abundant, flourishing.
滿 Man.³ Full, to fill.
32. 所 So.³ The relative pronoun. That which,
those which, etc.
所有的 So-yu-ti. What there is.
33. 缸 Kang.¹ Butt, large vessel for water, etc.,
cistern.
裝 Chuang.¹ To contain—fill in, load, pack.
髒 Tsang.¹ Dirty, filthy.
倒 Tao.⁴ To pour, upset.
倒出去 Tao ch'u ch'ü. To pour away.

34. S. Wo pa na ko tsang shui, wan ch'üan tao ch'u ch'ü la, i tie'rh yeh mei yu liu. 34. I have emptied that dirty water out completely. There is not a drop left.

The repetition for the purposes of emphasis of "wan ch'üan", in the form "wan wan ch'üan ch'üan ti", is very common.

"Tao ch'u ch'ü"—the "ch'ü" suggests throwing *away from* you. If it were "tao ch'u lai" that sense would not necessarily be implied.

Note position of "i tie'rh" for emphasis—"even one drop is not left".

35. M. Wo pa i chien shih ch'ing wang chi la. 35. I have forgotten something.
36. S. Shih shih mo shih ch'ing. 36. What is that?
37. M. Tsa mên ching li pie'rh ti shui, shih k'u ti, hai shih t'ien ti ni. 37. Is the water in our well bitter or sweet?
38. S. Shih t'ien ti, k'o i yung lai chu fan, p'ao ch'a. 38. Sweet, usable for cooking or making tea.

34. 完全
全
留 Wan-ch'üan. Complete, perfect.
Ch'üan.³ Perfect, complete, the whole.
Liu.³ To leave, retain, keep.
35. 忘 Wang.² To forget.
記 Chi.⁴ To remember.
忘 記 Wang-chi. To forget, *sic.* forget to remem-
ber!
- 件 Chien.⁴ An article, item, classifier.
37. 苦 K'u.³ Bitter.
甜 T'ien.² Sweet.
38. 煮 Chu.¹ To boil, cook.

DIALOGUE No. 13

Talk with Servant on domestic matters—*continued*.

1. M. Pa chē i chang cho tzu pan tao lou shang ch'ü. 1. Take this table upstairs.

Note "chang" as the classifier of tables, benches, etc., also that verbs of movement usually carry an auxiliary, like "tao", to arrive.

2. S. I ko jên pan pu tung, tê chiao chi ko jên lai pang mang. 2. But one man can't move it. I must get a few men to help.

The positive of "pan pu tung"—"can't move it"—is "pan tung la"—can be moved, or can move it; so with all expressions of this kind.

3. M. Yao chi ko jên pang mang. 3. How many men will you need to help?

"Pang mang"—literally "help busy".

4. S. Chih shao yao san ko jên. 4. Three men at least.

5. M. Ku san ko jên lai t'ai cho tzu, ching chi pu shang suan. 5. But to hire three men solely for this is not economical.

"Pu shang suan"—"not up reckon"—no advantage.

6. S. K'o chên pu shang suan. Pu ju ku t'a men i t'ien ti kung fu, hai k'o i chiao t'a mên tso pieh ti shih ch'ing. 6. Truly it is not economical. We had better hire them for the day so that we can give them other things to do as well.

"Chiao" is "to cause" give them to do.

"Pieh ti"—something different.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 13

1. 張 Chang.¹ Classifier of tables, etc.
 桌 Cho.¹ Table.
 搬 Pan.¹ To move, remove, transport.
 樓 Lou.² A second storey, tower, upper storey,

2. 幫 Pang.¹ Help, assist.
 忙 Mang.² Busy.
 動 Tang.⁴ To move.

4. 至 Chih.⁴ Extreme, reach to, utmost.
 少 Shao.³ Few, little (of quantity).
5. 雇 Ku.⁴ To hire.
 經 Ching.¹ To manage.
 濟 Chi.⁴ To help, save, up to the mark.
 經 Ching chi. Economic.
 算 Suan.⁴ To reckon, calculate.
 上 Shang suan. To be of advantage, economic. Lit. reckon on top side.
6. 別 Pieh.² Other, another, extra, part from, separate.

7. M. Na shih tzu jan ti. Hai yu shên-mo shih, chiao t'a mên tso ni. 7. That is naturally so (quite so). What other things can we give them to do?
8. S. Shih ch'ing tao pu shao. T'a mên k'ê i ta sao yüan tzu, shou shih ch'u fang. 8. There are many things to do. They can sweep the yard, and put the kitchen straight (tidy up).

"Shih ch'ing tao pu shao"—"affairs on contrary not few".
 "Tao" is used to express something different from what has been proposed, either explicitly or implicitly.

9. M. Ku chê chung jen, i t'ien tê kei to shao kung ch'ien. 9. How much in wages will this type of man want if hired?

"I t'ien"—one day—also a whole day.

"Tê to shao"—ought how much?

10. S. Chê yang ti jên tu suan hsiao kung. I t'ien kei t'a liu mao ch'ien chiu hsing. 10. This type of man counts as a labourer (small workman). To hire one such man for a day would take 60 cents.

11. M. Ku liang ko jên pu kou ma. 11. Wouldn't two men be enough?

12. S. Pu kou. Chê ko cho tzu hên chung, liang ko jên t'ai pu tung. 12. No, the table is very heavy, and two men couldn't carry it.

"T'ai"—to carry—is used when two or more people are employed. For one person to carry on one's shoulder "tan" or "t'iao" is used.

13. M. Na mo chiu ku san ko jên pa. T'a mên chi tien chung shang kung. 13. Then hire three men. What time will they start work?

"Shang kung"—go up to work. Note the verbal use of "shang"—it is in the third tone when used as a verb.

7. 自 Tzu.⁴ Natural, self, from.
 自然 Tzu-jan. Naturally.
8. 掃 Sao.³ To sweep.
 打掃 Ta sao. Sweep, big sweep.
 收拾 Shou.¹ To receive, collect, gather.
 拾 Shih.² Arrange, pick up.
 收拾 Shou-shih. Arrange, tidy up.
 廚房 Ch'u.² Cook (house)—kitchen cook.
 房 Fang.² A room.
 廚房 Ch'u-fang. Kitchen.
 院 Yuan.⁴ A court-yard.
10. 都 Tu.¹ Tou. All, both, altogether.
 工 Kung.¹ Work, labour.
 小工 Hsiao-kung. Coolie, labourer (lit. small labour).
 毛 Mao.³ A ten cent. coin, ten cents.
11. 夠 Kou.⁴ Enough, sufficient.
12. 重 Chung.⁴ Heavy, cumbersome.
 抬 T'ai.² Lift, carry between two, or on shoulders.

14. S. Tsao shang liu tien chung shang kung, wan shang liu tien chung hsia kung. 14. They will start at six a.m. and finish at six p.m.

15. M. Hsiu hsi chi ko chung t'ou. 15. How many hours off for rest?

"Chung t'ou"—not "chung tien"—the latter being confined to time by the clock. If you want to use "chung tien" you must add "ti kung fu"; e.g., "hsiu hsi chi . . . tien chung ti kung fu".

16. S. Chung wu t'a mên yao hsieh I ko pan chung t'ou. 16. They will rest an hour and a half at noon.

One and a half—"i ko pan".

17. M. Chiu chô yang ti pan pa. 17. Then we will proceed along these lines.

18. M. Pa chô chi pa i tzu pan tao na pien ch'ü. 18. Move these chairs to that side.

19. S. Na pien mei yu k'ung ti, wo hsiang fang tsai wai t'ou hao. 19. There is no room over there. I think it will be good (better) to put them outside.

20. M. K'o shih pa i tzu lao tiu tsai wai pien, pu ta hao, hai pu ju na tao ti yin tzu li mien ch'ü. 20. But to leave chairs outside for any length of time (lao) is not very good. It would be better to take them into the cellar.

14. 早上 Tsao³ shang. Early in the morning.
 下 Hsia.⁴ Down, to put down, to go down.
15. 休息 Hsiu.¹ Rest, recuperate, relax.
 息 Hsi.² Rest, to rest.
 鐘頭 Chung-t'ou. Hour, of protracted time.
16. 中午 Chung-wu.³ Mid-day, noon.
 歇 Hsieh.¹ To rest, ease off.
18. 把 Pa.³ Classifier of chairs, etc.
 椅 I.³ Chair, couch.
 到 Tao.⁴ To arrive, get to, at.
 邊 Pien.¹ Side, one side.
19. 地 Ti.⁴ Ground, floor, etc.
 空 K'ung.¹ Empty.
 空地 K'ung-ti. Room, in the sense of space.
 Lit. empty ground.
 想 Hsiang.³ To think, reflect.
 放 Fang.⁴ To put, place, set down, to let go.
 外 Wai.⁴ Outside, foreign.
 頭 Wai-t'ou. Outside, in the open.
20. 老 Lao.³ A long time, old.
 丟 Tiu.³ To leave.
 外邊 Wai-pien. Outside, out of doors.
 蔭 Yin.¹ A cellar, underground, secret.
 地蔭子 Ti-yin-tzu. The cellar, basement.

21. S. Wo hsiang ch'i i ko hao fa tzu lai. 21. I have thought of a better idea.

"Hsiang ch'i . . . lai" is the usual expression. Note how much comes between the parts of this compound verb—the whole subject of thought.

22. M. Shih shên-mo fa tzu. 22. What is your plan?

23. S. Hsien pa chê i t'iao ch'ang cho tzu, pan tao k'o fang li ch'ü. 23. First take that long table into the guest room.

24. M. Shih ti, i hou tsai tso shên-mo ni. 24. All right, and what will you do after that?

25. S. Tsai pa chê i t'iao têng tzu tiao kuo lai, chiu yu ti fang, fang chê chi pa i tzu la. 25. Then turn this bench (form) round, and there will be room for these chairs.

26. M. Shih ti, chiu chê yang ti pan pa. 26. Good, do it that way.

27. S. Hsien-shêng tê hsien jang wo pa cho tzu shang ti tung hsi pan tsou. 27. But you must first allow me to move the things (from the table).

28. M. Tzu jan. Tsai huan i chang kan ching ti cho pu. 28. Naturally. After that change the table-cloth for a clean one.

"Chang"—classifier of table-cloth.

29. S. Wan shang ch'ing k'o pu ch'ing k'o. 29. Are you inviting any guests to dinner to-night?

30. M. Ch'ing ssu wei k'o, so i yao shou shih fan t'ing. 30. Yes, four. So you must put everything tidy in the dining-room.

"So i", generally speaking, is equivalent to our "so", "and so", "therefore", etc.

21. 起 Ch'i.³ To rise, arise, get up, spring up.
 想起 Hsiang-ch'i. To think of a thing.
 法 Fa.³ Method, manner, rule.
 法子 Fa-tzu. Method, way of doing things.

23. 先 Hsien.¹ First, in the front.
 條 T'iao.² Classifier of long things, like long
 tables, benches, etc.
 客房 K'o-fang. Guest-room, drawing-room.
 裡 Li.³ Inside, within.
24. 以後 I-hou. Afterwards, behind.

25. 凳 Têng.⁴ Form, bench, long-seat.
 掉 Tiao.⁴ To change round, turn round, twist
 round.
 掉過來 Tiao-kuo-lai. To turn around.

26. 辦 Pan.⁴ To do, transact, manage.

27. 讓 Jang.⁴ To allow, permit.

28. 換 Huan.⁴ To change.
 乾 Kan.¹ Dry, clean.
 淨 Ching.⁴ Clean.
 乾淨 Kan-ching. Clean.
 布 Pu.⁴ Cloth.

30. 所以 So-i. Therefore, so (logical conclusion).
 廳 T'ing.¹ Court, hall.
 飯廳 Fan-t'ing. Dining-room.

31. S. Ta-ssu-fu hsiao pu 31. Does the cook know
hsiao tê. (about this)?

"Ta-ssu-fu"—the cook, often the senior member of domestic staff—chéf.

Note "hsiao pu hsiao te", but often the whole compound verb is duplicated.

32. M. Hsiao tê. Wo tso 32. Yes, he knows. I gave
t'ien fên fu la t'a. him his orders yesterday.

33. S. Na mo, wo chiu hao 33. Then I will prepare
hao êrh ti yü pei. everything in apple-pie order.

"Hao hao êrh ti"—thoroughly, very well.

34. M. Hao. Ti t'an yao 34. Good, sweep the car-
sao i sao; hsi tzu pet; turn over the
yao fan kuo lai; mats; wash the
ch'i chü yao hsi crockery, etc., quite
kan ching; tuan clean; and when you
fan ti-shih hou, are serving up the
yao ling li, shih- food, do it smartly.
mo tou yao chêng Everything must be
chêng ch'i ch'i ti. in proper order.

"Shih-mo tou yao", lit. "anything all want", equal to "everything should be".

35. S. Shih ti, t'ing hsien- 35. Right, I will carry out
shêng ti fên fu. your instructions.

"T'ing"—to listen—has the sense of "obey" when coupled with words which imply an order or advice, etc.

31. 大司夫 Ta-ssu-fu. The skilled person, gangster, cook.
 曉 Hsiao.³ To know.
 曉得 Hsiao-tê To know (concerning affairs), not
 persons.
32. 吩 Fên.¹ To order, command.
 咐 Fu.⁴ To commission, order.
 吩咐 Fên-fu. To order, command, instruct (in
 the sense of issuing an order).
33. 預 Yü.⁴ Beforehand, prepare.
 備 Pei.⁴ Get ready, prepare.
 預備 Yü-peí. To prepare, to get ready.
34. 毯 T'an.³ Carpet, felt.
 席 Hsi.² Mat, reed mat.
 翻 Fan.² To turn over.
 器具 Ch'í⁴-chü. Utensils, furniture.
 洗 Hsi.³ To wash, bathe, rinse.
 端 Tuan.¹ To serve, as a waiter, put on the
 table.
 伶 Ling.² Clever, active, adjust.
 俐 Li.⁴ Lively, quick, smart.
 整齊 Chêng³-ch'í.² In good order, straight,
 orderly, arranged.

DIALOGUE No. 14

Exercise on Weights and Measures

Weights.

A Chinese catty, "chin", is equal to about 21 ozs. (English), but consists of 16 "liang" (oz.). The "liang" is again divided into "ch'ien", each of which is a tenth of a "liang". Below that the metric system continues into several divisions, the "fên" being a tenth of a "ch'ien" and the "li" being a tenth of a "fên". Other extremely fine measures of weight need not bother us here. The picul, in China about 133 lbs., is used for heavier articles. The word for this is "tan".

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Chê ko tung hsi yu to chung. | 1. What is the weight of this? |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|

"Yu to chung"—has how much weight? Alternative expressions are "Yu to shao fên liang", "Fên liang to chung", "Yu to ma ch'ing chung".

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 2. I tan chiu chin pan. | 2. One picul nine and a half catties. |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3. Ch'ing ni kei wo ch'êng i ch'êng chê ko pao kuo. Mei yu kuo chung pa. | 3. Please weigh this parcel for me. It isn't overweight is it? |
|--|--|

- | | |
|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 4. Kuo la chung la. | 4. Yes it is overweight. |
|---------------------|--------------------------|

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 5. Chiu ching yu to chung. | 5. How heavy is it then? |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|

"Chiu ching"—really, getting to the heart of the matter.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 6. Pa chin ch'i liang pa ch'ien. | 6. Eight catties seven ozs. and eight drams. |
|----------------------------------|--|

In measuring grain the Chinese use standard vessels, called "tan", "tou", "shêng", etc. The "tan", which for want of a better term we will call bushel, is equal to ten "tou" (peck), and the "tou" again is equal to ten "shêng", which we will call pint.

VOCABULARY TO DIALOGUE AND
EXERCISE No. 14

2. 擔 Tan.¹ A load, picul, to carry.
斤 Chin.¹ A catty, one and a third lbs.
3. 稱 Ch'êng.¹ To weigh, call, style.
稱一稱 Ch'êng-i-ch'êng. To weigh on the scales.
裹 Kuo.³ To bind, wrap.
包裹 Pao-kuo. A parcel.
5. 究竟 Chiu⁴-ching.⁴ Really.
兩 Liang.³ Ounce, tael.
錢 Ch'ien.² Coin, mace, tenth of an ounce.

7. Chê ko k'ou tai li yu to 7. How much grain is
shao liang shih. there in this sack?

8. Yu i tan, liu tou, ch'i 8. One "tan" six bushels
shêng. and seven pints.

Tan, tou, shêng. It is difficult to give exact equivalents in English of these Chinese measures of capacity. But see note p. 140.

Measures of length in the shorter ranges are on the decimal system. The foot varies in length according to the material that is to be measured. There are ten inches to the foot, and ten feet make a "chang". The inch is divided into ten "fên". Other commonly used measures are the "pu", which is five feet, and the "li", about a third of the English mile, which consists of 180 "chang".

9. Tsai t'an i t'an ch'ih 9. Let us further discuss
ts'un pa. measures of length.

10. Na tao jung i ming pai. 10. That is easy to under-
Shih fên chiu shih stand. An inch has
i ts'un; shih ts'un ten parts; a foot is
chiu shih i ch'ih; ten inches, and a
shih ch'ih chiu shih "chang" ten feet.
i chang.

11. K'o shih yu ti shih hou, 11. But sometimes I hear
wo t'ing jên shuo, people say, "so
chi pu, chi pu. Chê many 'pu', so many
shih shih mo i ssu. 'pu'". What does
 that mean?

12. Ai, shih ti. I pu chiu 12. Ah, yes. A "pu" is
shih wu ch'ih. five feet.

13. Na mo, liang pu yeh 13. In that case, two
shih i chang, shih pu "pu" also make a
shih. "chang"?

7. 袋 Tai.¹ Bag, sack.
 口 K'ou-tai. Bag, sack, pocket.
 糧 Liang.² Grain, food.
 食 Liang-shih. Grain, food.
8. 斗 Tou.³ A peck.
 石 Tan.¹ Bushel.
 升 Shêng.¹ A pint.
9. 尺 Ch'ih.³ A foot.
 寸 Ts'un.⁴ An inch.
 尺寸 Ch'ih-ts'un. Measure of length, length.
10. 白 Pai.^{2 4} White, clear, in vain.
 明 Ming-pai. To comprehend, understand.
 丈 Chang.⁴ Ten feet, husband.
11. 步 Pu.⁴ Pace, step, five feet.
 意 I.⁴ Idea, intention, meaning, wish.
 思 Ssu.¹ Think on, ponder, thought.
 意思 I-ssu. Meaning.

14. Pu ts'o. Hai tê chih tao, i pai pa shih chang, chiu shih i li. 14. And you should also know that 180 "chang" make a "li".

15. Na mo, san li chiu shih ch'a pu to, ho i Ying li i yang yüan. 15. Then three Chinese "li" are about equal in length to an English mile?

"Ch'a pu to"—different not much. A very popular expression for "nearly", "about", etc.

"I yang yüan"—the same distance. "Yüan" is used in longer measurements of length.

16. Ch'a pu to. 16. Just about.
17. Tso i t'iao k'u tzu tê yung to shao ts'ai liao. 17. How much material is required to make a pair of trousers?
18. Na k'an ts'ai liao ti k'uan hsia. 18. That depends on the width of the material.

"Na k'an"—that depends (lit. that looks).

19. Pi fang shuo, ts'ai liao shih êrh ch'ih k'uan, yung to shao. 19. For example, say the material is two feet wide, how much would be needed?

"Pi fang shuo"—equal to our *e.g.*, for illustration, etc.

20. Êrh ch'ih k'uan ti ts'ai liao, tê yung i chang êrh ch'ih ti pu. 20. In material two feet wide, twelve feet will be needed.

21. I ko jên p'ao i hsiao shih (i tien chung), nêng p'ao to yüan. 21. How far can a man run in an hour?

"I hsiao shih"—an hour's time, alternative for "i tien chung ti kung fu", "i ko chung t'ou".

22. Ch'üan shih chieh tsui k'uai ti chi lu, chiu shih shih ying li. 22. The world's record is about ten miles.

"Chi lu"—record, adapted for the best achievement in any sphere.

17. 褲 K'u⁴ (tzu). Trousers.
一條褲子 I-t'iao-k'u-tzu. A pair of trousers.
18. 材 Ts'ai.² Materials.
料 Liao.⁴ Materials, calculate, etc.
材料 Ts'ai-liao. Materials, material.
寬 K'uan.¹ Wide, broad, easy.
狹 Hsia.² Narrow.
寬狹 K'uan-hsia. Width.
比方 Pi-fang. For illustration, comparison, etc.
20. 布 Pu.⁴ Cloth, to spread.
21. 跑 P'ao.³ To run, to gallop.
一小時 I-hsiao-shih. An hour.
22. 世 Shih.⁴ The world, a generation.
界 Chieh.⁴ The world, boundary.
世界 Shih-chieh. The world.
紀 Chi.⁴ To record, year.

23. Ai ya. I ko jên hsiang 23. I say! A man who
 p'o la chê ko chi lu, thinks of breaking
 hên fei shih. that record has a
 hard task.

"P'o chi lu"—to break the record, also an adaptation from the West.

24. Pu ts'o, pu ts'o. 24. Quite right.

22. 錄 Lu.⁴ To record, copy.
紀錄 Chi-lu. Record.
23. 破 P'o.⁴ Break, solve.

DIALOGUE No. 15

A talk with the Cook.

Mistress, *M.* Cook, *C.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>M.</i> Ming t'ien chung
wu, wo yao ch'ing
san ko k'o. | 1. I am inviting three
guests for to-morrow
noon. |
|---|---|

Notice again how expressions of time come early in the sentences.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 2. <i>C.</i> T'ai-t'ai hsiangch'ih
shih-mo fan. | 2. What food would you
like to eat? |
|--|--|

"Hsiang" means "to think", but the sense is as translated.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. <i>M.</i> Hsien yü pei chi ko
hsiao tieh tzu. | 3. First prepare some as-
sorted appetizers. |
| 4. <i>C.</i> Yao jou t'ang pu
yao. | 4. Will you want soup? |

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 5. <i>M.</i> Yao chi t'ang. | 5. Yes, we'll have chicken
soup. |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|

- | | |
|--|--|
| 6. <i>C.</i> T'ai-t'ai ch'ih shên-
mo jou. Hsien
tsai yang jou kuei
i tie'rh. | 6. What meat would you
like? Mutton is
rather dear just now. |
|--|--|

- | | |
|--|---|
| 7. <i>M.</i> Chê chi t'ien t'ien
ch'i jê, ch'ih liang
ts'ai yeh hsing,
pi ju huo t'ui,
chi p'ien, niu shê
t'ou têng têng. | 7. It has been rather hot
these days. Cold
viands would be all
right, like ham,
chicken, tongue, etc. |
|--|---|

"Têng têng"—sort-sort, equal to our *et cetera*.

"Shên mo ti" is another way of saying *et cetera*.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 15

- | | |
|------|---|
| 3. 碟 | Tieh. ^{2 5} Saucer. |
| 4. 肉 | Jou. ⁴ Ju. ⁴ Meat. |
| 湯 | T'ang. ¹ Soup, gravy. |
| 肉 湯 | Jou-t'ang. Soup, gravy, sauce. |
| 5. 雞 | Chi. ¹ Chicken. |
| 魚 | Yü. ³ Fish. |
| 豬 | Chu. ¹ Pig, pork. |
| 排 | P'ai. ² Chops. |
| 骨 | Ku. ³ Chops. |
| 6. 羊 | Yang. ² Sheep. |
| 羊 肉 | Yang-jou. Mutton. |
| 7. 熱 | Jê. ⁴ Hot. |
| 天 | T'ien. ¹ Heaven, used for weather with the next. |
| 天 氣 | T'ien-ch'i. Weather. |
| 涼 | Liang. ² Cool, pleasant. |
| 火 | Huo. ² Fire. |
| 腿 | T'ui. ³ Leg, thigh, ham. |

8. C. Tsai chia t'u tou, 8. And potatoes, and
po ts'ai. spinach, etc.

There are many words for potatoes, such as "ti-tan", "shan-yü",
"yü t'ou".

9. M. K'o shih tê pa ts'ai, 9. But see that the veget-
chu (shu) shou la. ables are well cooked.
10. C. T'ai-t'ai yeh yao 10. Will you also be want-
ch'ih t'ien ti ma. ing a sweet?
11. M. Shih ti, yü pei ping 11. Yes, prepare ice-cream
ch'i lin, ho tien and cake.
hsin pa.

12. C. Yao nai-ping ho 12. Will you want cheese
ping-kan pu yao. and biscuits?

13. M. Yao, mo-liao hai 13. Yes, and finally we
yao ho chia-fei. shall want to drink
coffee.

"Mo liao"—at the end—sometimes expanded, e.g., "mo mo liao
erh ti"—finally.

7. 火腿 Huo-t'ui. Boiled ham.
 片 P'ien.⁴ Sliced, a slice, a strip.
 牛 Niu.² A cow.
 舌 Shê.² Tongue.
 牛舌頭 Niu-shê-t'ou. The tongue of an ox, ox-tongue.
 等 Têng.³ Class, kind, etc.
 等 Têng-têng. Et cetera.
 等 Chia.¹ To add, to increase.
8. 加 Tsai.⁴ Again, repeat.
 再 T'u.³ Earth.
 土 Tou.⁴ Beans.
 豆 T'u tou. Potatoes.
 土 Po.^{1 2} Spinach.
 菠 Po-ts'ai. Spinach, etc.
 菜
9. 煮 Chu.¹ To boil.
 熟 Shou.² Shu.² Ripe, soft, properly cooked.
11. 冰 Ping.¹ Ice.
 淇淋 Ch'i-lin. Transliteration of English "jelly".
 冰 Ping-ch'i-lin. Ice-cream.
 點 Tien.³ Dot, etc., with next used for cakes, sweetmeats.
- 心 Hsin.¹ The heart, the mind.
12. 奶 Nai.³ Milk, curdled milk, cheese.
 餅 Ping.³ Cake, slab.
 奶 Nai-ping. Cheese.
 餅 Ping-kan. Biscuits (kan is dry). Kan is added to fruits when dried.
13. 末 Mo.⁴ The end, at the last.
 末 Mo-liao. At the end, to finish with.
 了 Chia-fei. Transliteration for coffee.
 咖啡

14. C. T'ai-t'ai pu yao shui kuo ma. 14. Won't you want fresh fruit?
 15. M. Mai p'in kuo, li, p'u t'ao pa. 15. Buy some apples, pears and grapes.

16. C. Hai yao ho chiu ma. 16. Shall I put on wine?
 17. M. Huang chiu chiu hsing, yeh yao lü-sung yen. 17. Yellow wine will suffice, and put on some cigars.

"Lü-sung"—Luzon, the large southern island of the Philippines.

18. C. Yeh hsü yu i liang wei k'o jên shih chieh chiu ti, tsui hao hsien yü pei chi p'ing ch'i shui. 18. Perhaps one or two of the guests may be teetotal; we had better prepare some minerals (soft drinks).

"Chieh chiu"—abstain from wine.

19. M. Pu ts'o. 19. All right.
 20. C. Pai cho tzu tê chao i ko pang mang ti. 20. I suppose I had better get a man to help with the table.
 21. M. Ni k'o i chao lao ma, tao ch'u fang pang mang hao la. 21. You can tell the amah to help in the kitchen.
 22. M. Ling wai yü pei shui yen tai, yeh hsü yu jen hsiang ch'ou shui yen. 22. And, in addition, prepare a water pipe, as probably someone will want to smoke.

14. 果 Kuo.³ Fruit in general.
 水果 Shui kuo. Fresh fruit.
15. 蘋果 P'ing.² P'in.² Apple.
 梨 Li.² Pears.
 葡萄 P'u-t'ao.² Grapes. Cf. Greek, Potos, the vine.
16. 酒 Chiu.³ Wine.
17. 黃 Huang.³ Yellow.
 呂宋 Lü-sung. Luzon, Philippines.
 呂宋煙 Lü-sung-yen. Cigars.
18. 戒 Chieh.⁴ Forbid, prohibit.
 瓶 P'ing.² A bottle.
 汽水 Ch'i-shui. Aerated waters.
 擺 Pai.³ To spread, to lay on table.
21. 老媽 Lao-ma. Nurse, "old mother".
22. 另 Ling.⁴ Separate.
 外 Wai.⁴ Outside, additional.
 另外 Ling-wai. In addition.
 袋 Tai.⁴ Pipe, bag.
 抽 Ch'ou.¹ To smoke, draw.

23. C. Cho tzu shang yeh 23. And (I suppose) I
yao pai t'ang, niu should put sugar and
nai, yen, hu chiao milk, salt, pepper,
mien, ts'u, chiang vinegar, sauce, and
yu, ho chieh mo mustard on the
pa. table?

The "pa" at the end of the sentence carries the sense of "I suppose". This is a common idiom.

24. M. Ya ch'ien yeh pu 24. And the tooth-picks
yao wang la. must not be for-
gotten.

23. 糖 T'ang.² Sugar.
 奶 Nai.³ Milk, breasts.
 鹽 Yen.² Salt.
 胡 Hu.² Pepper.
 椒 Chiao.¹ Pepper.
 麵 Hu-chiao-mien. Pepper.
 醋 Ts'u.⁴ Vinegar.
 醬 Chiang-yu. Sauce.
 油 Chieh.⁴ Mustard.
 芥 Chieh-mo.⁴ Mustard.
 末
24. 牙 Ya.² Tooth, teeth.
 籤 Ch'ien.¹ Bamboo-slip.
 籤 Ya-ch'ien.² Tooth-pick.

DIALOGUE No. 16

Hiring a Rickshaw

Mistress, *M.* Servant, *S.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>M.</i> Chieh shang yu
yang ch'ê (huang
pao ch'ê) mei yu. | 1. Are there any rickshaws
on the street? |
|--|--|

"Yang ch'ê"—foreign cart, rickshaw, also called "jên li ch'ê"—equal to jinrickshaw. In the north, Peking and Tientsin, etc., "chiao p'i" is a favourite term. It simply means "rubber", referring to the tyres. Another alternative is "huang pao ch'ê", referring to the yellow covering of many rickshaws.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 2. <i>S.</i> Yu shih yu, pu kuo
pu hên to. | 2. Yes, there are, but not
many. |
|---|-------------------------------------|

Note the phrase "yu shih yu"—have yes have!—the implication being that there are not many.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 3. <i>M.</i> Ni kan k'uai ch'ü,
kei wo ku i liang. | 3. Hurry and hire one for
me. |
|---|----------------------------------|

"Liang" is the classifier of carts. It may be used by itself when the subject, cart, etc., is obvious.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------------|
| 4. <i>S.</i> T'ai t'ai shang na li
ch'ü. | 4. Where are you going
Madam? |
|---|----------------------------------|

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 5. <i>M.</i> Wo yao shang Li
t'ai t'ai na li
ch'ü. | 5. I am going to Mrs.
Lee's. |
|--|---------------------------------|

- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. <i>S.</i> T'ai t'ai yao ku lai
hui ch'ê ma. | 6. Do you wish to hire
the rickshaw for the
return journey? |
|---|---|

- | | |
|--|---|
| 7. <i>M.</i> Ku yang ch'ê, shih
lun li shu, hai
shih lun chung
tien ni. | 7. Do you hire a rickshaw
by distance or by
the hour? |
|--|---|

"Li shu"—miles, number, distance.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 16

1. 洋 Yang.² Foreign.
車 Ch'ê.¹ Cart, carriage, vehicle.
洋車 Yang-ch'ê. Rickshaw.

3. 趕 Kan.³ Hurry, chase.
趕快 Kan-k'uai. Speedily, hasten.

6. 來回 Lai-hui. Come-go, a return journey.

7. 論 Lun.⁴ To discuss, according to.
里數 Li-shu. Distance.
鐘點 Chung tien. Hours—time.

8. S. To pan shih lun chung tien. 8. Mostly by the hour.
 "To pan" or "to-i-pan"—more than a half, mostly, probably.
9. M. Na mo, tsui hao ku t'a san ko chung t'ou. 9. Then it will be best to hire him for three hours.
10. S. T'ai t'ai yao wo ho t'a chiang chia ch'ien ma. 10. Do you want me to discuss the price with him? (the rickshaw coolie).
11. M. I ko chung t'ou, ying kai kei t'a to shao ch'ien. 11. How much ought one to give per hour?
12. S. Wo shuo pu chun. I ko chung t'ou, ta kai kai kei t'a wu mao ch'ien. 12. I can't say for certain, but probably one ought to give him fifty cents.
 "Ta kai"—big, ought, so probably.
13. M. Wo i wei wu mao ch'ien t'ai to la i tie'rh. Ni ho t'a chiang chia ti shih hou, tsui hao hsien shao kei t'a i tie'rh. 13. In my opinion, fifty cents is a trifle too much. When you discuss the price with him, it will be best to offer him less at first.
 "Wo i wei"—I think, often "I wo k'an lai"—literally "In my seeing come", in my opinion.
14. S. Na pu yung shuo. Wo mên tso mai mai, chiu shih chê yang. 14. Needless to say we do business just along those lines.
15. M. K'o shih wo t'ing shuo, Chung Kuo shang chieh, hsien tsai, tou shih "yen pu êrh chia". 15. But I have heard that in Chinese commercial circles now, the prices are fixed (lit. words have not two prices).

8. 多半 To pan. Probably (lit. more a half).

10. 講 Chiang.¹ To expound, explain, discuss,
bargain.

價 Chia.⁴ Price, value.

價錢 Chia-ch'ien. Price.

11. 應 Ting.¹ Ought.

該 Kai.¹ Ought, should.

12. 準 Chun.³ Standard, certainty, fixed.

說不準 Shuo-pu-chun. Can't say for certain.

15. 商 Shang.¹ Commerce.

界 Chieh.⁴ World, sphere.

商 Shang-chieh. The commercial world.

言 Yen.² Words, speech.

16. S. Ta shang tien to pan 16. The big stores all have
 tou shih ting chia, fixed prices, but
 k'o shih hsiao small shopkeepers
 mai mai, hai shih still bargain in the
 chao chiu chiang old way.
 chia.

"Chao chiu"—according to old (practice).

17. M. Na mo, ni k'uai i 17. Then off you go as
 tie'rh ch'ü, chia quickly as you can,
 ch'ien yüeh shao the lower the price
 yüeh hao. the better.

"Yüeh . . . yüeh"—a very common idiom, *e.g.*, "yüeh k'uai yüeh hao", the quicker the better.

18. S. Na pu yung shuo, 18. Needless to say I will
 wo chin li chiu do my utmost.
 shih la.

19. M. Yeh pu yao tan wu 19. And don't loiter, come
 kung fu, k'uai back quickly.
 k'uai ti hui lai
 pa.

20. S. Wo chin li ti pan. 20. I will do my best. If
 Nêng tsao hui lai I can get back early
 wo chiu tsao hui I will do so.
 lai.

Note construction of second half of this sentence.

16. 照 Chao.¹ According to.
 照舊 Chao-chiu.⁴ As of old, as formerly.
17. 越 Yüeh.^{4 5} The more, comparative sign.
19. 耽 Tan.¹ Obstruct, prevent, delay.
 誤 Wu.⁴ Forget, careless, miss.
 耽誤 Tan-wu. Delay, waste time, loiter.
20. 能 Nêng.² Can, able.

DIALOGUE No. 17

An interesting discussion between two friends on an intimate personal matter.

1. A. Chao hsiao chieh ni 1. Do you know Miss
jên tê pu jên tê. Chao?

"Jên-tê" and "jên-shih" are synonymous—both may be applied to persons.

2. B. Jên shih jên tê, k'o 2. I may be said to know
shih pu ta shu her, but I am not
shih. at all intimate with
her.

3. A. T'a to ta sui shu, 3. Do you know how old
ni chih tao pu she is?
chih tao.

"Chih tao" cannot be used in reference to knowing persons.

4. B. Pu chih tao, wo ts'ai 4. I don't really know, but
t'a shih shih liu I guess she is about
sui shang hsia. sixteen.

"Shang-hsia"—up-down, thereabouts, roughly speaking.

5. A. T'a ti fu mu tou tsai 5. Are both her parents
shih ma. living?

6. B. T'a fu ch'in hai tsai, 6. Her father is still alive,
pu kuo mu ch'in but her mother died
tsao ch'ü shih la. some time ago.

"Tsai" used alone in this connection means "alive".

"Ch'ü shih"—left the world, died.

7. A. T'a tsao chi nien 7. Do you remember how
ch'ü ti shih, ni many years ago she
chi tê pu chi tê. died?

"Ch'ü ti shih"—an adjectival phrase—one's leaving the earth.
An alternative is "ch'ü shih la", verbal form in past tense.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 17

1. 趙 Chao.⁴ A common surname.
 小姐 Hsiao chieh. Miss, a single woman.
 認 Jên.⁴ Recognise, know (of persons).
 認得 Jên-tê. To know, mainly persons.
2. 認識 Jên-shih. To know, to recognise, an alternative for jên-tê.
 識 Shih.⁴ To know, recognise.
 熟 Shu.² Intimate, very friendly.
 熟識 Shu-shih. Very intimate acquaintance.
3. 知道 Chih-tao. To know, of things and affairs.
4. 猜 Ts'ai.¹ To guess.
 上下 Shang-hsia. Round about, roughly speaking.
5. 世 Shih.⁴ The earth.
 在世 Tsai-shih. On the earth, alive, living.
6. 去世 Ch'ü-shih. To have left the earth, dead, to die.
7. 記 Chi.⁴ To remember, bear in mind.
 記得 Chi-tê. To remember.

8. B. Pu ta ch'ing ch'u, 8. I am not quite clear
 wo hsiang t'a shih about that, but I
 wuliunien ch'ien, think she died about
 ch'ü ti shih. five or six years ago.

You may also say "chi pu ta ch'ing ch'u". Note that if an adverbial phrase qualifies the verb only the main part of a composite verb is used: "'chi"—not 'chi tè' pu ta ch'ing ch'u".

9. A. Na mo, Chao hsiao 9. Then Miss Chao is to
 chieh shih k'o be pitied.
 lien ti.
 10. B. Shih tsai k'o lien. 10. Truly pitiable.
 11. A. T'a chia li i kung 11. How many are there in
 chi ko jên. her family?
 12. B. T'ung kung pa ko 12. Eight altogether.
 jên.

13. A. T'a ti hsiung chi 13. How many brothers
 wei. has she?

There is no possessive "ti" after "t'a", as it is clear from the sense.

14. B. San ko ti hsiung, 14. Three brothers and
 san ko tzu mei. three sisters.

15. A. Chao hsiao chieh 15. What is her place
 shih hang chi. (where does she
 come) in the family?

"Hang chi"—place on a list—the common way of inquiring about one's place in the family.

16. B. T'a hang êrh. T'a 16. She comes second. She
 yu i ko ko ko, has one elder bro-
 liang ko hsiung ther, two younger
 ti, liang ko mei brothers, and two
 mei. younger sisters.

8. 清 清 楚 前
Ch'ing.¹ Clear, pure.
Ch'ing-ch'u. Clear, intelligent.
Ch'ien.² Before, age, formerly.
9. 憐 可 憐
Lien.² Pitiful, pity, sympathise.
K'o-lien. Pitiabie, to be pitied.
12. 通 共 通 共
T'ung.¹ Together with, altogether.
Kung.⁴ All, together.
T'ung-kung. Taken together, altogether.
13. 弟 兄 弟 兄 位
Ti.⁴ Younger brother.
Hsiung.⁴ Elder brother.
Ti-hsiung. Brothers.
Wei.⁴ Classifier of persons, especially those of rank or position. Also a person of that kind.
14. 姊 妹 姊 妹
Tzu.² Elder sister.
Mei.⁴ Younger sister.
Tzu-mei. Sisters.
15. 行 行 幾
Hang.² Grade, place in a list, position, order.
Hang-chi. An inquiry as to one's place in the family.
16. 哥 哥 兄 弟 妹 妹
Ko.¹ Elder brother.
Ko-ko. Elder brother.
Hsiung-ti.⁴ Younger brother.
Mei-mei.⁴ Younger sister.

17. A. Na mo, chao ni ti
hua, t'a yeh mei
yu chieh chieh,
yeh mei yu mu
ch'in.
17. Then, according to your
statement, she has
neither elder sisters
nor mother.
18. B. Pu ts'o. T'a tsao
chiu tan fu chia
li pie'rh ti tsê-jên,
yeh hên tung chia
shih.
18. That is so. Early on
she had to assume
domestic responsibi-
lities, and she is very
conversant with
matters of the home.
- “Tan fu . . . tsê-jên”—carry responsibility, the details of the
responsibility coming in between the verb and the noun.
19. A. Chao hsiao chieh
kên jên ting la
hun mei yu.
19. Is Miss Chao engaged?
- “Kên” is a colloquial alternative for “ho”—with.
20. B. Pu chih tao, wo k'o
i kei ni ta t'ing.
20. I don't know, but I will
inquire for you.
21. A. Wo hên hsi huan
t'o ni t'i wo pan
chê chien shih.
21. I am very happy to en-
trust you to manage
this affair for me.
22. B. P'an wang wo nêng
pan ti t'o tang,
pu kei ni tiu lien
chiu shih la.
22. I hope I shall be able
to put it through
satisfactorily, with-
out causing you to
lose face.
23. A. Tsa mên lia shih lao
p'êng yu, ni yeh
hên tung li mao,
wo k'an ni pu hui
chiao wo tiu lien
ti.
23. We two are old friends,
and you understand
etiquette thoroughly.
I think it impossible
for you to let me
down (lit. cause me
to lose face).

17. 照 照
姐 姐 Chao.⁴ According to.
 Chieh-chieh. Elder sister.
18. 擔 負 Tan fu.⁴ To bear, carry, as responsibility.
責 Tsê.² Chai.² Burden of office, responsibility.
任 Jen.⁴ Office, the care and burden of office.
擔 負 責 任 Tan-fu-chai-jên. To carry responsibility.
19. 訂 婚 Ting⁴ hun. To become engaged to be
 married, fix, settle.
20. 打 聽 Ta-t'ing. To make inquiries.
21. 托 T'o.⁴ Commission, to entrust to (pretext).
22. 妥 T'o.³ Satisfactory.
妥 當 T'o-tang. Satisfactory.
丟 Tiu.¹ To lose.
臉 Lien.³ Face.
丟 臉 Tiu-lien. To lose face.
盼 望 P'an.⁴ Wang.⁴ Hope, expect.
23. 貌 Mao.¹ Appearance, form.
禮 貌 Li-mao. Courtesy, ceremony, etiquette.

24. B. Ch'i kan, ch'i kan.
K'o shih t'a ch'in
ch'i pu shao, pu
tê tsui i liang ko
jên, shih pu yung
i na.
24. I am honoured (lit. how dare I accept such compliments). But her relations are numerous, and it will not be easy to avoid giving offence to one or two of them.
25. A. Wu lun ju ho, ni pu
yao shuo k'uang.
Yao shih ni p'êng
chien shih mo nan
ch'u, k'ung p'a
kuo pu ch'ü ti
shih hou, ni hui
lai, hsiang hsiang
hsi hsi ti kao su
wo, chiu tê la.
25. But whatever happens you must not tell any untruths. If you meet with difficulties which cannot be surmounted, come and inform me as to the details, and leave it at that.
26. B. Ni na yang ti ch'u
chu i, wo hen
p'ei fu, wo pu hui
tui ni shih hsin
ti.
26. I admire you for voicing your opinion in that way. (Have no fear) I will not break faith with you.
27. A. Hao, shih ch'ing
pan ch'êng la, wo
chiu hao hao êrh
ti ch'ou hsieh ni.
27. Good. When the affair is completed, I shall gratefully reward you.

24. 豈 Ch'i.³ How, how can it be? with the next
a common term of polite usage.
敢 Kan.³ Dare.
戚 Ch'i.⁴ Relatives.
親戚 Ch'in-ch'i. Relatives.
罪 Tsui.⁴ Sin, crime, offence, offend.
得罪 Tê-tsui. To offend a person.
25. 論 Lun.⁴ To discuss.
無論 Wu²-lun.⁴ No matter, however that may
be.
何 Ho.² How, why.
如何 Ju-ho. How, why.
誑 K'uang.³ Lies, false.
碰 P'êng.⁴ To meet with, come across, hit
upon.
碰見 P'êng-chien. To meet with, come across,
hit upon.
難處 Nan-ch'u. Difficulties.
詳 Hsiang.² Details.
細 Hsi.⁴ Fine, delicate.
詳細 Hsiang-hsi. Details, in detail.
26. 主 Chu.³ Opinion, lord, master.
主意 Chu-i. Opinion.
佩服 P'ei.⁴ Wear at waist, respect.
服 Fu.² Submit, serve, show deference.
佩服 P'ei-fu. Respect, admire.
失 Shih.¹ To lose, to err.
失信 Shih-hsin.⁴ Be unfaithful, break faith.
27. 成 Ch'êng.² To complete, finish, become.
酬 Ch'ou.² Reward, bestow.
謝 Hsieh.⁴ To confer, make a gift.

28. 提

T'i.² To mention.

DIALOGUE No. 18

Between two friends, illustrating expressions of Comparison, and other common idioms.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. A. Chê ko tung-hsi hao. | 1. This is a good article. |
| 2. B. Tan shih chê-ko pi na-ko hao. | 2. But this is better than that. |

"Pi" is compare—lit. "this compare that good" (see 10 below).

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3. A. So i wo-mên shuo chê-ko kêng hao. | 3. So we say "this is better". |
| 4. B. Chũ wo k'an chê shih tsui hao ti tung-hsi. | 4. I consider this is a very fine article. |

"Chũ wo k'an"—lit. "according to my seeing".

- | | |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 5. A. Yeh k'o i shuo shih ting (t'ing) hao. | 5. You may also say it is "the best". |
|---|---------------------------------------|

- | | |
|--|---|
| 6. B. Chê ko pu pu hao, k'o shih ho na ko i pan hao. | 6. This cloth is inferior, but it is as good as that. |
| 7. A. Chê yang ti pu, pu ju na ko hao. | 7. This kind of cloth is not as good as that. |

"Pu ju na ko hao"—lit. "not as that good".

- | | |
|--|---|
| 8. B. Yeh k'o i shuo chê ko kêng pu hao. | 8. It is also possible to say, "this is even worse". |
| 9. A. Hai yu i ko shuo fa, chiu shih chê ko pi na ko huai (tai). | 9. There is another way of speaking, <i>i.e.</i> , this is worse than that. |

- | | |
|---|---|
| 10. B. K'o shih t'ou i ko shuo fa pi ti êrh ko shuo fa ch'iang. | 10. But the first way of saying it is superior to the second. |
|---|---|

"T'ou-i-ko" and "ti-i-ko" are synonymous.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 18

2. 比 Pi.^{3 4} To compare, illustrate.

4. 據 Chü.⁴ According to.
最 Tsui.⁴ Most, very, sign of superlative.

5. 頂 Ting.³ Top, head, sign of superlative.
挺 T'ing.³ To stick out, stiff.

6. 布 Pu.⁴ Cloth.

9. 壞 Huai.⁴ Bad, vicious, ruined.

10. 强 Ch'iang.² Strong, so superior, violent.

11. A. Na chē i k'uai pu 11. Compare these two
 ho na i k'uai pi pieces of cloth.
 i pi.

"Pi-i-pi"—compare a compare, make a comparison—a common verbal form.

12. B. Yao chiao wo pi i 12. In what respect do you
 pi na i fang mien want me to compare
 ni. them?

"Na i fang mien"—"na" is third tone representing the question—*which?*

13. A. Hsien pi i pi ch'ang 13. First compare them as
 tuan, tsai pa pu to length, then as
 ti hao tai pi i pi, to quality, and then
 tsai pi i pi yen again as to colour,
 shai, tiao shai pu especially as to the
 tiao shai. dye being fast or not.

Note this interesting way of forming abstract nouns—long-short equals length; good-bad equals quality.

"Shai"—colour; also pronounced "sé" or "sei". "Tiao shai"—to lose colour.

14. B. Chē ko pu t'ai kuei, 14. I can't afford to buy
 wo mai pu ch'i. this cloth, it is too
 dear.

"Mai pu ch'i"—buy not rise—just as we say can't rise to it, can't afford.

15. A. Chē ko hsiang tzu 15. This box is too heavy,
 t'ai chung, wo no I can't move it.
 pu tung.

"No pu tung"—move not move, can't move it.

16. B. Chiu shih wo-mên 16. Even if we two thought
 liang hsiang t'ai, of lifting it between
 yeh t'ai pu tung. us, I fear we couldn't.

"T'ai pu tung"—carry not move, can't carry it.

The positive of all these expressions is to add "la" to the composite verb: "mai ch'i la"—can afford; "no tung la"—can move it, etc.

12. 面 Mien.⁴ Face, aspect.
 方面 Fang-mien. A certain aspect of any matter,
 one side.

13. 長 Ch'ang.² Long.
 短 Tuan.³ Short.
 長短 Ch'ang-tuan. Length.
 歹 Tai.³ Bad.
 好 Hao-tai. Quality.
 顏色 Yen.² Colour, face.
 掉 Shai. Sê.⁴ Colour, beauty.
 Tiao.⁴ Drop, fall, lose.

15. 動 Tung.⁴ Move, stir.

17. A. Chê li yu kên kun 17. There is a short pole
 tzu, pu kuo shih here, but it is too
 t'ai ts'u, wo-mên thick, and we shall
 na pu chu. find it hard to grasp.

"Ts'u"—thick; of round long things.

"Hou" is the word for thick when applied to flat things.

18. B. Wo-mên maititung- 18. We have bought too
 hsi t'ai to, i ko many things, one
 hsiao ch'ê chuang barrow cannot take
 pu hsia. them all.

"Chuang pu hsia"—pack not down, can't get them on.

19. A. Huo wu shih tsai 19. We really have too
 t'ai to, liang ko many things, even
 ma ch'ê yeh la two carts couldn't
 pu tung. pull them.

"La pu tung"—pull not move, can't pull them.

20. B. Wo-mên hui tao 20. When we get home I
 chia ti shih-hou, fear that one room
 k'ung p'a i ko wu will be too small to
 li, yeh fang pu take all these things.
 hsia ch'ê hsieh
 tung hsi.

"Yeh"—still. "Even the *whole* room, is *still* insufficient."

21. A. Pa t'a mên tui ch'i 21. If we pile them up
 lai yeh hsü chiu we can probably get
 chuang tê hsia la. them all in.

"Chuang tê Lsia". Note this alternative to what has been suggested in 16 above, to express the positive.

22. B. K'o shih tê hsiao 22. But take care. If you
 hsin, pa tung-hsi put things too high,
 tui ch'i t'ai kao, I fear you might not
 k'ung p'a kou pu be able to reach
 chao. them.

17. 根 Kên.¹ Classifier of sticks.
 棍 Kun.⁴ Staff, stick.
 挪 No.² To move.
 粗 Ts'u.¹ Broad, thick (of round things like columns).
18. 小車 Hsiao "ch'e. Wheelbarrow.
 裝 Chuang.¹ To pack, load into, dress.
19. 貨 Huo.⁴ Goods, wares.
 物 Wu.¹ Things, goods.
 貨物 Huo-wu. Goods, wares.
 馬 Ma.³ Horse.
 拉 La.¹ To pull, drag.
20. 屋 Wu.¹ Room in a house, house.
21. 堆 Tui.¹ Heap, pile, to pile up.
22. 高 Kao.¹ High, eminent.
 够 Kou.⁴ To reach to a height, put a thing high up.
 够不着 Kou pu chao. I can't reach up to it.

23. A. Pu kuo chan tsai i tzu shang, huo shih hsiao t'ai tzu shang, chiu kou chao la. 23. But if you stand on a chair or on the small steps you can reach them all right.

"Huo shih"—or.

24. B. Yu t'ai tzu chē mo kao yeh chiu hsing. 24. If you have steps as high as this that will do.

"Chē mo kao"—as high as this, a very common idiom.

25. A. K'o shih yeh tē k'an t'ai tzu ti k'uan hsia tsên yang. 25. But we must also take note of the width of the steps.

"K'uan chai" is a common alternative to the text.

26. B. Yao shih ni pi wo hsien tao chia, k'o i ho yung jen shangliang, tsēm-mo pan tsēm-mo hao. 26. If you get home before me, talk the matter over with the servants, and whatever you do will be all right.

"Tsēm-mo . . . tsēm-mo"—"however . . . thus".

27. A. Yao shih wo pi ni wan tao tsên yang ni. 27. If I arrive later than you what then?

28. B. Yao shih wo pi ni hsien tao chia, pi shih yin wei ni tsou ts'o la lu. 28. If I get there before you it must be because you have taken the wrong road.

29. A. Na mo, shui hsien tao, shui pan chiu shih la. 29. Then whoever gets there first will put the business through.

"Shui . . . shui"—"whoever . . . he".

23. 站 Chan.⁴ To stand, stand up, a post (on a journey).
或 Huo.⁴ Or, perhaps, someone.
台 T'ai.² Terrace, platform.
台子 T'ai-tzu. Steps.
25. 寬 K'uan.¹ Wide.
狹 Hsia.^{2 5} Narrow (unusual).
寬狹 K'uan-hsia. Width.
商 Shang.¹ Discuss, deliberate, consult.
26. 量 Liang.² Measure, plan, to consider (with the preceding).
28. 路 Lu.⁴ Road, way.

DIALOGUE No. 19

Shopping at the Drapery Store

Shopkeeper, *S.* Customer, *C.*

1. *C.* Chang kuei ti, kung hsi fa ts'ai. 1. Good-day manager. I hope business is brisk and returns good.

"Kung hsi"—a common congratulatory expression conveying "good wishes".

"Fa ts'ai"—get rich, special greeting to merchants, etc.

2. *S.* T'o fu. Mei yu shên-mo shêng-i. 2. Thanks to you. But business is practically nil.

3. *C.* Wo yao mai ch'ou tzu, yu mei yu. 3. I am wanting silk. Have you any?
4. *S.* Yu. Hsien shêng yao shên-mo yang'erh ti ch'ou tzu. Yao hao ti, hai shih yao tz'u i tie'rh ti ni. 4. Yes. What kind of silk do you want? Do you want good quality or something not quite so good?

"Tz'u"—something not of the first grade.

5. *C.* Yao hao ti. Ch'ou tzu shih tsên yang mai ti, shih lun ch'ih, hai shih lun chin. 5. I want good quality. How do you sell silk, by the foot or by the pound?

"Lun"—to discuss, how things are sold.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 19

1. 掌 Chang.¹ To control, palm of hand.
 櫃 Kuei.⁴ Shop-counter, cupboard.
 掌櫃的 Chang-kuei-ti. The shop manager.
 恭 Kung.¹ Respectful feeling, reverence, offer.
 喜 Hsi.² Joy, felicity.
 恭喜 Kung-hsi. To wish you joy, happiness, etc.
 財 Ts'ai.² Wealth, riches.
 發財 Fa-ts'ai. To get rich.
2. 福 Fu.² Happiness, well-being.
 托福 T'o-fu. Dependent upon you for my well-being.
- 生 Shêng.¹ Produce, life, living, a living.
 意 I.⁴ Idea, wish, intention.
 生意 Shêng-i. Business, occupation.
3. 綢 Ch'ou.² Manufactured silk.
4. 次 Tz'u.⁴ Inferior, second-rate, etc., next.
5. 尺 Ch'ih.³ A foot of linear measure.

6. S. Ch'ou tzu shih lun ch'ih mai ti, ch'a shih lun chin, hsin fêng shih lun ko mai ti. 6. Silk is sold by the foot, tea by the pound and envelopes by the piece.

7. C. Ling chiao, ling chiao. Jang wo k'an chi yang ch'ou tzu pa. 7. Thank you for your information. Let me see a few samples of silk.

8. S. Chê ko ch'ou tzu ting hao, ts'ai liao nai chiu, yeh pu tiao shai. 8. This is excellent silk, the material is durable and of fast dye.

"Shai"—colour, also pronounced "sê" or "sei".

9. C. To shao ch'ien i ch'ih. 9. How much is it a foot?

10. S. Ch'i mao ch'ien i ch'ih. 10. Seventy cents a foot.

11. C. Wei mien shao wei kuei la i tie'rh. Hai yu pi chô ko chien i tie'rh ti (p'ien i i tie'rh ti) mei yu. 11. But that is a trifle dear. Have you anything a little cheaper?

"Wei mien shao wei", bookish rather, unavoidably a little, a courteous phrase designed to save the vendor's face.

12. S. Yu shih yu. K'o shih pieh wang la, "I fên chia ch'ien i fên huo". 12. Yes we have. But don't forget "The quality of the goods depends upon the price you pay".

"Pieh"—short for "pu yao"—do not.

"I fên chia ch'ien i fên huo"—one of China's innumerable proverbs; a chapter of the popular ones follows (see Dialogue 38).

6. 茶 Ch'a.² Tea.
 信 Hsin.⁴ Letter, news, faith, believe.
 封 Fêng.¹ Classifier of letters, cover, seal,
 envelope.
 信 封 Hsin-fêng. Envelope.
 各 Ko.⁴ Each, every, individual.
7. 領 Ling.³ Receive, lead.
 教 Chiao.¹ Instruction, teaching, to teach.
8. 材 Ts'ai.² Materials, material (cloth, silk,
 etc.).
 料 Liao.⁴ Materials.
 耐 Nai.⁴ Endure, bear.
 久 Chiu.³ Old, long time.
 耐 久 Nai-chiu. Durable.
11. 未 Wei.⁴ Not yet.
 免 Mien.³ Avoid, remit, avoidable.
 稍 Shao.² Somewhat, slight.
 微 Wei.¹ Small, minute, slight.
 便 P'ien.² Cheap.
 宜 I.² Right, suits, fits.
 便 宜 P'ien-i. Cheap, reasonable of price, advantageous to buyer.
12. 別 Pieh.² Do not, probably short for "pu yao".

13. C. Wo sui shih shê pu tê hua na mo to ti ch'ien, pu kuo chê ko ch'ou tzu ti ts'ai liao, ken yen shai tou hên hao, kei wo liang i chang wu pa.
13. Although I really cannot afford to spend so much money, the material and the colour of this silk is so fine, that I will take fifteen feet (lit. measure for me fifteen feet).

"Shê pu tà"—let go cannot get, can't spend (that much).

"Liang"—to measure, used of purchasing lengths of cloth, etc.

"Wu" is five and refers to "feet"; "chang"—ten feet; "ch'ih"—foot; "ts'un"—inch.

14. S. Ts'ai fêng tso hao la, t'ai t'ai ch'uan shang shen, i ting shih hên hao k'an ti.
14. After the tailor has made it up, and you put it on, it will certainly look fine.

"Ts'ai fang"—cutting out shop—tailor—is sometimes used for "ts'ai fêng", "fêng" being "to sew".

15. C. Kuei shang yu to shao jên.
15. How many assistants have you?

"Kuei shang"—lit. "on the counter", but meaning is "in your store".

16. S. Yu êrh shih to, tou shih lan ti.
16. Over twenty, but all lazy.

17. S. (to assistant). Na ch'ih lai, liang i liang chê ko ch'ou tzu.
17. Bring the rule and measure this silk.

18. C. Ni yu mei yu tso wên chang ti ts'ai liao.
18. Have you any material suitable for mosquito curtains?

19. S. Yu na, shang, chung, hsia, san têng tou yu. T'ai t'ai hsi huan na i chung ni.
19. Yes, we have three grades, top, medium and lower. Which kind would you like to see?

13. 捨 Shê.³ Let go, relinquish.
 捨不得 Shê-pu-tê. Can't afford, etc., unwilling to
 part with.
 花 Hua.¹ To spend, flower.
 丈 Chang.⁴ Measure of length, distance, etc.,
 equal to ten English feet.
 量 Liang.² To measure, consider.
 雖 Sui.² Although.

14. 裁 Ts'ai.² To cut, to cut out, plan.
 裁縫 Ts'ai-fêng. The tailor.
 穿 Ch'uan.¹ To wear, put on.

16. 懶 Lan.³ Lazy, slack.

18. 蚊 Wên.² Mosquito.
 帳 Chang.⁴ Curtain, net for bed.
 蚊帳 Wên-chang. Mosquito-net.

20. C. K'an k'an chung têng ti pa. Chê ko ts'ai liao yeh k'o i tso lien tzu ma. 20. I will look at the medium grade. Is this material suitable for curtains?
21. S. Fên liang ch'ing la i tie'rh. Tsai chung i tie'rh ti ts'ai liao hao. 21. The material is a little light for that. A little heavier material would be advisable (good).
22. C. Wo hai yao chi chang nai shih i tie'rh ti, tso p'u kai. 22. I also want several yards of somewhat stronger (cloth) to make bedding.
- "P'u kai"—spread, cover, so bedding.
23. S. Na tao hao pan. Wo-mên yeh yu hên chieh shih ti pu, tso ju tzu hên ho shih. 23. That we can easily manage. We also have some very strong cloth which is suitable for mattresses.
24. C. Chiao wo k'an k'an pa. K'o shih ni mên k'uai yao kuan tien mên, pu shih ma. 24. Let me see it. But you will be closing shortly won't you?
25. S. Na mei kuan hsi. Kuan la tien mên, hai tê ch'ing suan tang t'ien ti chang. 25. That doesn't matter. When the shop is closed, we have still the day's accounts to do.

"Ch'ing suan"—clearly reckon.

"Tang t'ien"—that particular day, the same day. Note this special use of "tang".

20. 簾 Lien-²(tzu). Curtain.
-
21. 分量 Fên-liang. Weight.
輕 Ch'ing.¹ Light.
-
22. 鋪 P'u.¹ To spread.
蓋 Kai.⁴ To cover, build.
鋪 蓋 P'u-kai. Bedding (lit. cover and spread)
-
23. 結 Chieh.² Solid, strong, reliable, real.
實 Shih.² Solid, strong, reliable, real.
綳 Ju.⁴ Mattress.
-
25. 關 Kuan.¹ Concern, involve.
係 Hsi.⁴ Connected with, concern, involve.
關係 Kuan-hsi. Concern.
賬 Chang.⁴ Account, bill.

DIALOGUE No. 20

Shopping at the Shoe Shop

Shopkeeper, *S.* Customer, *C.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>C.</i> Yao i shuang hsieh.
"I shuang"—a pair, also "i tui". | 1. I want a pair of shoes. |
| 2. <i>S.</i> Ch'ing tso. Yao ti shih chi hao. | 2. Please take a seat.
What size do you want? |
| 3. <i>C.</i> Ta kai shih pa hao. | 3. Probably size eight. |
| 4. <i>S.</i> Hsien shêng yao p'i hsieh, hai shih pu hsieh ni. | 4. Do you want leather or cloth shoes? |
| 5. <i>C.</i> Yao p'i hsieh. Ch'uan pu hsieh pu nêng tang ni shui. | 5. I want leather shoes.
Cloth shoes don't resist mud and water (so well). |
| 6. <i>S.</i> Pu ts'o. K'o shih tsai chia li hsien cho, ch'uan pu hsieh shih hên shu fu ti. | 6. Correct. But cloth shoes are very comfortable when you are at leisure at home. |
| "Hsien cho"—the "cho" is a participle, indicating continuation of the action "while you are at leisure", "resting". | |
| 7. <i>C.</i> Hsien pa p'i hsieh na lai, shih i shih pa. | 7. Bring (some) leather shoes first, for me to try on. |
| 8. <i>S.</i> Chê i shuang, wo k'an ta hsiao ho shih. | 8. I should think this pair is right for size. |
| "Ta-hsiao"—big-small, so "size", another illustration of the way abstract nouns are formed. | |
| 9. <i>C.</i> T'ai chin. Tsai shih i shuang ta i tie'rh ti. | 9. This is too tight. Let me try a little larger pair. |

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 20

1. 雙鞋 Shuang.¹ A pair, double, both.
 Hsieh.² Shoes, slippers.
2. 號 Hao.⁴ Mark, sign.
4. 皮 P'i.² Leather, skin.
5. 泥 Ni.² Mud, slush.
 閒 Hsien.² At ease, leisure.
 擋 Tang.³ To resist.
6. 舒服 Shu.¹ Comfortable, at ease.
 服 Fu.² Accord with.
 舒服 Shu-fu. At one's ease, comfortable.
8. 大小 Ta-hsiao. Size.
9. 緊 Chin.³ Tight, restricted, important.

10. S. Hao. Chê shuang chêng ho shih. Shu fu pu shu fu. 10. Very good. This pair is just right. Are the shoes comfortable?

"Chêng ho shih"—just according to style.

11. C. Shu fu. Wo chiu na chê i shuang. Tsai na'erh k'o i mai ling tzu, ling tai ho mao tzu. 11. Yes, comfortable. I will take this pair. Where can one buy collars, ties and hats?

12. S. Tsai tui mie'rh. Hsing Lung Chi shang tien. 12. Across the way, at the Hsing Lung Chi store.

13. C. Ni nêng kou pa chê shuang hsieh, sung tao wo ti chia li ch'ü ma. 13. Can you send the shoes to my home?

14. S. Hsing. Hsien shêng fu shang tsai na'rh. 14. Certainly, what is your address?

"Fu shang"—a polite term for "residence".

15. C. Shang Ma Chieh, ssu shih liu hao. 15. No. 46 Shang Ma Chieh.

16. S. Na pu yüan. Wo chiu ta fa i ko huo chi, kei hsien shêng sung ch'ü. 16. That is not far. I will send one of the assistants with them.

"Ta fa"—used of sending *persons*. "Fa" alone used of sending *things*. "Sung" means to escort a person or send things for a person.

17. C. Chiao t'a tso yang ch'ê, wo kei t'a k'ai ch'ê fei. 17. Tell him to take a rickshaw. I will give him his expenses.

"Ch'ê fei"—used of travelling expenses when a conveyance is used.

10. 正 Chêng.⁴ Just, exactly, correct.
11. 領 Ling.³ Collar.
帶 Tai.⁴ Girdle, belt, tie, tape.
帽 Mao.⁴ Hat, cap.
12. 興 Hsing.¹ Rise, prosper.
隆 Lung.² Eminent, abundant.
記 Chi.⁴ Sign, record.
16. 遠 Yüan.³ Distant.
打 Ta.³ An auxiliary verb denoting action.
發 Fa.¹ To send, transmit.
打發 Ta-fa. To send a man.
夥 Huo.³ Assistant, band, company.
計 Chi.⁴ To reckon, calculate.
夥計 Huo-chi. Shop assistant, apprentice.
17. 費 Fei.⁴ Expenses, what is spent.
車 Ch'ê-fei. Travelling expenses (lit. cart
expense).

18. S. Pu pi. Kei t'a chi 18. There is no necessity to
 ko chiu ch'ien do that. Give him
 chiu tê la. a little wine money
 (tip), that will be all
 right.

“Chiu ch'ien”—wine money, tip. The more scrupulous use “ch'a
shui ch'ien”—tea-water money.

18. 必 Pi.⁴ Necessary, must.
酒錢 Chiu-ch'ien. Wine money, a pourboire, tip.

DIALOGUE No. 21

Domestic Conversation on Lighting, Heating, etc.

Master, *M.* Servant, *S.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>M.</i> Ni k'an i k'an chē
ko ti t'an, kan
ching pu kan
ching. | 1. Look at this carpet, is
it clean? |
| 2. <i>S.</i> Chē wu tzu t'ai an,
wo k'an pu ta
ch'ing ch'u. | 2. This room is too dark,
I can't see very
clearly. |
| Note that "pu", the negative, follows the main verb when qualified
by an adverb. | |
| 3. <i>M.</i> Pa tēng tien shang,
chiu k'an tē
ch'ing ch'u la. | 3. Light the lamp, and
then you will be able
to see clearly. |
| 4. <i>S.</i> Chē i chan tēng li
mei yu yu, tien
pu liang. | 4. There is no oil in this
lamp, it can't give
much light. |
| 5. <i>M.</i> Chia li mei yu an
tien tēng, shih
tsai k'o hsi. | 5. What a pity we haven't
fitted electric light
in the house. |
| 6. <i>S.</i> Pu yao chin. Wo
chiu tien i chih
la chu. | 6. Never mind, I will light
a candle. |

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 7. <i>M.</i> Yu yang huo mei
yu. | 7. Have you any matches? |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 21

1. 毯 T'an.³ Carpet, rug.

2. 暗 An, ngan.⁴ Dark, secret.

3. 點 Tien.³ To ignite, to light, as lamps, fires,
etc.
燈 Têng.¹ Lamp.
4. 盞 Chan.³ Classifier of lamps.
油 Yu.² Oil.
亮 Liang.⁴ Bright, light.
5. 安 An, ngan.^{1 4} To fix, place.
電 Tien.⁴ Electricity, lightning.

6. 要 Yao.⁴ Important. (Same word as for
"want", etc.)
緊 Chin.³ Important. (Same word as for
"tight".)
要緊 Yao-chin. Important.
枝 Chih.¹ Classifier of candles, pens, etc.,
branch.
蠟 La.⁴ Wax.
燭 Chu.² Candle.
7. 洋火 Yang-huo. Matches (foreign fire).

8. S. Wo hsiang k'ou tai li yu i ho, k'o shih chao pu cho la. 8. I thought I had a box in my pocket, but I can't find it.
9. M. Na chiu mei yu fa tzu. 9. Then there is nothing we can do.
- "Mei yu fa tzu"—a very common expression of despair, equal to "There is nothing we can do about it".
10. S. Wo chiu pa ti t'an na tao wai pie'rh ch'ü, tou i tou. 10. I will take the carpet outside and shake it.
11. M. Hao, wo chiu kei ni pang mang, pa t'an tzu chüan ch'i lai. (or) (tieh ch'i lai). 11. Good, I will help you to roll up the carpet.
12. S. Hsien tsai t'ien ch'i liang, chia li ying tang shêng huo. 12. It is getting cool now, we ought to light fires in the house.
13. M. Yuan tzu li yu t'an (mei) mo yu. 13. Is there any coal in the yard?
14. S. I tie'rh yeh mei yu, chin nien hai mei yu mai la. 14. None at all, we haven't bought any this year, yet.
- "I tie'rh yeh mei yu". "Yeh" in this position adds great strength to the negative.
15. M. Ch'u fang yu ch'ai huo mei yu. 15. Is there any firewood in the kitchen?
16. S. Yu. Wo chiu fang tsai huo lu li ch'ü tien. 16. Yes. I will put some in the stove and light it.
17. M. Mei yu yang huo, tsên yang pan ni. 17. But how shall we manage without matches?

8. 袋
口 袋
找 Tai.⁴ Bag, pouch.
K'ou-tai. Pocket, bag, sack.
Chao.³ To look for, seek.
10. 抖 Tou.³ To shake, shudder.
11. 捲
疊 Chüan.³ To roll up, a roll.
Tieh.⁴ To fold up, a fold.
12. 涼 Liang.² Cool, chilly.
應 Ying.¹ Ought.
應 當 Ying-tang. Ought.
生 Shêng.¹ To produce, to light a fire.
13. 炭 T'an.⁴ Coal.
煤 Mei.² Coal.
15. 柴 Ch'ai.² Firewood, fuel.
柴 火 Ch'ai-huo. Firewood.
16. 爐 Lu. Lou.² Stove, brazier.

18. S. Wo shang ko pi jên chia ch'ü, chieh ch'ü. 18. I will go to our next-door neighbours and borrow from them.

"Ko pi jên chia"—the people on the other side of the partition or wall, so neighbours, close ones.

19. M. K'uai ch'ü pa. Wo shên shang chüeh tê lêng. I hui lai chiu shêng huo pa. 19. Go without delay. I feel cold. Light the fire as soon as you come back.

"I hui lai, chiu . . ."—"as soon as you come back, then . . .".

20. S. T'ai yang k'uai hsia ch'ü ti shih hou, jên jên tou chüeh tê lêng. 20. Just before sun-down everybody feels cold.

21. M. Ni k'an na kuei tzu li mien yu jung t'an, na ch'u liang ch'uang lai. 21. In the cupboard (wardrobe) there you will find some blankets. Take out a couple.

22. S. Hsien shêng t'ang i t'ang; to kai shang i tie'rh. Tsai to ho k'ai shui, ch'u i tie'rh han. Kuo liang t'ien chiu hao la. 22. Lie down sir with some extra covers. Then drink lots of hot water to induce perspiration. (And) you will be all right again in a few days (lit. two days).

23. M. K'ai k'ai na ko ch'ou t'i. Li pie'rh yu fa han yao. Wo ch'ih sanliangk'o. Tsai pa têng mieh la, wo yao shui chiao. 23. Open that drawer. There is some medicine in it to induce perspiration. I will take two or three tablets. Then put out the lamp, I want to sleep.

18. 隔 Ko.² Partition.
 壁 Pi.⁴ Screen, partition wall.
 隔壁人家 Ko-pi-jên-chia. Neighbours.
19. 覺 Chüeh. Chiao.² Feel, be conscious of.
 冷 Lêng.³ Cold.
20. 陽 Yang.² The sun, male principle, south.
21. 櫃 Kuei.⁴ Wardrobe, cupboard.
 牀 Ch'uang.³ Bed, classifier of blankets, etc.
 絨 Jung.² Wool, woollen.
 絨毯 Jung-t'an. Blanket, rug.
22. 躺 T'ang.³ To recline, lie down.
 汗 Han.⁴ Perspiration.
 出汗 Ch'u-han. To perspire.
 顆 K'o.¹ Classifier of pills, seeds, pearls, etc.
23. 抽 Ch'ou.¹ To draw out.
 屨 Ti.⁴ Drawer, in a table, etc.
 抽屨 Ch'ou-t'i. Drawer.
 滅 Mich.⁴ To put out, as a lamp, candle, etc.
 藥 Yao.⁴ Yo.⁴ Medicine.
 藥 Ditto Ditto.
 睡 Shui.⁴ To sleep.

DIALOGUE No. 22

Discussion between Master (M) and Servant (S) on some personal needs such as Washing, Waking, Wages, etc.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. M. Na jê shui lai, wo
yao hsi lien. | 1. Bring me some hot
water to wash my
face. |
| 2. S. Hsien shêng pu yao
hsi tsao ma. | 2. Don't you want to have
a bath? |
| 3. M. K'ung p'a jê shui
pu kou hsi tsao. | 3. I am afraid there will
not be enough hot
water for a bath. |
| 4. S. Yeh kou la. Shui
hên jê, t'ien tien
lêng shui, chiu pu
ta li. | 4. Just about enough.
The water is very
hot, and if a little
cold is added, it
should be about
enough. |
| <p>"Yeh", we saw in the last dialogue, strengthens the negative it precedes; here we see how it modifies the sense of a positive expression; e.g., "enough", just enough, no surplus.</p> | |
| 5. M. K'o shih wo yeh
tê kua lien, yung
lêng shui pu
hsing. | 5. But I must shave as
well, and cold water
won't do for that. |
| 6. S. Hsien shêng k'o la
ma. Wo pa i pei
liang k'ai shui,
na tao lou shang
ch'ü la. | 6. Are you thirsty sir. I
have taken a glass
of cold boiled water
upstairs. |

The "la" at the end of the sentence marks the whole as being in the past tense.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 22

1. 熱 Jê.⁴ Hot.
洗 Hsi.³ To wash.
臉 Lien.³ The face, countenance.
2. 澡 Tsao.³ To bathe.
洗澡 Hsi-tsao. To take a bath.
4. 添 T'ien.¹ To add to, increase.
5. 刮 Kua.¹ To scrape, to shave.
刮臉 Kua-lien. To shave the face.
6. 涼開水 Liang-k'ai-shui. Cold boiled water.

7. M. Ming t'ien wo yao
tsao tsao ti ch'i
lai. Ni wu tien
chung lai chiao
wo.

7. I want to get up very
early to-morrow.
Come and call me at
five o'clock.

The duplication of the adverb "tsao" intensifies the meaning as "very early".

8. S. Wo k'an hsien shêng
fa la, hai shih
tsao tien shui ti
hao.

8. I can see that you are
tired sir. You will
do well to get to bed
a little early.

9. M. Wo ming t'ien ch'i
lai ti shih hou,
yao kei wo sung
wên shui hsi shou.

9. Bring me some warm
water to wash my
hands when I get up
to-morrow.

10. M. (cont.). Tso t'ien
ni pa ch'uang mei
yu p'u hao, wo
mei yu shui hao
chiao.

10. You did not make the
bed properly yester-
day. I did not sleep
very well.

11. S. Tui pu ch'i hsien
shêng. Tso t'ien
shih ch'ing t'ai
to, mang pu kuo
lai.

11. I am sorry sir. There
was too much to
do yesterday, and
I couldn't overtake
the work.

"Tui pu ch'i"—match not rise, I have not done what the circumstances called for; apologies!

"Mang pu kuo lai"—busy not get round, too much to do.

12. M. Yao shih ni shih
ch'ing t'ai to, kan
pu kuo lai ti shih
hou, wo chiu kai
kei ni chao i ko
pang mang ti.

12. If you have too much
to do, and cannot do
everything, I must
get someone to help.

8. 乏 Fa.² Fatigued, tired.
睡 Shui.⁴ To sleep, slumber.
睡覺 Shui-chiao. To sleep.
9. 溫 Wên.¹ Warm, mild, to warm up.
手 Shou.³ Hand, hands.
10. 鋪 P'u.¹ To spread, or make a bed.
11. 對不起 Tui-pu-ch'i. To offend, apologise.

13. S. Chiao hsien shêng fei hsin. Pu kuo hai yu i chien shih ch'ing ho hsien shêng shuo. 13. Many thanks (lit. I have caused you to expend thought). But there is another matter on which I must speak to you.

"Chiao . . . fei hsin"—cause . . . expend heart; thank you!

14. M. Shih shih mo shih ch'ing, ni shuo pa. 14. Tell me what it is.
15. S. Hsien tsai ch'êng li t'ou shêng huo ch'êng tu t'ai kao, kuo jih tzu hên nan. 15. The standard of living in the city is so high that I find it difficult to live.

"Shêng huo"—life, living, conditions of life.

"Kuo jih tzu"—to pass the days; "living" in the sense of "to get a living".

"Chêng tu"—standard. "Piao chun" is also used.

16. M. Ni i ko yüeh chêng to shao ch'ien. 16. How much do you earn a month?
17. S. Pa k'uai ch'ien i ko yüeh, pu kou yung. 17. Eight dollars. It isn't enough.
18. M. Na mo, wo chiu kei ni chia san k'uai ch'ien i ko yüeh, hsing pu hsing. 18. Then I will give you a rise of three dollars a month. Will that do?
19. S. Mien ch'iang. Hsieh hsieh. 19. I must make it do. Thanks.

15. 城 Ch'êng.² The city.
 活 Huo.² Living, livelihood, lively.
 生活 Shêng-huo. One's life, livelihood, etc.
 程 Ch'êng.² Capacity.
 度 Tu.⁴ Standard.
 程度 Ch'êng-tu. Capacity, standard.
 生活程度 Shêng - huo - ch'êng - tu. The standard of living.
 日 Jih.⁴ Day, the sun.
 過日子 Kuo-jih-tzu. To live, to pass one's days.
 難 Nan.² Difficult.
16. 掙 Chêng.⁴ To earn.

19. 勉 Mien.³ To rouse oneself, make an effort.

DIALOGUE No. 23

The Week's Work in the House

Master or Mistress, M. Servant, S.

- | | |
|--|---|
| <p>1. M. Wo chiu pa ni t'ien
t'ien, ying tang
pan ti shih, shuo
kei ni t'ing.
Mei li pai i yao hsi
i fu.</p> | <p>1. I will now tell you
about each day's
chores. On Mondays
you must do the
washing (laundry).</p> |
| <p>"T'ien t'ien"—day by day. "Mei t'ien" is also in common use. Notice "mei li pai", "i, erh, san, etc.", for the days of the week, which begins with Monday. Sunday is "Li pai jih", or "t'ien", or "Hsing ch'i jih" ("t'ien").</p> | |
| <p>2. S. Pa pu kan ching ti
i fu, sung tao hsi
i tien ch'ü, hsing
pu hsing.</p> | <p>2. Couldn't we send the
dirty linen to the
laundry?</p> |
| <p>3. M. Chiao hsi i tien hsi
i fu, pu shang
suan. Kan ching
ti i fu sung hui
lai ti shih hou,
ch'üan shih k'u
lung.</p> | <p>3. To send the dirty linen
to the laundry is
uneconomical. For
when the clean gar-
ments come back
they are full of holes.</p> |
| <p>4. S. Na mo, chiao ts'ai
fêng pu i pu.</p> | <p>4. Then you have to get
the tailor to patch
them.</p> |
| <p>5. M. Shih ti. Ni k'an
chê i chien han
shan, ch'ê ti ti
fang t'ai to.</p> | <p>5. That is so. Look at
this shirt, torn in too
many places alto-
gether.</p> |

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 23

1. 天天 T'ien-t'ien. Daily, every day.
禮 Li.³ Worship, rite, ceremony.
拜 Pai.⁴ Worship, revere.
禮拜 Li-pai. Worship, the week, days of the week.
每 Mei.³ Each, every.
衣服 I¹-fu. Clothes.
2. 店 Tien.⁴ An inn, used of laundries.
3. 窟 K'u.¹ Hole, cave.
窿 Lung.³ Hole, cave.
4. 補 Pu.³ To patch, a patch, repair, tonic.
5. 衫 Shan.¹ Shirt.
汗衫 Han-shan. Shirt, vest.
揩 Ch'ê.³ To tear, rend.

6. S. Hsi i tien ti kung
jên, pu chia hsiao
hsin, pu ju chia
li hsi ti hao.

6. The workmen in the
laundry don't take
special care, (so) we
had better wash at
home.

"Chia hsiao hsin"—add a little heart, pay careful attention; for the "little heart" is intended to denote concentration.

7. M. Mei li pai êrh, yao
shou shih chia li
ti fang wu, lou
shang ho lou hsia.

7. Every Tuesday you
must do all the
rooms in the house,
upstairs and down.

8. S. Shou shih k'o fang
ho hsi tsao fang,
shih wo ti shih;
shou shih fan
t'ing ho ch'u
fang, shih ch'u
tzu ti shih, shih
pu shih.

8. To clear up the guest-
room and the bath-
room is my job, but
the dining-room and
the kitchen are the
cook's responsibility,
aren't they?

"Ch'u tzu" more definitely means cook than "ta shih (ssu) fu",
as "ch'u" is kitchen.

9. M. Ling wai hai yu shu
fang ho ts'ê so,
chê hsieh kuei
shui pan ni.

9. In addition there are
the study and the
W.C. To whom are
we to look for doing
these?

"Ts'ê so"—w.c.; also "mao fang" or "mao ssu".

"Kuei shui pan"—revert who do?

10. S. P'ing ch'ang chô
hsieh tou shih
k'an mên ti huo
shih ma fu kan ti.

10. Normally these are
the responsibility of
the gateman or the
groom.

11. M. Wu lun shui kan,
chia li tsung tê
yao kan ching,
chêng ch'i.

11. No matter who does
the work, the house
must be kept clean
and tidy.

"Wu lun"—not discuss, so, no matter.

6. 小心 Hsiao-hsin. Take care, cautious.

8. 廳 T'ing.¹ Hall, court, room.

9. 廁
所
廁 所
歸
Ts'ê.⁴ Ssu.⁴ Private, closet.
So.³ A place.
Ts'ê-so. W.C.
Kuei.¹ Revert to, to belong to.

10. 平
常
平 常
看 門 的
馬 夫
P'ing.² Level, constant, ordinary.
Ch'ang.⁴ Usual, ordinary, constant.
P'ing-ch'ang. Usual, ordinary.
K'an-mên-ti. Gatekeeper.
Ma-fu. Groom.

12. 吩 Fên.¹ Command, order.
 咐 Fu.⁴ Command, order.
13. 擦 Ts'a.¹ To rub, polish.
 銀 Yin.² Silver, money.
 玻 Po.¹ Glass.
 璃 Li.² Glassware.
 器 Ch'i.⁴ Vessel, utensil.
 擲 Tan.⁴ To dust, beat.
 挂 Kua.⁴ Hang up.
14. 灰 Hui.¹ Ashes.
 塵 Ch'ên.² Dust, small particles.
 鄰 Lin.² Neighbouring, neighbour.
 居 Chü.¹ Dwell.
 鄰 Lin-chü. Neighbours.
 喜 Hsi.³ Pleasure, joy.
 歡 Huan.¹ Pleased, rejoice.
 歡 Hsi-huan. To be pleased, rejoice.
15. 相 Hsiang.¹ Mutual.
 干 Kan.¹ Concern.
 不 相 干 Pu - hsiang - kan. Of no concern, of no moment.
 講 Chiang.³ To be particular, explain.
 究 Chiu.⁴ To analyse, examine, be particular about.
 講 究 Chiang-chiu. To be concerned or particular about.
 衛 Wei.⁴ To guard, protect.
 生 Wei-shêng. Hygiene.
16. 同 T'ung.² Together with, with, the same.
 時 T'ung-shih. At the same time, concurrently.
 妨 Fang.¹ Hinder, obstruct.
 各 Ko.⁴ Each, every.

ai jên chia ti wei
shêng.

but surely he must
not make it more
difficult (hinder) for
others to observe
hygiene.

"Jên chia"—others, other people.

17. M. Ni shuo ti yu li.
Hsien tsai pu yao
to shuo hua, kan
ni ti ch'ü pa.

17. There is reason in what
you say. But now
less of this chatter,
get on with your job.

"Kan ni ti"—mind your own business!

18. S. Hsien shêng kei wo
i k'uai kan ching
ti ma pu, wo chiu
ch'ü mo cho tzu,
i tzu, ching tzu,
i ch'ieh ti chia
chü.

18. If you will provide me
with a clean duster,
I will dust the table,
chairs, mirror, and
all the rest of the
furniture.

19. M. Hao. Yeh pu yao
wang la, mo chia
chü ti shih hou,
yao pa ch'uang
hu k'ai k'ai, huan
huan k'ung ch'i.

19. Good. And don't for-
get to open the win-
dows when you are
dusting, to change
the air.

20. S. T'ien ch'i hao ti
shih hou, k'o i
chê yang pan;
kua fêng hsia yü
ti shih hou, k'ung
p'a pu hsing.

20. In fine weather that
can be done; but
when it is windy or
wet, I fear that would
be inadvisable.

16. 碍 Ai, ngai.⁴ Stand in the way, hinder.
 妨碍 Fang-ai. Hindrance, obstruct.

17. 幹你的 Kan-ni-ti. Mind your own business.

18. 麻 Ma.² Hemp.
 麻布 Ma-pu. Duster.
 抹 Mo.² To dust, polish, rub with the hand.
 鏡 Ching.⁴ Mirror.
 傢 Chia.¹ Tools, furniture.
 具 Chü.⁴ Implements.
 傢具 Chia-chü. Utensils, furniture.
 切 Ch'ieh.¹ All, everything.
 一切 I-ch'ieh. Everything, all.
19. 換 Huan.⁴ To change, exchange.
 空 K'ung.¹ Empty, vast, air.
 氣 Ch'i.⁴ Atmosphere, air.
 空氣 K'ung-ch'i. Air, fresh air.

20. 風 Fêng.¹ The wind.
 括 Kua.¹ To blow.
 括風 Kua-fêng. Windy.
 雨 Yü.³ Rain.
 下雨 Hsia-yü. To rain, it is raining.

DIALOGUE No. 24

Talking Accounts with the Cook

Mistress, *M.* Cook, *C.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>M.</i> (to cook). Ta ssu
fu lai suan chang. | 1. Come and reckon ac-
counts. |
| 2. <i>C.</i> T'ai t'ai shao wei
têng i têng, wo
na chang pu ho
ch'ien pi. | 2. Just a moment, while
I fetch the account
book and pencil. |
| 3. <i>M.</i> Chê ko (pên) li pai
ni mai la shêm-
mo tung-hsi, man
man ti shuo pa. | 3. What have you bought
this week? Tell me
slowly. |
| 4. <i>C.</i> Chê ko li pai wo mai
la yang jou, pai
ts'ai, ti tan, hung
lo pei, chi tan,
hua shêng. | 4. I have bought this week
mutton, cabbage,
potatoes, carrots,
eggs and peanuts. |

"Hsing-ch'i" is the secular designation of the week, and is used also for the individual days of the week, with the numeral "i, êrh, san, etc.," attached. The other common term for week is "li-pai", which lit. means worship, and was introduced by the Christian missionaries. The older Chinese designation of the days of the week consisted of names of planets.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. <i>M.</i> Mu yu mai niu jou,
ya tzu, yeh chi
ma. | 5. Haven't you bought
any beef, ducks or
pheasants? |
|---|---|

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 24

2. 簿 Pu.⁴ Account-book, note-book.
 賬簿 Chang-pu. Account-book.
 鉛 Ch'ien.¹ Lead, black-lead.
 鉛筆 Ch'ien-pi. Pencil.
3. 本 Pên.³ This, native, one's own.
-
4. 星 Hsing.¹ Star.
 期 Ch'i.² Date, period of time.
 星期 Hsing-ch'i. Week.
 白 Pai.^{2 4} White.
 白菜 Pai-ts'ai. Cabbage.
 地 Tl.⁴ The earth.
 蛋 Tan.⁴ Egg, egg-like.
 地蛋 Ti-tan. Potatoes.
 紅 Hung.² Red.
 蘿 Lo.² Carrots.
 蔔 Pei.² Carrots.
 雞蛋 Chi-tan. Eggs, egg.
 花 Hua.¹ Flower.
 花生 Hua-shêng. Peanuts.
5. 牛 Niu-jou. Beef.
 肉 Ya.¹ (tzu). Duck.
 鴨 Yeh.³ Wild, rustic.
 野

6. C. Ché chi t'ien shih
ch'ang shang mei
yu ché hsieh tung
hsi. Hou t'ien
kan chi, yeh hsü
yu mai ti.

6. There are none in the
market these days.
But the day after
to-morrow is market
day. There may be
some then.

7. M. To jih mei yu ch'ih
pai ts'ai hua, pu
shih mei yu ni.

7. We have not eaten
cauliflower for a long
time. Surely there
are some to be had?

8. C. Yu shih yu, k'o shih
chia ch'ien t'ai
ta, wo pu kan
mai.

8. There are some, but the
price is too high, I
dare not buy.

9. M. Ta kai yin wei pu
shih shih hou.
Liu hsin, chia lo
ti shih hou chiu
mai.

9. Probably that is because
it is not the season.
Watch out, and when
the price comes
down, buy.

"Liu hsin"—take care.

"Chia lo"—falling prices. "Chia chang" is rising prices.

10. C. T'ai t'ai hsi huan
ch'ih shêng ts'ai
ma. Hsien tsai
yu to yu p'ien i.

10. Do you like salads?
They are plentiful
and cheap just now.

"Yu to yu p'ien i". "Yu . . . yu"—both . . . and.

11. M. Hsi huan ch'ih, k'o
shih tê hsiao hsin,
shêng ts'ai tsung
tê hsien yung k'ai
shui, hsi kuo,
ts'ai kan ch'ih.

11. Yes, but you must be
careful, salads should
be washed in cold
boiled water before
one dare eat them.

"Ts'ai" in such phrases means "then" in a logical sense of
sequence. Something must first be done, and "then" something
else *can* happen.

6. 市 Shih.⁴ Market.
 場 Ch'ang.² Open place, square, market.
 市場 Shih-ch'ang. Market.
 集 Chi.¹ The fair.
 趕集 Kan-chi. To go to the fair, hold a fair.
7. 白菜花 Pai-ts'ai-hua. Cauliflower.
9. 時候 Shih-hou. Time, season.
 留 Liu.³ To keep, hold.
 留心 Liu-hsin. Observe, notice, give attention to.
 落 Lo. Lao.⁴ To come down, to fall, as prices, leaves.
10. 生 Shêng.¹ Raw, as opposed to cooked.
 生菜 Shêng-ts'ai. Salads, raw vegetables.
 又 Tu.⁴ Both, again.

12. C. Chin t'ien wo shên shang pu shu-fu, fa shao, k'ung p'a shang la fêng la. 12. I am not very well to-day, I am feverish. I fear I have caught cold.
- "Shang fêng", wounded by the wind, so means catch cold. Other expressions for this are "chao liang", or "shou fêng".
13. M. Wo ch'ing tai-fu (i shêng) lai k'an i k'an, hao pu hao. 13. I will call a doctor to see what is the matter, shall I?
- "Tai fu", a common designation of doctor; others are "I shêng", "k'an ping ti hsien shêng".
14. C. Pu yao ch'ing hsi i, ch'ing Chung kuo hsien shêng, kei wo k'ai fang tzu, chiu hsing. 14. Don't ask a western doctor. I will ask a Chinese doctor to write out a prescription.
15. M. K'o shih chang hai mei yu suan, t'ung kung hua la to shao ch'ien. 15. But we haven't taken the account yet. How much have you spent altogether?
16. C. T'ung kung hua la shih i k'uai wu mao liu. 16. I have spent altogether eleven dollars and fifty-six cents.
17. M. K'ung p'a chê ko chang suan ts'o la, ni tsai suan suan. 17. I fear you have made a mistake in this account, try again.
18. C. Wo k'an mei yu suan ts'o. Wo hai shêng hsia liang k'uai ch'i. 18. I think it is right. I have a balance of two dollars seventy.
19. M. K'ung p'a ni nao ching pu ch'ing ch'u, wo k'an ni hai hsia ch'ien chiu mao. 19. I think your brain must not be quite clear, I think you are short ninety cents.

12. 舒服 Shu-fu. Comfortable, happy, contented.
 燒 Shao.¹ Hot, feverish, heat.
 發燒 Fa-shao. To be hot, have a fever.
 傷 Shang.¹ To injure, to catch (cold), be injured.
13. 大 Tai. T'ai.⁴ Great, big.
 大夫 Tai-fu. Doctor.
 醫 I.¹ To heal, cure.
 醫生 I-shêng. Doctor.
14. 西醫 Hsi-i. Western doctor.
 中國先生 Chung-kuo-hsien-shêng. Chinese doctor.
 方 Fang.¹ (tzu). Prescription.
 開方子 K'ai-fang-tzu. Write a prescription, to prescribe.
18. 剩 Shêng.⁴ Remainder, left over.
19. 欠 Ch'ien.⁴ To be short, to owe.
 腦 Nao.³ The brain.
 腦經 Nao-ching. Brain.

20. C. Yeh hsü t'ai t'ai 20. Perhaps you are right.
suan ti tui. Wo My head is a little
ti nao tzu chiu bit fuzzy.
shih hun i tie'rh.

20. 昏

Hun.⁴ Confused.

DIALOGUE No. 25

Travelling by Road

Between two friends, A and B

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. A. Ming t'ien wo yao
ch'u mên. | 1. To-morrow I intend to
travel. |
| 2. B. Hsien shêng shang
na-êrh ch'ü. | 2. Where are you thinking
of going? |
| 3. A. Ta suan shang P'u
Tien Ch'ih ch'ü,
k'an i ko p'êng
yu. | 3. I plan to go to P'u Tien
Ch'ih, to look up one
of my friends. |

Note "k'an" in the sense of "call on" a person. Sometimes the expression "k'an-wang" is used, the "wang" being the word for expect, hope, etc., and so you get the idea of "going to inquire about", much as we say "I am going to 'look up' my friend".

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. B. Hao, wo yüan i p'ei
nin ch'ü, hsing
pu hsing. | 4. Good, I would like to
accompany you —
may I? |
|---|---|

"P'ei" means to accompany, but is only used of "equals" in the social scale. A servant cannot use it to his master. If it were a servant speaking he would say "Wo ken hsien-sheng ch'ü", i.e., I will follow you.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 5. A. Tan shih ni yao tai
ni tzu chi tsai
lu shang ch'ih ti
tung hsi. | 5. All right, provided you
carry your own road
rations. (Lit. but
you ought to carry
...) |
| 6. B. Na pu ch'êng wên
t'i, hsien-shêng
chi tien chung
ch'i shên. | 6. That presents no diffi-
culty, what time
shall you start? |
| 7. A. Tsai ch'ing tsao,
t'ai yang kang
shang lai ti shih
hou, tung shên. | 7. Very early, as soon as
the sun rises, we will
start. |

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 25

3. 打算 Ta-suan. To plan, propose, think of doing.
普 P'u.³ Universal.
池 Ch'ih.² Pool, pond.
普天池 P'u-t'ien-ch'ih. The name of a place.
4. 陪 P'ei.² To accompany, act as companion,
etc.
6. 題 T'i.² To mention, subject of discourse.
問題 Wên-t'i. A question.
不成問題 Pu-ch'êng-wên-t'i. That makes no question.
7. 太陽 T'ai-yang. The sun.
剛 Kang.¹ Just now, just then.
動身 Tung-shên. To move, start on a journey.
起身 Ch'i-shên. To move, start on a journey.

8. B. Hsien shêng tso 8. Are you going by cart
 chiao ch'ê, hai (Peking cart) or rid-
 shih ch'i shêng ing?
 k'ou ni.

Note the difference between "ch'i" and "tso". The former means to ride astride, so is applicable to bicycle or horse riding. "Tso" is used of travelling by any vehicle which permits of "sitting" in the ordinary way.

9. A. Yeh pu tso chiao 9. Neither by cart nor by
 ch'ê, yeh pu ch'i horse, we will walk.
 ma, wo-mên pu
 hsing pa.

"Yeh pu . . . yeh pu"—neither . . . nor.

10. B. Na t'ai fei shih, 10. But that is difficult,
 tsêm-mo pu tso why don't you go by
 ch'i ch'ê ni. auto?

11. A. Tso kung kung ch'i 11. To go by omnibus is
 ch'ê, pu shu fu, not comfortable, the
 lu tao pu p'ing, road is rough and
 tien p'o ti li-hai. one gets badly jolted.

"Li hai" is a very common adverb indicating an extreme condition, much as we use "terribly" in colloquial speech.

12. B. P'u Tien Ch'ih li 12. How far is Pu Tien
 chê li to ma yüan. Ch'ih from here?

13. A. Ta yüeh shih wu li 13. Probably about fifteen
 lu. li.

"Ta yüeh" (yo) is generally used, of statements about figures, measurements, etc., as is "ta lüeh" (whereas "ta kai" may be applied to any condition where vague probability or generalities are implied). But this is not a hard and fast distinction.

14. B. Na tao pu yüan, pu 14. That is not very far for
 hsing yeh k'o i. sure, walking is pos-
 sible.

8. 轎 Chiao.⁴ A sedan chair.
 轎車 Chiao-ch'ê. A mule-cart, Peking cart.
 騎 Ch'i.² To ride astride.
 牲 Shêng.¹ An animal, cattle.
 牲口 Shêng-k'ou. Animals in general, horses,
 mules, donkeys, camels, etc.
9. 步 Pu.⁴ A step, pace, on foot.
 步行 Pu-hsing. To walk, go on foot.
10. 費 Fei.⁴ To spend, waste.
 費事 Fei-shih. To spend oneself on something,
 difficult.
- 汽車 Ch'i-ch'ê. Motor car (lit. vapour car).
11. 公 Kung.¹ Public, general, official.
 公共汽車 Kung-kung-ch'i-ch'ê. The omnibus.
 顛 Tien.¹ Upset, jolting, bumpy.
 簸 P'o.⁴ Winnow, used of the jolting move-
 ment.
 厲 Li.⁴ Sharp, severe, oppress.
 害 Hai.⁴ Hurt, injure.
 厲害 Li-hai. Extreme, terribly.
13. 約 Yüeh. Yo.¹ Agree, pledge, about.
 大約 Ta-yüeh. Roughly, about, of measure-
 ments.

15. A. K'o shih k'o i, tan shih pì hsü tai i
ko lêng jê shui
p'ing tzu, chuang
man liao k'ai shui
ch'ü ho.
15. No, there is nothing against walking it, but it is necessary to carry a thermos flask full of boiled water to drink.

Note "k'o shih k'o i", where the verb "k'o" is duplicated with the idea of modifying the strength of it. Here "it is just possible", to walk, but there are conditions attached to walking it.

16. B. Na ko wo tao wang pu liao, hai yu
shên-mo kai tai
ti ni.
16. That I shan't forget, ought one to take anything else?

"Pu liao" following a verb indicates impossibility of the verbal action being carried into effect. It differs from "pu te", used in this way, in that the latter usually carries with it a sense of "oughtness" or "fitness".

17. A. Yeh tai i ko yü san huò yü i, fu t'ien
k'ên hsia yü.
17. Bring either an umbrella or a raincoat, in the heat it is likely to rain.

"K'ên" means willing, and so in colloquial speech tends to be used in the sense of "prone to"; "disposed to", etc.

18. B. Hsien-shêng yü liao tê hao, wo chao
pan chiu shih la.
18. You exercise good forethought, I will carry out your orders (a politely humorous expression).

19. A. Wo-mên i ching p'ao la shih lai li
lu, wo-mên tsai
lû kuan t'ing i
hui'êrh, hao pu
hao.
19. We have walked about ten li, shall we stop at an inn for a while?

15. 必須 Pi-hsü. Necessary, must.
-
17. 傘 San.³ Umbrella, parasol.
 雨傘 Yü-san. Umbrella.
 雨衣 Yü-i. Raincoat.
 伏天 Fu.² The dog-days, great heat.
 伏天 Fu-t'ien. The height of summer.
 肯 K'ên.³ Willing, prone to.
18. 料 Liao.⁴ To calculate.
 預料 Yü-liao. Foresee, foresight.
 照 Chao.¹ According to, shine, photograph.
 照辦 Chao-pan. To act according to instructions.
19. 跑 P'ao.³ To run, also to walk (long distances).
 旅 Lü.³ Travel, journey.
 館 Kuan.¹ Hostel, hotel, etc.
 旅館 Lü-kuan. Hotel, hostel.
 停 T'ing.² To halt, stop.
 一會兒 I-hui-rh. A while, a short time.

20. B. Chê t'iao lu shang
ti lü tien pu
tsêm-mo hao, tao
pu ju tso tsai
lu p'ang, hsieh i
hui'êrh.
20. The inns on this stretch
of road are not very
good, let's sit by the
roadside and rest
awhile.

"Pu tsên-mo (tsêm-mo) hao". The "tsêm-mo" has the sense of "very", "much", although its basic meaning is "how, why, what?", etc.

21. A. T'ung i, wo-mên
yeh k'o i ho i
k'ou shui, ch'ih
chi k'uai ping
kan.
21. Agreed, we can also
have a drink of water
and munch a few
biscuits.

"T'ung i", lit. same meaning, so agreed.

“Ping kan”. Note how “kan”, dry, comes *after* the noun. So in “p’u-t’ao-kan”, which means raisins, lit. grapes dried.

22. B. Ai! lao-hsien shēng 22. Ai! you old friend (tea-
 tao Pu Tien Ch'ih cher), how far is it
 hai yu chi li lu. to P'u Tien Ch'ih?

"Lao", old, an epithet of respect when addressed to strangers.

23. A. Pu yüan, hai yu wu 23. Not far, there is still
liu li lu. about five or six li.

24. *B.* Ch'ien mie'rh ti lu hao tsou pu hao tsou. 24. Is the road good ahead?

25. A. Hao tsou, pu kuo
ts'un tzu wai
pie'rh yu chi ko
ni k'êng chiu shih
la.

26. *B.* Ts'un tzu li pie'rh,
yu fan kuan mei
yu.
26. Is there a restaurant
inside the village?

20. 條 T'iao.² Length, classifier of long things.
 店 Tien.⁴ Inn.
 旁 P'ang.² Side.

21. 餅 Ping.³ Biscuit, cake.
 餅乾 Ping-kan. Biscuits.
 同 T'ung.² Together, with.

25. 村 Ts'un.¹ Village.
 坑 K'êng.¹ Pit-hollow.

26. 飯館 Fan-kuan. Eating-house, restaurant.

27. A. Mei yu hao ti, mai
ti yeh pu kuo
shih chia ch'ang
p'ien fan.
27. Nothing very good,
they sell just ordin-
ary everyday food.

"Chia ch'ang pien fan", frequently written up on the outside wall of a wayside inn (lit. home ordinary ready food).

28. B. Fan kuan, hao chao
pu hao chao ni.

29. A. Hao chao, i chin
ts'un mên, tsai lu
tung ti chiu shih
la.
29. Easy to find, as soon
as you enter the vil-
lage gate, it is on the
east side of the road.

"I chin . . . chiu "; the "i" has the sense of "as soon as" when coupled with a verb followed by "chiu".

30. B. Lao chia, lao chia. 30. Thanks, sorry to have detained you.

"Lao chia". "Lao" means to trouble, and "chia" means chariot, which again is used as an appellation of honour. So "lao chia" means "I have troubled you Sir". It can therefore be appropriately used for the equivalent of our "Sorry to have troubled you".

31. A. Mu yu shên-mo, li tang ti. 31. That's nothing, the usual courtesy.

27. 家常便飯 Chia-ch'ang-pien-fan. Everyday food, always ready.

DIALOGUE No. 26

Travelling by Train

Between two friends, A and B

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. A. Chê ko ch'ê shih wang Peiching k'ai ti ch'ê pu shih. | 1. Is this the train for Peking? |
| 2. B. Pu shih, ch'ê shih wang Hankou k'ai ti ch'ê. | 2. No, it is the train for Hankow. |
| 3. A. Wang Peiching k'ai ti huo ch'ê, shih tsai na i ko yüeh t'ai ni. | 3. On which platform is the train for Peking? |

"Yüeh t'ai", lit. moon terrace. I will hazard a guess that the term arose from the fact that at some station or other in the early days of railways in China the platform was of the crescent form, and so the term "moon" came to be applied to all station platforms whatever their form.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 4. B. Shih ti san hao yüeh t'ai. | 4. Platform No. 3. |
| 5. A. Hsien-shêng yao ta na i têng ti p'iao. | 5. Which class ticket do you want? |

"Ta" is used instead of "mai", to buy, for a number of things including tickets.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 6. B. Chê i t'ang shih k'uai ch'ê, hai shih man ch'ê ni. | 6. Is this train express or slow? |
|--|-----------------------------------|

Note that "t'ang" is a classifier of trains. It also means a particular journey of a train.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 7. A. Shih man ch'ê, k'o shih t'ou êrh têng tou yu. | 7. It is slow, but it has both first and second class coaches. |
|---|--|

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 26

3. 火車 Huo-ch'ê. Train (lit. fire-cart).
 月台 Yüeh-t'ai. Platform.
4. 號 Hao.⁴ Number, designation.
5. 打 Ta.³ To book, as a ticket
 票 P'iao.⁴ Ticket, voucher.
6. 趟 T'ang.⁴ Time, turn, track, classifier of
 trains.

8. B. Kua ti fan (ts'an) 8. Is there a restaurant
ch'ê mei yu. car on it?

"Kua"—to hook on, a more descriptive expression than the neutral
"yu"—is there?

9. A. Mei yu fan (ts'an) 9. No restaurant car, but
ch'ê, k'o shih yu a kitchen car.
ch'u fang.

10. B. Ch'ê shang nêng 10. What food can one buy
mai shên-mo fan. on the train?

11. A. Nêng mai niu ju 11. Beef-steak, egg soup,
p'ai, chitzu t'ang, omelette, etc.
ch'ao chi tan têng
têng.

"Têng, têng"—kinds, kinds, a good equivalent of etc.

12. B. K'o i, chao chiao 12. Good, get a porter to
fu kei wo pan carry my luggage
tung hsi. (things).

"K'u li", lit. bitter strength—an apt description of a coolie's life
is sometimes used. There are several suggested derivations of the
word, in Hindi, Tamil and Turkish languages.

13. A. Pan hsing li yu i 13. Is there a fixed price for
ting ti chia ch'ien carrying baggage?
ma.

14. B. Liang ko t'ung tzu 14. Two coppers a piece is
i chien shih ting the fixed price, but
chia, ling wai hai you will have to give
tê kei chi ko chiu a few coppers as a
ch'ien. pourboire.

15. A. Na mo wo-mên 15. Well, let's get aboard
shang ch'ê pa. the train.

16. B. I lu p'ing an. 16. A peaceful journey to
you.

"I lu"—I, one, in the sense of "the whole", a common use of
the word.

8. 挂 Kua.¹ To hook up, used of connecting coaches.
餐 Ts'an.¹ To dine, a meal.
11. 排 P'ai.² Chop, steak, row, rank.
牛肉排 Niu-ju-p'ai. Beef-steak.
炒 Ch'ao.³ Fry, roast.
炒雞蛋 Ch'ao-chi-tan. Scrambled eggs, omelette.
12. 脚 Chiao.³ Foot, leg, used for porters.
脚夫 Chiao-fu. Porter, coolie.
搬 Pan.¹ To move, carry from one place to another.
13. 行李 Hsing-li. Baggage.
14. 銅 T'ung.² Copper, copper coin, with "tzu"
酒錢 Chiu-ch'ien. Wine money, a tip.
16. 平 P'ing.² Peaceful, level, calm.
安 An.¹ Peace.
平安 P'ing-an. Peace, a Christian greeting.

17. A. T'i wo wên hou chia 17. My respectful inquiries
li pie'rh ti jên. to your family.

"Wên hou" is used when sending inquiries or respects by means of another.

18. B. Huo ch'ê shih chi 18. What time does the
tien chung tao train arrive in Pek-
Peiching. ing?

19. A. Na tê k'an lu shang 19. That all depends on
t'ung pu t'ung. whether the line is
clear.

"K'an" is look, see, etc., and so readily acquires the sense of "it depends".

20. B. Chê chi t'ien huo 20. These days there are
ch'ê hên to. a good many goods-
trains on the line.

"Huo" is goods, and is in the fourth tone, thus distinguishing it from "huo", fire, in the third tone, which means the ordinary train.

21. A. K'o jên yeh shih pu 21. Passengers are numer-
shao. ous too.

"K'o" means traveller as well as guest.

22. B. K'an kuang ching, 22. It looks from the cir-
shih chũ hsiang cumstances as though
yao pien kêng. there is going to be a
change in the situa-
tion.

"K'an" here means it looks, it seems, etc.

23. A. Pu ts'o, yün ti tui 23. True, lots of troops are
wu, yeh shih to being transported.
la.

17. 替問候 T'i.⁴ Instead of, for.
Wên-hou. To inquire after one's well-being.

19. 通 T'ung.¹ To pass through, clear, way, connection.

22. 光 Kuang.¹ Light.
景 Ching.³ Circumstances, prospect.
光景 Kuang-ching. Circumstances.
局 Chü.² Position, plan.
時局 Shih-chü. The situation.
像 Hsiang.⁴ Like, image.
變 Pien.⁴ To change, alter.
更 Keng.¹ Alter, change, more, etc.
變更 Pien-kêng. To change.
23. 運 Yün.⁴ To transport, move, revolve, luck.
隊 Tui.⁴ A company, as of soldiers.
伍 Wu.³ Rank of five, military.
隊伍 Tui-wu. Soldiers, military.

24. B. Hsien-shêng t'ing ti
shên - mo hsiao
hsi (hsin wên).

24. What news have you
heard?

25. A. Mei yu shih mo k'o
k'ao ti hsiao hsi,
pu kuo yao yen,
tao pu shao.

25. I have no reliable news,
but the air is full of
rumours.

26. B. P'an wang tsai pu
yao ta chan; lao
pai hsing shih k'u
chi la.

26. I hope there is not
going to be fighting
again; the country
folk are in bitter
straits.

27. A. Chün fa , pu kuan
na hsieh, chih ta
suan k'uo ch'ung
tzu chi ti ti p'an.

27. The militarists pay no
regard to that, they
are solely concerned
with the enlarging
of their spheres of
influence.

24. 消 Hsiao.¹ To disperse, used with the next for news.
 息 Hsi.² Breathe, interest, news.
 消息 Hsiao-hsi. News, information.
 新聞 Hsin-wen. News (lit. new hearing).
25. 靠 K'ao.⁴ Rely, reliable, dependable, trust.
 可靠 K'o-k'ao. Dependable, trustworthy.
 謠 Yao.³ Lies, false.
 謠言 Yao-yen. Lies, rumours.
26. 盼 P'an.⁴ Look for, hope.
 望 Wang.⁴ Expect, look for, look at someone.
 盼望 P'an-wang. Hope, expect.
 戰 Chan.⁴ Fight, war, alarmed.
 打戰 Ta-chan. To wage war.
 老百姓 Lao-pai-hsing. The common people (hundred surnames).
 極 Chi.² The extreme limit, sign of superlative.
 苦極了 K'u-chi-la. Severe suffering, in terrible plight.
27. 軍 Chün.¹ Army, military, forces.
 閥 Fa.² Rank, class.
 軍閥 Chün-fa. The militarists, military party.
 管 Kuan.³ Control, concern, heed.
 不管 Pu-kuan. To be unconcerned, pay no heed.
 只 Chih.³ Only, solely.
 擴 K'uo.⁴ Expand, extend.
 充 Ch'ung.¹ To fill.
 擴充 K'uo-ch'ung. To expand and fill, aggrandisement.
 地盤 Ti-p'an. Sphere of influence, territory (lit. earth-plate).

28. B. Ai ya, ts'ai kuo ti shih T'ung Hsien, hai yu liang ko ch'ê chan, chiu tao la Peiching. 28. I say, the station we have just passed is T'ung Hsien, there are only two more stations before we arrive at Peking.

'Liang chan' is another way of expressing this.

29. A. Kên hsien-shêng t'an hua, shih chien pu chüeh tê kuo ti na mo k'uai. 29. The time has passed quickly. I have not noticed (the time) as we talked together.
30. B. Ling kuo chiao pu shao. 30. I have learned a lot from you.
31. A. Na êrh ti hua ni. 31. Nonsense.

28. 縣 Hsien.⁴ District of administration, county town.
站 Chan.⁴ Station, post.
車站 Ch'ê-chan. Railway station.

29. 談 T'an.² To talk, gossip.

DIALOGUE No. 27

Travelling by Steamer and Train

Between two friends, A and B

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. A. Chi tien chung k'ai ch'uan. | 1. At what hour does the steamer start? |
| 2. B. T'ing shuo liu tien chung k'ai ch'uan. | 2. I hear (lit. have heard said) that it leaves at six o'clock. |
| 3. A. Hsien tsai chi tien chung. | 3. What time is it now? |
| 4. B. San tien pan chung. | 4. Half past three. |
| 5. A. Na mo, shih hou hai tsao. | 5. Then it is still early. |
| " Shih-hou hai tsao ", lit. the time is still early. | |
| 6. B. Pu ts'o, tan shih k'ai ch'uan i ch'ien, wo yu hsieh shih ch'ing kan. | 6. Correct, but before the steamer sails I have a few things to do. |

Note the position of " i ch'ien ", before. Like " i hou ", after, it always follows the phrase which it qualifies.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 7. A. Ni ta la ch'uan p'iao mei yu. | 7. Have you booked your ticket for the boat? |
| 8. B. Ta la p'iao, pu kuo hsing li hai mei yu shou shih hao la. | 8. I have bought my ticket, but my baggage is not yet ready. |

Note " hao " in the sense of ready: " fan hao la mei yu "—is the food ready?

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 27

1. 船 Ch'uan.² Boat, ship.
開船 K'ai-ch'uan. The starting of a steamer,
depart.

9. A. Na mo yang, ni hsin
li tzu jan yu i
tie'rh chao chi.
9. In that case you are
naturally a bit anx-
ious.

You could say "ni chao chi", but "hsin li", in your heart, is more figurative.

10. B. Shih tê. Hsing
k'uei yu chi ko
p'êng yu pang
mang
10. Just so, but fortunately
I have a few friends
to help.
11. A. Hao. Hsien shêng
kan k'uai ch'ü
pan pa. Wo pu
tsai tan wu ni ti
kung fu.
11. Good. Hurry up and
get the job done. I
will not hinder you
any longer.

"Tan wu kung fu", lit. obstruct or prevent work, so hinder or delay anyone.

12. B. Tsa mên ch'uan
shang tsai chien.
12. Then we'll meet again
on the boat.
13. A. Tsai chien.
13. Till then, good-bye.
14. B. Hsien shêng yün
ch'uan pu yün
ch'uan.
14. Do you suffer from sea-
sickness?
15. A. T'ou chi t'ien, wo
chüeh tê pu hên
shu fu, tan shih
ch'uan shang
kuan la, chiu pu
chüeh tê tsên
yang.
15. During the first few
days I feel a little
bit uncomfortable,
but after one has got
accustomed to the
boat, I don't feel it
very much.

'Kuan la'—to be accustomed to, get used to, a very useful phrase.

16. B. Hsien shêng tao kuo
wai kuo mo yu.
16. Have you travelled
abroad?
17. A. Ying Kuo, Fa Kuo,
Mei Kuo, wo tou
tao kuo.
17. I have been in England,
France and America.

9. 急
 着
 着急 Chi.² Haste, urgent.
 Cho. Chao.² Attain to.
 Cho-chi. To be bothered, in haste.
10. 幸 Hsing.⁴ Felicitous, fortunate.
 虧 K'uei.¹ Lucky, luckily.
 幸虧 Hsing-k'uei. Fortunately.
11. 趕快 Kan-k'uai. Quickly, speedily.
14. 暈 Yün.⁴ Dizzy.
 暈船 Yün-ch'uan. To be seasick, mal-de-mer.
15. 慣 Kuan.⁴ To be accustomed to.
17. 法國 Fa-kuo. France.
 美 Mei.³ Beautiful, admirable.
 美國 Mei-kuo. U.S.A., America.

18. B. Hsien shêng hui shuo Fa Kuo hua ma.

18. Can you speak French?

19. A. Hui shuo chi chü t'ung ch'ang ti hua.

19. I can speak just a few sentences on everyday affairs.

20. B. Fu na pie'rh ti shui t'u pu fu.

20. Did the climate over there suit you?

"Fu . . . shui t'u pu fu", lit. agree . . . water earth not agree. Does the climate agree with you?

21. A. Chiang chiu pa.

21. Just so-so.

22. B. Na pie'rh ti t'ien ch'i, tsê mo yang.

22. What is the weather like over there?

23. A. Hsia t'ien pu hsiang Chung Kuo jê, tung t'ien pu hsiang Chung Kuo lêng.

23. It is not so hot as in China during the Summer, and not quite so cold in the Winter.

"Pu hsiang"—not like, not as.

24. B. Hsien shêng yeh ch'ih tê kuan Fa Kuo fan ma.

24. And did you get used to French food?

25. A. Fa Kuo fan mei yu Chung Kuo fan ti tzu wei; pu kuo ch'ih shang chi t'ien, yeh chiu tui fu.

25. French food is not so tasty as Chinese, but after trying it for a few days, it is not too bad.

Note this way of expressing comparison: "mei yu . . . (ti) tzu wei", lit. has not Chinese food's flavour.

"Tui fu", without any other qualifying word, means "just satisfactory", nothing to enthuse about.

26. B. Ai ya, chin t'ien kua ta fêng, ch'uan shang pu ta wên tang.

26. My! what a wind is blowing to-day. It is not very steady aboard.

20. 服水土 Fu-shui-t'u. To find the climate agreeable
(lit. agree-water-earth).

21. 將就 Chiang-chiu. Can put up with it. (See
Note after sentence 15, Dialogue 23.)

23. 夏 Hsia.⁴ Summer (usually followed by
"t'ien").

冬 Tung.¹ Winter (usually followed by
"t'ien").

25. 滋 Tzu.² Rich, in sense of flavour.
味 Wei.⁴ Taste, flavour.
滋味 Tzu-wei. Flavour, taste.

26. 穩 Wên.³ Steady, firm, secure, stable.
穩當 Wên-tang. Steady, firm.

27. A. Nik'an, po lang tsên 27. Look at those waves,
 yang ti fan t'èng what a height they
 ch'i lai, ch'uan are! the boat is very
 yao pai tê li hai. unsteady.

28. B. Pieh p'a. Chih 28. Don't be afraid. Only
 shêng hsia san three more days of
 t'ien ti hai lu, the sea, and the boat
 ch'uan chiu tao will put in at the
 la ma t'ou. port.

"Pieh" is short for "pu yao"—do not!

29. A. P'an wang. Yüeh 29. Let's hope so. The
 tsao yüeh hao. earlier the better.
30. B. Fang hsin pa. 30. Don't worry!

"Fang hsin", lit. let go your heart, heart's ease.

27. 海 Hai.³ Sea.
 波 Po.¹ Waves of the sea.
 浪 Lang.⁴ Waves of the sea.
 翻 Fan.¹ To turn over.
 騰 T'êng.² To rise up, mount.
 翻騰 Fan-t'êng. To mount, as waves.
 搖 Yao.² To roll, as a ship, shake.
 擺 Pai.³ To swing, as a ship, shake.
 搖擺 Yao-pai. The rock and swing of a boat.
 28. 碼 Ma.³ Docks, jetty.
 碼頭 Ma-t'ou. The docks, harbour.

DIALOGUE No. 28

Some Common Idioms

This lesson is an exercise in the use of the compound verb with "pu" in between to represent "inability" to carry out the action or function of the principal verb.

The "possibility" of doing so is represented in one of two ways, viz.:—

Sentence 1. Kan shang la. I can catch up. . . .

Kan tê shang. do. do.

So with all the rest.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. T'a p'ao ti t'ai k'uai,
wo kan pu shang.</p> | <p>1. He runs too quickly, I
can't catch up with
him (kan pu shang
is also used of one's
inability to compete
with anybody in any
sphere).</p> |
| <p>2. Chê ko chuan ch'iang
mei yu fêng 'erh, lo
ssu, chuan tsuan pu
chin ch'ü.</p> | <p>2. This brick wall has no
cracks, I can't get a
screw in.</p> |
| <p>3. Chê ko shui hu i ching
ch'êng man, tsai yeh
chuang pu chin la.</p> | <p>3. This water jug is al-
ready full of water,
I can't pour any
more in.</p> |
| <p>4. Wo ti shih ch'ing t'ai
to, pan pu tao la
(mang pu kuo lai).</p> | <p>4. I have too many things
to do, I can't manage
them.</p> |
| <p>5. Ni yao chi tê su yü
shuo ti hao, mang</p> | <p>5. You should remember
the proverb which</p> |

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 28

2. 墻 Ch'iang.² Wall.
 磚 Chuan.¹ Brick.
 縫 Fêng.² A crack, split.
 螺 Le, lo.² A screw.
 螺絲釘 Lo-ssu-ting. A screw.
 轉 Chuan.² Revolve, to turn.
 鑽 Tsuan.¹ To bore, awl, gimlet.
 3. 壺 Hu.² Pot, kettle.
 盛 Ch'êng.² To contain. Used with "man",
 full, to fill.
5. 俗 Su.² Common, vulgar.
 俗語 Su-yü. Proverb, common saying.

chê pu hui, hui chô
pu mang.

well says, "The busy man is unable, the able man is never busy."

- | | |
|--|--|
| 6. Chê ko t'ung tzu chuang
ti t'ai chin, wo na pu
ch'u lai. | 6. This bucket is too
tightly packed, I
can't pull anything
out. |
| 7. Chin t'ien wo tai ti
tung-hsi t'ai to, mai
pu ch'u ch'ü. | 7. I have brought too
many things to-day,
I can't sell them all. |
| 8. Chê i k'uai mu t'ou t'ai
ying, ting tzu yeh ta
pu chin ch'ü. | 8. This piece of wood is
too hard, I can't
knock a nail in. |
| 9. Hsin li mien ti i ssu
to, k'o shih shuo pu
ch'u lai. | 9. I have many ideas
tucked away in my
mind (lit. heart), but
I can't express them. |
| 10. Chung-kuo jên yu chü
su hua shuo, Ch'a hu
chu chi tan tao pu
ch'u lai, chiu shih
chê ko i ssu. | 10. The Chinese have a
common saying, "If
you boil an egg in
a teapot, you can't
pour it out", which
expresses this idea. |

PROVERBS.

Here, in sentence 10, we have an instance of the use of the proverb. Others are scattered through the dialogues, and a number of them have been collated in Dialogue 38. The Chinese love to use proverbs; their everyday speech is full of them. Proverbs represent the concentrated wisdom of the ages, and form a most fascinating and fruitful study of Chinese philosophy.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 11. Wo ti êrh to lung la,
t'a shuo hua, wo
t'ing pu ch'u lai. | 11. I am a little deaf, I
can't hear what he
says. |
|---|--|

8. 硬 Ying.⁴ Hard.

10. 倒 Tao.⁴ Pour, pour out.

11. 耳 Erh.³ Ear.
 朵 To.³ Ear, pendant, classifier of pendent
 things.
 耳朵 Erh-to. Ear.
 聾 Lung.² Deaf, to be deaf.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 12. T'a ti yen ching hsiao, t'a shên-mo yeh k'an pu chien. | 12. He is blind, he cannot see anything. |
| 13. T'a shih chin shih yen, k'an pu ta ch'ing ch'u. | 13. He is short-sighted, he cannot see clearly. |
| 14. T'a shih ko ya pa, hua yeh pu hui shuo, jên chia shuo hua, t'a yeh t'ing pu chien. | 14. He is a deaf mute, he cannot speak himself, and when others speak he cannot hear them. |
| 15. Yao shih hsiao liao yen, shên-mo yeh k'an pu chien. | 15. If a man is blind he cannot see anything at all. |
| 16. T'a ti ko pei fa ma, ni mo t'a, t'a yeh pu chüeh tê. | 16. His arm is benumbed, if you touch him he can't feel it. |
| 17. T'a shih la chih chüeh. | 17. He lost consciousness. |
| 18. Chê i chien i shang t'ai tsang, wo hsi pu kan ching. | 18. This garment is too filthy, I can't wash it clean. |
| 19. 'I'o shih i tzu, ta ta ti shih chin, chiu k'o i hsi kan ching la. | 19. Use more soap, and exert more strength, then it can be washed clean. |

12. 眼 Yen.³ Eye.
 睛 Ching.¹ Eye, iris, pupil.
 瞎 Hsia.¹ Blind.
14. 啞 Ya.³ Dumb.
 吧 Pa.¹ Dumb.
 啞吧 Ya-pa. Deaf mute.
16. 摩 Mo.² To feel.
 胳 Ko.¹ Arm.
 臂 Pei.⁴ Arm.
 麻 Ma.² Numb.
17. 失 Shih.¹ To lose.
 失覺 Shih-chüeh. To become unconscious.
18. 裳 Shang.² Clothes.
19. 胰 I.² Soap.
 勁 Chin, ching.⁴ Strength.

DIALOGUE No. 29

Clothing and Personal Matters

Between two students, A and B

1. A. T'ien lêng, wo-mên ch'uan mien p'ao huò wai t'ao. 1. In the cold weather, we wear our cotton wool gown or an overcoat.

2. B. Ní mên pu ch'uan p'i ngao ma. 2. Don't you wear your fur gown?

3. A. P'i ngao tao ch'uan pu ch'i. 3. We can't afford to wear furs.

"Ch'uan pu ch'i"—cannot afford to wear, lit. wear not rise (to).

4. B. Nien ch'ing ti jên, hsi huan yang chuàng. 4. The younger generation prefer foreign style.

"Nien ch'ing ti jên" or "Ch'ing nien jên".

5. A. Na shih tzu jan ti. 5. That is natural.

6. B. Hsia t'ien to ch'uan sha pu, ch'ou tzu. 6. In the summer most people wear gauze or single silk gowns.

7. A. Tung t'ien ch'uan p'i hsieh, hsia t'ien ch'uan pu hsieh. 7. In the winter we wear leather shoes, in the summer cloth shoes.

8. B. Tai ti shih ts'ao mao, huò ché yang mao. 8. We wear straw hats or a sun helmet.

"Tai", to wear, is used for anything worn on the head.

9. A. Nü jên ti i shang mò têng i tie'rh ts'ai hao. 9. The womenfolk like modern clothes.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 29

1. 棉 Mien.² Cotton, cotton wool.
袍 P'ao.² Long gown.
套 T'ao.⁴ Cover, overcoat, wrapper.
外套 Wai-t'ao. Overcoat.
2. 襖 Ao. Ngao.³ Outer gown, lined coat.
皮襖 P'i-ao. Leather or fur coat.
4. 年輕 Nien-ch'ing. Young, youthful.
裝 Chuang.¹ Style, appearance, feign, attire.
8. 戴 Tai.⁴ To wear or carry on the head.
遮 Chê.¹ To cover, screen.
遮陽帽 Chê-yang-mao. Sun helmet.
9. 摩登 Mo-têng. Modern (transliteration).

10. B. Hsiu tzu, kua tzu, tu shih tuan ti. 10. Sleeves and gown are both short.
11. A. Wa tzu, hsien tsai shih hên ch'ang. 11. Stockings are very long now.
12. B. Hsüeh shêng yu ch'uan hsi chuang ti shih hao. 12. Students have a personal liking for western garb.
13. A. Li fa, yeh shih yang chuang ti to. 13. Haircutting is also foreign style for the most part.
14. B. Pien tzu shih lao pu chien liao. 14. The queue is scarcely ever seen.
 "Lao pu chien"—seldom or rarely seen. "Ch'ing i pu chien" is also used.
15. A. Shu i shu t'ou fa. 15. Comb your hair.
16. B. Shua i shua t'ou fa ho ya ch'ih. 16. Brush your hair and teeth.
17. A. I fu yao ch'i chêng, kua tzu yao k'ou hao. 17. Keep your clothing tidy, and your coat buttoned.
18. B. Chih chia yao hsiu chêng; shou, lien, yao pao ch'ih kan ching. 18. Your finger nails must be kept in good order, and one's hands and face should be kept clean.
19. B. Ch'u mên, yao tai hsi lien p'ên, ts'a lien pu, ho shou chüan, yeh pu yao wang la tai ya shua. 19. When you travel you should take with you a washing basin, a face cloth and towel, and don't forget your toothbrush.

11. 襪 Wa⁴ (tzu). Stockings, socks.

12. 嗜 Shih.⁴ Fond of, addicted to.
 好 Hao.⁴ Like, fond of.
 嗜好 Shih-hao. A liking for, addicted to
13. 理 Li.³ To arrange, dress.
 髮 Fa.³ The hair of the head.
 理髮 Li-fa. Haircut.
14. 辮 Pien⁴ (tzu). The queue, plait.
 老不見 Lao-pu-chien. Rare, scarcely seen (lit. long time not see).

15. 梳 Shu. Su¹ (tzu). Comb, to comb
 頭髮 T'ou-fa. Hair of the head.
16. 刷 Shua¹ (tzu). To brush, a brush.
 牙 Ya.² Teeth.
 齒 Ch'ih.³ Teeth.
17. 扣 K'ou⁴ (tzu). To button, button.

18. 指 Chih.³ The fingers, toes, to point.
 甲 Chia.³ Nails of fingers or toes, sheath.
 指甲 Chih-chia. Finger or toe nails.
 保 Pao.³ To guard, protect, preserve.
 持 Ch'ih.³ To preserve, hold, grasp.
 保持 Pao-ch'ih. Keep, preserve.
19. 出門 Ch'u-mên. To travel (lit. go out of the door).
 盆 P'ên.² A basin, bowl, bath.
 洗臉盆 Hsi-lien-p'ên. A washhand basin.
 絹 Chüan.⁴ Napkin, handkerchief, towel.

20. A. Tsao ch'i, tsao shui, mei t'ien yün tung, shih pao ch'ih k'ang chien ti hao fang fa. 20. Early to rise and early to bed, with exercise every day, is an excellent rule of health.

21. B. Pa tzu chi so hsüeh ti chiao kei pieh jên, yeh shih chang chih shih ti fa tzu. 21. Teach others what you yourself learn, is also a method of extending one's knowledge.

"So hsüeh ti", an illustration of "so" as a relative pronoun; that which one has learned.

"Pieh jên"—others. You will also hear "t'a (often read t'o) jên" for this.

22. A. Ni p'êng chien ch'iong k'u jên yao t'i hsü t'a mên. 22. When you meet with the poor you should sympathise with them.

23. B. Jên mei yu fan ch'ih kai chou chi t'a mên. 23. When they have no food, then relieve them.

24. A. Yao fan ti wei pi jan shih ch'iong. 24. Beggars are not of necessity poor.

"Wei pi jan"—not necessarily, a little bookish, but often used. The common colloquial form is "pu pi".

25. B. Hai tzu mên yao chiao hsün t'a-mên shou kuei chü. 25. Teach children to be polite.

"Shou kuei chü", lit. observe the rules (of conduct). "Kuei" is a pair of compasses, and "chü" the carpenter's square, and so you get the idea of things that are clearly defined, such as rules, regulations, etc.

20. 運動 Yün-tung. Exercise, of physical character,
movement, a movement.
康 K'ang.¹ Well, hale, hearty, peace.
健 Chien.⁴ Sturdy, strong.
康健 K'ang-chien. Healthy, strong, well.
方法 Fang-fa. Method, way of doing things.
21. 知識 Chih-shih. Knowledge.
22. 窮 Ch'iung.² Poor, poverty-stricken.
窮苦 Ch'iung-k'u. Very poor, pitiable.
體 T'i.³ Sympathise, respect, limbs, body.
恤 Hsü.^{4, 5} Pity, sympathise.
23. 賙 Chou.¹ To be charitable, help, assist.
濟 Chi.⁴ To save, help, deliver.
24. 未 Wei.⁴ Not yet.
未必然 Wei-pi-jan. Not necessarily (lit. not-yet-must-be).
25. 訓 Hsün.⁴ To teach, instruct.
教訓 Chiao-hsün. Instruction, to teach.
守 Shou.³ To keep, observe.
規 Kuei.¹ Rule, custom, manners.
矩 Chü.³ Rule, used with preceding for customs, manners, etc.

DIALOGUE No. 30

Learning Chinese: the Tones, Dialects, Writing, etc.

THE TONES.

Tones refer to the pitch or inflection of the voice when speaking in Chinese. The number of tones in Chinese varies from four in the Pekinese dialect to as many as twelve in some of the Cantonese dialects. The student is referred to the chapter on Tones for the main points arising out of a discussion on this subject.

Foreigner, *F.* Chinese, *C.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>F.</i> Chung Kuo hua nan
hsüeh pu nan
hsüeh ni. | 1. Is Chinese difficult to
learn? |
| 2. <i>C.</i> Hsieh tzu pu nan,
shuo hua pu
yung i. | 2. The writing is not diffi-
cult, but spoken
language is not easy. |
| 3. <i>F.</i> Shuo hua tsên yang
pu yung i, nan
ch'ü tsai na'rh
ni. | 3. Why is it not easy to
speak, just where
does the difficulty
lie? |
| 4. <i>C.</i> Wai kuo jên shuo
Chung Kuo hua,
nan ch'ü tsai ssu
shêng ti to. | 4. For the most part
foreigners speaking
Chinese experience
difficulty in regard
to the four tones. |
| 5. <i>F.</i> Chê ssu shêng shih
shih mo. <i>or</i>
Shih mo chiao tse
ssu shêng. | 5. What are the four
tones? |
| 6. <i>C.</i> Ti i chiao shang
p'ing, huo yin
p'ing; ti êrh chiao
hsia p'ing, huo | 6. The first is called the
"upper-even" tone;
the second the
"lower-even" tone, |

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 30

4. 聲 Shêng.¹ Tone, voice, repute.
6. 賞 Shang.³ Name of second tone, reward,
bestow.

yang p'ing; ti
san chiao shang
shêng; ti ssu
chiao ch'ü shêng.

the third the "rising" tone; and the fourth the "receding" tone.

7. *F.* Wo t'ing shuo, shuo
Chung Kuo hua
yu wu shêng, tui
pu tui.

7. I have heard that there are five tones in Chinese, is that correct?

8. *C.* Yeh pu nêng shuo
pu tui, yin wei
yu ti ti fang, t'a
mên chia shang i
ko ju shêng.

8. I can't say that that is wrong, for in some places they add an "entering" tone.

"Yu ti ti fang"—some places. "Yu ti"—there are some. (See 12 below.)

9. *F.* Hsüeh Chung Kuo
hua, yung shih
mo fa tzu hao ni.

9. What method of learning Chinese can you recommend? (lit. "use what method is a good one?")

10. *C.* Ch'ing i wei Chung
Kuo jên tang
hsien shêng, ni i
chü i chü ti kên
cho t'a nien.

10. Invite a Chinese to act as your teacher, and read after him sentence by sentence.

Note "tang"—to act as, to be.

"I chü i chü ti"—sentence by sentence, a very common idiom.

11. *F.* Wo kên cho t'a nien
ti shih hou, chin
hsin ti hsiao fa
t'a ti k'ou yin,
tui pu tui.

11. And I suppose you would recommend me to do my utmost to copy his pronunciation as I follow him in the reading?

8. 入 Ju.⁴ Name of entering tone, to enter.
10. 當 Tang.¹ To represent, act as, be, regard as.
11. 效 Hsiao.⁴ To imitate, copy.
效法 Hsiao-fa. To imitate.
口音 K'ou-yin. Pronunciation (lit. mouth-sound).

12. C. Tui la. Pu kuo shih
 yu ti jên shuo
 kuo yŭ, yeh yu
 nu shao ti jên
 shuo t'u hua.

12. Yes that is right. But
 some speak the
 National language,
 while there are a
 good many others
 who speak local dia-
 lects.

"Kuo yŭ", the National language, used on the radio, and now rapidly becoming current throughout China, and destined gradually to eliminate the confusion of dialects, which are numerous.

"T'u hua", the patois, or local dialect of the common people.

13. F. Wai kuo jên hai
 shih hsŭeh kuo
 yŭ hao, shih pu
 shih.

13. I suppose it is better for
 foreigners to learn
 the National lang-
 uage, isn't it?

14. C. Pu ts'o. Hsien tsai
 ko ch'u tou t'ung
 hsing kuo yŭ.

14. Yes, the National lang-
 uage is now current
 everywhere.

"Ko ch'u t'ung hsing"—current everywhere, lit. every place through goes.

15. F. Ling chiao hsien
 shêng, hsieh
 Chung Kuo tzu,
 shih yung na
 yang ti pi hao.

15. May I ask what is
 the best kind of pen
 to use for writing
 Chinese characters?

16. C. Hsieh Chung Kuo
 tzu, hai shih yung
 mao pi ti hao.

16. It is best to use the hair
 brush for writing
 Chinese.

17. F. Yung kang pi hsing
 pu hsing.

17. Will a steel pen do?

18. C. Hsing shih hsing,
 pu kuo mei yu
 mao pi hao.

18. Yes, but it is not so
 good as a hair brush.

"Hsing shih hsing", another instance of "qualifying" influence on the verb by duplication of it, lit. doing will do, but.

12. 語 Yü.³ Words.
國語 Kuo-yü. The Chinese national language.
土話 T'u-hua. Dialects (lit. earth-words).

14. 各處通行 Ko-ch'u-t'ung-hsing. Everywhere current,
universal.

19. *F.* Wo k'an chien kuo 19. I have seen some people
yu jên yung ch'ien using pencils (for
pi. this purpose).

"Yu jên"—some, short for "yu ti jên". (See 8 and 12 above.)

20. *C.* Yu ti shih, pu 20. That is possible. But
kuo wo hai shih I must still exhort
ch'üan ni, ts'ung you to use the brush
ch'i t'ou yao from the start.
yung mao pi.

"Yu ti shih", yet another illustration of "yu ti", meaning some, lit. there are some (instances of this) affair, sort of thing.

21. *F.* Ling chiao, ling 21. Thanks for your ad-
chiao. vice.

"Ling chiao", another way of expressing thanks, lit. I have received instruction (from you).

20. 勸 Ch'üan.⁴ Exhort, encourage.
起頭 Ch'i-t'ou. The beginning, start.

DIALOGUE No. 31

Asking a Favour. Time Idioms

Two friends, A and B

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. A. Wo ch'ing hsien
shêng fei hsin,
t'i wo tso i chien
shih. | 1. I shall be very grateful
if you will do some-
thing for me. |
| 2. B. Puk'o ch'i. Ni yao
wo t'i ni tso shih
mo. | 2. Don't stand on cere-
mony. What do you
want me to do for
you? |
| 3. A. Wo hsiang lai, mei
yu hsiang hsien
shêng ch'iu kuo
shih mo. | 3. Hitherto I have not
asked you for any
favours. |
| <p>"Hsiang . . . ch'iu"—ask of . . . lit. appeal towards . . .
 "Hsiang" has the meaning of "towards".</p> | |
| 4. B. Hsien tsai, ni chiu
ching yao shih
mo. | 4. What really do you
want me to do now? |
| 5. A. P'an wang Chiang
lai hsien shêng t'i
pa wo ti êrh tzu. | 5. I hope that you will
take a personal in-
terest in my son's
future. |
| 6. B. T'a hsien tsai tso
shih mo shih. | 6. What does he do now? |
| 7. A. Ts'ung ch'ien t'a
tsai pan kung
shih, tang shu
chi. | 7. He was a clerk in the
office formerly. |

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 31

3. 向來 Hsiang-lai. Hitherto, up to now.
求 Ch'iu.² To implore.
4. 究 Chiu.⁴ Finally, after all, but, etc.
竟 Ching.⁴ Really, finally.
究竟 Chiu-ching. Really, at bottom.
5. 將來 Chiang-lai. In the future.
提 T'i.² Mention, raise a matter.
拔 Pa.² Raise, help up.
提拔 T'i-pa. Help along, promote, raise.
兒子 Erh-tzu. Son.
7. 從前 Ts'ung-ch'ien. Formerly.
室 Shih.⁴ Room, house, office, bureau.
辦公室 Pan-kung-shih. Office, bureau (lit. transact
public (affairs) room).
書記 Shu-chi. Secretarial assistant, clerk.

8. B. Wei shih mo t'a yao ling wai chao kung tso. 8. Why is he wanting to find another job?
9. A. Ch'i ch'u ti shih hou, t'a men tui t'a hên hao, i hou chiu chien chien ti lêng tan ch'i lai la. 9. They treated him very well at first, but gradually cooled off (in their attitude towards him).
10. B. T'a môn tui tai t'a ti t'ai tu, kai pien, pi ting yu i ko yüan ku. 10. But there must be some reason for their change of attitude towards him.
11. A. T'a môn i ch'ien tai t'a hou, i hou tai t'a po, mei yu shih mo tao li. 11. (Yet) there is no sense in their treating him so well before and so meanly afterwards.
12. B. Yeh hsü t'a môn ching chi shang, yu k'un nan pa. 12. Perhaps they are in financial difficulties.
- "Ching chi shang"—in the matter of economics. In Chinese the tendency is to use "shang", which literally means "on", in expressions of this kind. We should say "in".
13. A. Hsien shêng shuo ti tui. So i t'a môn chien shao la t'a ti hsin shui. 13. That is just it (lit. what you say is correct). And so they have reduced his salary.
- "Hsin-shui"—salary, lit. firewood and water, the "fee" formerly paid by pupils to their Chinese teacher, an honorarium.
14. B. T'a môn hai mei yu ta fa t'a tsou pa. 14. I suppose they haven't dismissed him yet?

8. 工作 Kung-tso. Work, task, labour.

9. 對 Tui.⁴ Treat, behave towards.
 漸 Chien.⁴ Gradually.
 漸漸的 Chien-chien-ti. Gradually.
 冷淡 Lêng-tan. Coolly, uninterested (cold-weak).

10. 待 Tai.⁴ To treat; to behave.
 態 T'ai.⁴ Behaviour, bearing, attitude.
 態度 T'ai-tu. Attitude.
 改變 Kai-pien. To change, alter.
 必定 Pi-ting. Must, of necessity.
 緣 Yüan.² Cause, reason.
 故 Ku.⁴ Cause, reason.

11. 厚 Hou.⁴ Generous, thick.
 薄 Po. Pao.² Mean, stingy, thin.

12. 經濟 Ching-chi. Economics, financial circumstances.
 困 K'un.⁴ Straitened, distressed.
 困難 K'un-nan. Special difficulties, straits.

13. 減 Chien.³ To reduce, diminish.
 薪 Hsin.¹ Fuel, firewood, used with the next.
 薪水 Hsin-shui. Salary. See note.

15. A. Tao hsien tsai hai mei yu. K'ung p'a pu chiu, t'a mên chiu i ting pu yao t'a liao. 15. Not up to the present. But my fear is that before long they will certainly dispense with his services.

"Tao hsien tsai"—up to now, lit. arrive present. "Hsien tsai" is present, of time.

16. B. Chi jan ju tz'u, wo yeh pu nêng pu pang mang. 16. In these circumstances I cannot do other than offer to help.

"Ju tz'u"—like this.

"Pu nêng pu . . .", an illustration of the common use of the double negative to impart strong positive emphasis.

17. A. Ch'ien wan, ch'ing hsien shêng fei hsin. 17. I entreat you by all means to exert yourself (on our behalf).

"Ch'ien wan"—see Vocabulary.

18. B. Mei yu shih mo. Chê shih li so tang jan ti. 18. It is nothing. Quite a natural obligation.

"Li so tang jan ti", an ornate way of saying "li tang"—what one ought to do.

19. A. T'a yao shih Chiang lai, chao tao i ko hao shih ch'ing, chên shih t'o hsien shêng ti fu. 19. If he (the son) gets a good post later on, we shall be truly obliged to you.

"T'o . . . fu", a polite and circumlocutory phrase for thanks, lit. I am indebted to your favour for . . .

20. B. Na'rh ti hua. Man man tsou. 20. No no, not at all. Take care (lit. go slowly).

15. 不久 Pu-chiu. Before long, soon (not-long-time).
 不要 Pu-yao. Dismiss (not-want).

16. 既 Chi⁴ (jan). Since, seeing that.

17. 千萬 Ch'ien-wan. By all means (lit. thousand-
 ten-thousand).

DIALOGUE No. 32

Between Chinese Official (O) and an English visitor (E) on local education, crops, public health, etc.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. E. Hsien shêng hui
shuo Ying kuo
hua ma. | 1. Can you speak English? |
| 2. O. Hui i liang chû, t'ai
pu kou yung.
Hsien shêng hui
chiang Chung kuo
hua ma. | 2. Just a few words, totally inadequate. Can you speak (intelligibly) in Chinese? |

"I liang chû"—a few words, lit. one or two sentences. "I pan chû", a sentence and a half, is also used.

"Ta pu kou yung", or "t'ai pu kou yung", a good instance of what is called "grammar by position". The "ta" or "t'ai", being where it is in the sentence, has the meaning of "extremely". If the sentence were "pu ta kou yung", the "ta" would not have such emphatic significance. The latter sentence means "not quite enough for use", which is very different from "entirely inadequate".

- | | |
|---|---|
| 3. E. Wo chêng tsai hsüeh
ni, hai pu ta hui. | 3. I am just learning, and can speak little as yet. |
|---|---|

"Chêng tsai hsüeh ni"—I am studying it, with the sense of not having got very far, only just beginning, etc. The "ni" is practically equivalent to a full stop.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. O. Hsien shêng hên
chih tao pi kuo ti
fêng su. | 4. You understand (are well acquainted with) our manners and customs. |
|---|---|

"Fêng su", or "fêng t'u jên ch'ing"—local ("t'u") manners and feelings ("jên ch'ing"). It is important to "make allowances" in China for circumstances. That is what "jên ch'ing" implies. The Chinese, according to their Confucian ethical philosophy, never administer justice nor pronounce judgment strictly according to written law. They always consider a man's circumstances.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 32

3 正在 Chêng-tsai. In process of doing something.

4. 風俗 Fêng-su. Customs of the people.

5. *E.* Chih tao ti yu hsien,
wo lai ling chiao,
ling chiao.
6. *O.* Hsien shêng t'ai
ch'ien hsü, t'ai
k'o ch'i.
7. *E.* Wo lai ta t'ing kuei
hsien jên min ti
ch'ing hsing.
"Ta t'ing"—to inquire.
8. *O.* Hên hao. Hsien
shêng hsiang chih
tao nai fang mien
ti shih ch'ing.
9. *E.* Hsien t'an chiao yü
i fang mien.
5. In a limited way. I
have come to learn
from you.
6. You are too humble-
minded, too court-
eous altogether.
7. I have come to inquire
about the people in
your district.
8. Very good. On what
particular aspect of
their life would you
like information?
9. Let us begin by dis-
cussing education.
10. *O.* Mei ko ts'un tzu yu
ch'ü têng hsiao
hsüeh, ta i tien ti
chên tzu yu kao
têng hsiao hsüeh.
Hsien li yu chung
hsüeh.
10. In each village there
is a lower primary
school, and in each
of the bigger mar-
ket towns there is
a higher primary.
In the county town
there is a middle
school.
- "Mei ko", or "mei i ko"—each.
11. *E.* Hsüeh hsiao li, yeh
shou nü shêng
ma.
11. Are girls received in the
schools?
12. *O.* Pu ts'o. Ko hsüeh
hsiao, tou shih
nan nü tsai i k'uai
êrh, shang hsüeh.
12. Yes, every school is
co-educational (lit.
male and female
students study to-
gether).
- "Ko hsüeh hsiao"—every school.

5. 限 Hsien.⁴ Limit, boundary, to fix.
6. 謙 Ch'ien.¹ Humble, modest.
 謙虛 Ch'ien-hsü. Modest, unassuming.
9. 育 Yü.⁴ Rear, nurture.
 教育 Chiao-yü. Education.
 方面 Fang-mien. Aspect of a subject, side,
 aspect.
10. 初 Ch'u.¹ The beginning, primary.
 初等 Ch'u-têng. Primary grade.
 鎮 Chên⁴ (tzu). Market town, mart, to guard,
 repress.
 高等 Kao-têng. Higher grade, higher primary.
 中學 Chung-hsüeh. Middle school.
 校 Hsiao.⁴ School.
11. 生 Shêng.¹ Raw, unfamiliar, used for students.

13. *E.* Lao pai hsing tou shih tzu ma. 13. What about the older folk, are they literate?
14. *O.* Shih tzu ti pu to. Chin nien yao t'i ch'ang i ko shih tzu yün tung. 14. Very few are literate. We are promoting a literacy campaign this year.
- "Yün tung"—a movement of any kind, campaign.
15. *E.* Chiao shih, shih tsai na'rh pi yeh ti. 15. And your teachers, where have they graduated?
16. *O.* Chiao shih, shih pên shêng shih fan hsüeh hsiao pi yeh ti to. 16. Most of the teachers are graduates of the provincial training college.
- Note the use of "pên" for "this", "our", "native", etc.
17. *E.* Yeh yu nü chiao shih ma. 17. And do you use women teachers?
18. *O.* Yu shih yu, pu kuo pu to. 18. Yes, but not many.
19. *E.* Chin nien chuang chia tsêm-mo yang. 19. How are the crops this year?
20. *O.* Chin nien nien t'ou hên fêng shêng, pai hsing tou hên p'ing ching. 20. The harvest is excellent this year, and the people generally are contented (lit. quiet, calm).
21. *E.* Chê pie'rh chung ti shih shih mo chuang chia to. 21. What kind of crops are grown here mostly.

13. 識字 Shih-tzu. Literate, literacy (know-characters).
14. 倡 Ch'ang.⁴ To lead.
提倡 T'i-ch'ang. To promote, lead, take the initiative.
15. 教師 Chiao-shih. Teacher.
畢 Pi.⁴ Finish, end.
業 Yeh.⁴ Course, occupation, profession.
畢業 Pi-yeh. Graduate from a course, school, college.
16. 範 Fan.⁴ Model, pattern.
師範學校 Shih - fan - hsüeh - hsiao. Normal training school.
省 Shêng.³ Province.
19. 莊 Chuang.¹ A farm, farmstead, the fields.
稼 Chia.⁴ Grain, crops, to sow.
莊稼 Chuang-chia. Crops, growing grain.
20. 年頭 Nien-t'ou. Harvest (year-head).
豐 Fêng.¹ Luxuriant, flourishing, abundant.
盛 Shêng.⁴ Abundant, flourishing.
靜 Ching.⁴ Placid, calm.
平靜 P'ing-ching. Quiet, undisturbed.

22. O. Mai tzu to. Pu kuo
yeh yu hsiao mi,
yumai, mien hua,
han yen.
22. Wheat in the main. But
millet, oats, cotton
and tobacco are also
found.

23. E. Na mo, pai hsing
na liang, pu fei
shih.
23. In that case you have
no difficulty in get-
ting the people to
pay their taxes?

"Pu fei shih"—not difficult, lit. not expend activity.

"Liang" originally means "grain", but as taxes were usually paid in grain the word came to have the meaning of taxes.

24. O. Yeh hên nan shuo,
pu kuo pi pieh ti
hsien fên ch'iang.
24. I can hardly say that.
But (in that respect)
we are better off
than other districts.
25. E. Kuei ch'u jên min,
yeh hên chiang
chiu wei shêng
ma.
25. And are the people of
your area interested
in public health?

"Chiang chiu" here means "to be particular about". (See Dial. 27, sen. 21.)

26. O. Pu ta chiang chiu,
ch'ang ch'ang fa
shêng shih chêng.
26. They are not very par-
ticular. We have
frequent outbreaks
of (infectious) dis-
eases.
27. E. Chê pie'rh yu t'u
fei mei yu.
27. Are there any bandits
about here?
28. O. Mei yu. Chê pie'rh
ti ching ch'a, ho
28. No. The police and
military officials loy-

22. 麥 Mai. Mo¹ (tzu). Wheat.
 油麥 Yu-mai. Oats.
 米 Mi.³ Millet, the grains in general.
 小米 Hsiao-mi. Millet.
 棉 Mien.¹ Cotton.
 花 Hua.¹ Flower.
 棉花 Mien-hua. Cotton, in growth, or raw.
 旱 Han.⁴ Dry, used with the next.
 旱烟 Han-yen. Tobacco.
 23. 納 Na.⁴ To pay, take, receive, used with the next.
 糧 Liang.² Taxes, rations, grains.
 納糧 Na-liang. To pay taxes.
24. 縣分 Hsien-fên. Administrative division, county.
26. 時 Shih.² Time.
 症 Chêng.⁴ Disease.
 時症 Shih Cheng. Epidemic.
27. 匪 Fei.³ Worthless, wrong, bandits, rebels.
 土匪 T'u-fei. Local banditti.
28. 警 Ching.¹ Alarm, startle, watch.
 察 Ch'a.² To examine, investigate.

chün kuan tou
chin chih.

ally discharge the
duties of their office
here.

29. E. Wo hsiang kwei
hsien pu k'uei
shih mu fan
hsien.

29. I consider you need
not be diffident to
regard your district
as a model.

30. O. Kuo chiang, kuo
chiang.

30. Flattery! flattery!

"Kuo chiang", lit. over-praise.

28. 警察
盡
職
盡職

Ching-ch'a. The police.

Chin.⁴ To fulfil, exhaust possibilities.

Chih.² Public office, appointment.

Chin-chih. To fulfil the duties of one's office.

29. 愧
模
模範

K'uei.⁴ Be diffident about.

Mu. Mo.² Model, pattern.

Mu-fan. Model, pattern.

DIALOGUE No. 33

Doctor and Patient

Doctor, *D.* Patient, *P.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1. <i>P.</i> Ni yao shih yüan i,
chiu k'o i i chih
wo ti ping.</p> <p>2. <i>D.</i> Sui jan wo yüan i,
hai shih pu nêng
chih ni ti ping.</p> | <p>1. If you were willing to
heal me, (I feel that)
you <i>could</i> do so.</p> <p>2. I cannot heal you, al-
though I am willing
to do so.</p> |
|--|--|

"Sui jan . . . hai". Note the construction, "sui jan", although, . . . "hai", yet.
Note the use of "jan" with "sui", although, and "chi", since, to complete the adverbial form.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>3. <i>P.</i> Ni chi shih pu nêng
chih wo ti ping,
ni kai chieh shao
wo kei pieh ti tai
fu.</p> <p>4. <i>D.</i> Wo yeh kei ni hsieh
chieh shao hsin,
yeh sung ni tao
tai fu na li ch'ü.</p> | <p>3. Since you cannot heal
me, you will surely
(ought to) introduce
me to some other
doctor.</p> <p>4. I will give you a letter
of introduction, and
also take you to the
doctor myself.</p> |
|---|---|

"Yeh . . . yeh"—both . . . and ". The alternative form, "ping ch'ieh", is fairly common amongst educated people.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>5. <i>P.</i> Chê yang tso, i ting
túi wo hên yu i,
k'o shih wo pu
hsiang ch'ü.</p> <p>6. <i>D.</i> Wei shih mo ni pu
hsiang ch'ü.</p> <p>7. <i>P.</i> Yin wei wo pu jên
shih t'a, ho t'a
pu shu hsi.</p> | <p>5. That would certainly be
of advantage to me,
but all the same I
am disinclined to go.</p> <p>6. And why are you dis-
inclined to go?</p> <p>7. Because I don't know
him, I am not well
acquainted with him.</p> |
|---|--|

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 33

1. 治 Chih.⁴ To cure, treat (medically, etc.).
病 Ping.⁴ Disease, illness, sick.

3. 該 Kai.¹ Ought, owe.
介 Chieh.⁴ Introduce, announce.
紹 Shao.⁴ Introduce, hand down.
介紹 Chieh-shao. Introduce, as one friend to
another.

5. 益 I.² Benefit, advantage.

6. 爲什麼 Wei-shih-mo. Why?

7. 習 Hsi.² Versed in, familiar, practised.
熟 Shu-hsi. Intimate, well acquainted.

8. *D.* Ni tsung jan ho t'a
 pu shu, ni yeh
 k'o i fang hsin,
 yin wei wo chih
 tao t'a shih i ko
 hao tai fu, tan
 pao t'a neng i
 chih ni.

8. Although you are not
 well acquainted with
 him, you need have
 no anxiety. For I
 know him to be a
 good doctor, and I
 am sure he can cure
 you.

"Tsung jan" is not as common as "sui jan" (see 2 above), but it permits of a slightly different emphasis from it. "Tsung jan" is used when you want to say "but supposing that be so", "allowing for that", etc.

9. *P.* Ni chi jan chē yang
 ti ch'üan wo, wo
 chiu tsun ming
 chiu shih la.

9. Since you urge me to
 this extent, I am
 ready to do as you
 say.

10. *D.* Ni chē yang ti t'ing
 wo ch'üan, wo
 yeh hên kao
 hsing.

10. I am delighted that
 you should take my
 advice so readily.

11. *P.* Wo pu tê pu chao
 cho ni so shuo ti
 ch'ü tso.

11. I cannot do other than
 act as you suggest.

12. *D.* Ni yao hsiao hsin,
 pu yao pa wo kei
 ni ti hsin tiu la.

12. Take care not to lose
 the letter I have
 given you.

"Wo kei ni ti hsin"—the letter which I gave you.
 The "so", relative pronoun, is understood.

13. *P.* Pu p'a, wo pu hui
 tiu tiao ti.

13. Have no fear, it is out
 of the question for
 me to lose that.

"Hui" means able to, so the sense is "I simply cannot lose it".

14. *D.* Yao shih ni tieh
 tao la, chiu pu
 kan tan pao tsên
 yang.

14. But in the event of your
 falling one could not
 be sure about that.

8. 縱心 放 因爲 擔
Tsung⁴ (jan). Although, lax.
Fang-hsin. Don't worry!
Yin-wei. Because, for, on account of.
Tan.¹ Undertake, carry, used with the
next.
擔保 Tan-pao. Guarantee, stand surety for.
9. 遵
Tsun.¹ To accord with, follow, obey.
10. 聽我勸 興 高興
T'ing-wo-ch'üan. Follow my advice.
Hsing.¹ Elated, rejoice.
Kao-hsing. Elated, highly pleased.
13. 掉 丟掉
Tiao.⁴ To let fall, fall.
Tiu-tiao. To let fall, lose.
14. 跌 跌倒
Tieh.¹ To stumble, fall.
Tieh-tao. To fall.

15. *P.* Hsin yao shih tiao
hsia lai la, wo
chiu kan k'uai pa
t'a, shih ch'i lai.
15. If the letter were to fall
I should pick it up
again straight away.
16. *P.* (*cont.*) Tai fu lai tao
chê li, huo cho
wo tao t'a na li
ch'ü, pu shih i
yang ti ma.
16. Isn't it all the same
whether the doctor
comes here, or
whether I go to him?
17. *D.* Pu i yang, yin wei
t'a na li yu yao
p'in ho yao pu.
17. Not at all, because he
has medicines and
dressings there.
18. *P.* K'o shih tai fu hai
mei yu kei wo
k'an mo, yeh mei
yu yung wên tu
piao, liang.
18. But, doctor, you have
not yet taken my
pulse, nor used the
thermometer to take
my temperature.
19. *D.* Ni yeh mei yu kao
su wo, ni shên
shang na'erh
t'êng la. Wok'an
ni jê tu ping pu
kao. Shên ch'u
shê t'ou lai, k'an
i k'an.
19. Neither have you told
me where you feel
the pain (lit. on your
body where pain).
I don't think your
temperature is high.
But put out your
tongue and let me
see it.
20. *P.* T'êng shih tu tzu
t'êng la, t'ou yeh
t'êng la.
20. I have stomach ache,
also headache.
21. *D.* Ta hsiao pien tsêm-
mo yang, t'ung
pu t'ung.
21. What about your
bowels and urine,
are they all right?
(lit. free not free).
22. *P.* Hsiao pien t'ung la,
ta pien pu t'ung.
22. Urination is all right,
but my bowels are
constipated.

15. 拾 Shih.² To pick up.
-
17. 藥 Yüeh. Yao.¹ Medicine, drugs.
 品 P'in.³ Sort, kind, class, character.
 藥品 Yüeh-p'in. Medicines, as a whole.
 布 Yao-pu. Bandages, lint, etc.
18. 脈 Mo.⁴ The pulse.
 看脈 K'an-mo. To take the pulse.
 溫度表 Wên-tu-piao. Thermometer.
-
19. 疼 T'êng.² Pain, to be in pain.
 伸 Shen.¹ To extend, put out.
-
21. 大便 Ta-pien. To pass a stool (big-convenience).
 小便 Hsiao-pien. To urinate (little-convenience).

23. D. Na mo, wo kei ni 23. Then I will make you
p'ei hsieh yao. up a purge. And
Ni pu yao ho don't drink strong
nung ch'a, ch'ang tea. Always take
ch'ang ho tan weak tea.
ch'a pa.

Note the use of "nung" and "tan" to express strong and weak of liquids. "Yen" is also used for "strong" of liquids.

24. P. Ch'ing tai fu kei wo 24. And doctor, I should
p'ei i fu wan yao like you to make me
pa. Wo pu neng up a dose of pills.
ch'ih yao fên. I can't take powders.

23. 濃
瀉

Neng. Nung.² Thick, strong, rich, of liquids.

Hsieh.⁴ To purge, drain, diarrhœa.

24. 配
副
丸
粉

P'ei.⁴ To mix, make up, as medicines.

Fu.⁴ A dose, classifier of medicine doses.

Wan.² Pill, pills.

Fên.³ Medicinal powder, flour, meal.

DIALOGUE No. 34

On Personal Characteristics and Relationships

Two friends, A and B

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. A. Chao hsien shêng ti
p'i ch'i ju ho. | 1. What sort of a man is
Mr. Chao (lit. what
is his temper like)? |
| 2. B. T'a shih i ko hsin
p'ing, ch'i ho ti
jên. | 2. He is an even-tempered
and kindly man. |
| 3. A. T'ing shuo t'a ti t'ai
t'ai ti p'i ch'i pu
hao. | 3. I hear that his wife
is an ill-tempered
woman. |
| 4. B. Ni shuo ti tui, tan
shih t'a ti chang
fu, kei t'a li i ko
hao pang yang. | 4. That is true, but her
husband gives (sets)
her a good example. |
| 5. A. I ko jên, yao shih pu
jên ch'i, ch'ang
ch'ang hui fa
shêng ma fan. | 5. If a person cannot con-
trol his temper, it is
a constant source of
trouble. |
- Note the use of "fa shêng" in the sense of create, produce, make, etc.
- | | |
|---|---|
| 6. B. Pu kuo Chao hsien
shêng shih ko hao
jên, pu yüan i
chia li pien fa
shêng lo so. | 6. But Mr. Chao is a good
man, and is anxious
that no trouble
should arise in his
home. |
| 7. A. T'a mên chia li
pien, ta kuo chia
mei yu. | 7. Have they ever come
to blows at home? |

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 34

1. 脾 P'i.² Spleen, stomach, disposition.
 脾氣 P'i-ch'i. Disposition, temper.

4. 丈 Chang.⁴ Husband.
 丈夫 Chang-fu. Husband.
 榜 Pang.⁴ Example, pattern.
 榜樣 Pang-yang. Example, pattern.

5. 忍 Jên.³ Endure, repress, restrain.
 忍氣 Jên-ch'i. Self-control, keep one's temper.
 麻煩 Ma.² Used with the next for trouble.
 煩 Fan.² Trouble, annoyance, annoy.

6. 囉 Lo.² Vexatious, annoyance.
 唆 So.¹ To incite, discord, mischief.

7. 架 Chia.¹ Blows, squabble.
 打架 Ta-chia. To come to blows, wrangle.

8. *B.* Mei yu, tan shih
yu ti shih hou,
mien pu liao ch'i
i tie'rh ch'ung t'u.
8. No, but at times it is
inevitable that they
should clash a little.

"Mien pu liao", another illustration of the use of "pu liao" to express impossibility, impossible to avoid, unavoidable.

9. *A.* Yu ti shih hou, t'ing
chien t'a mên ta
shêng ch'ao tsui.
9. Sometimes I hear them
shouting and wrang-
ling.
10. *B.* Ai ya, chê shih chia
li mien ch'ang
chien ti shih.
10. Alas, this sort of thing
is common in home
life.
11. *A.* Hsien shêng k'an,
tsên yang nêng
pa chê chung shih
chien shao.
11. How do you think that
this sort of thing
might become less
frequent?

"Nêng-kou"—can, able to—is often used as an alternative for "nêng" alone.

12. *B.* I ko jên yao shih
chiao ao, ch'ang
ch'ang k'an pu
ch'i pieh jên.
12. If a man is proud he
is prone to despise
(look down upon)
others.

13. *A.* I ko jên yao shih
ch'ien pei, chiu
pu hui fa shêng
chê yang ti shih
ch'ing.
13. A humble-minded man
will never (lit. is un-
able to) cause this
kind of trouble.

14. *B.* T'a ti t'ai t'ai,
tsung hsi huan
t'an lun jên chia
ti ch'ang tuan.
14. His wife must take
pleasure in talking
about the faults and
failures of other
people.

8. 免不了 Mien-pu-liao. Unavoidable.
 衝 Ch'ung.¹ To clash, dash against, collide.
 突 T'u.⁴ Rush against.
 衝突 Ch'ung-t'u. Personal differences, quarrels.
9. 吵 Ch'ao.³ Altercation, row, noise.
 嘴 Tsui.³ Lips.
 吵嘴 Ch'ao-tsui. Wrangle, quarrel.
11. 種 Chung.³ Kind, sort.
12. 驕 Chiao.¹ Proud, arrogant.
 傲 Ao. Ngao.⁴ Haughty, proud.
 驕傲 Chiao-ao. Proud, haughty, arrogant.
 看不起 K'an-pu-ch'i. To despise, look down on
 (look-not-rise).
- 別人 Pieh-jên. Others, other people.
13. 卑 Pei.¹ Low.
 謙卑 Ch'ien-pei. Humble, modest.
14. 談論 T'an-lun. Discuss, talk about.
 長短 Ch'ang-tuan. Merits and shortcomings
 (long-short).

15. A. Na mo, wo hsiang t'a ti chang fu
ho t'a pu yung i ch'u.
15. In that case I imagine her husband must find it no easy task to get on with her.

"Ch'u" has a special meaning of "to live together", "get on with one".

16. B. Pu ts'o, tan shih t'a chin liang ti jên nai, pu jo t'a.
16. That is so, but her husband endeavours to be patient, doing his utmost not to provoke her.

17. A. Chao hsien shêng pi ting shih i ko ts'ung ming t'ung ta ti jên.
17. Then Mr. Chao must be a very intelligent and experienced man.

"Ts'ung ming t'ung ta"—an enlightened and perspicacious man.

18. B. Tui la, t'a shên t'ung Ju hsüeh.
18. That is so, he is well-versed in Confucian principles.

"Ju" is the classical name for Confucianism, sometimes spoken of as "Ju-chiao", or as in the text, "Ju-hsüeh".

"Shên t'ung"—deep and thorough.

15. 處 Ch'u.² To live with.
 不容易處 Pu-yung-i-ch'u. Not easy to get on with.
16. 盡量的 Chin-liang-ti. Do one's utmost (to exhaust one's capacity).
 忍耐 Jên-nai. Be patient, put up with, endure.
 惹 Jo.³ To provoke.
17. 聰 Ts'ung.¹ Intelligent, understanding, clever.
 明 Ts'ung-ming. Intelligent, clever.
 通 T'ung.³ Through, used with the next.
 達 Ta.² Penetrate, inform.
 通達 T'ung-ta. Well informed, perspicacious.
18. 深 Shen.¹ Deep, profound, versed in.
 儒 Ju.² Confucian, learned, scholarly.
 儒學 Ju-hsüeh. The Confucian teaching, Confucianism.

DIALOGUE No. 35

Discussion between Master (M) and Servant (S) on scissors, the tailor, looking for someone, etc.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. M. Na tao tzu lai, ko
tiao chē i t'iao
shēng tzu. | 1. Bring a knife to cut
this piece of string. |
| 2. S. Chē t'iao shēng tzu
t'ai ts'u, yung tao
tzu ko pu tuan. | 2. This piece of string is
too thick for a knife
to cut. |

Note that "ts'u", thick, and "hsi", thin, are used of round long things like string, pillars, etc., while "hou", thick, and "po", thin, are used of flat objects.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 3. M. Na mo, ling wai
chao i t'iao pi
chiao hsi ti shēng
tzu, huo shih na
chien tao lai,
chiao i chiao. | 3. In that case, either find
a piece of finer string,
or bring the scissors
to cut it. |
|--|---|

"Pi chiao . . . hsi ti"—comparatively fine, finer.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 4. S. Ts'ai fēng pa chien
tzu chieh ch'ü la. | 4. The tailor has borrowed
the scissors (and
taken them away). |
| 5. M. T'a chieh la wo
mên ti chien tzu
ch'ü tso shih mo. | 5. What has he borrowed
our scissors for? |

Note "tso shih-mo" at the end of this sentence is equivalent to "why"? "He has borrowed our scissors . . . to do what?"

- | | |
|---|--|
| 6. S. T'a shuo t'a tzu chi
ti chien tzu t'ai
tun, tê mo i mo. | 6. He says his scissors are
too blunt and in
need of grinding. |
|---|--|

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 35

1. 割 Ko.¹ To cut.
割掉 Ko-tiao. To cut off (cut-drop).
繩 Shêng³ (tzu). Rope, string, cord.
2. 斷 Tuan.⁴ To cut off, break.
割不斷 Ko-pu-tuan. Can't cut it.

3. 細 Hsi.⁴ Fine, opposite of thick, or coarse.
剪 Chien¹ (tzu). Scissors.
剪刀 Chien-tao. Scissors.
絞 Chiao.³ To cut with scissors, twist, cross-wise.

6. 鈍 Tun.⁴ Dull, blunt.
磨 Mo.² To grind, rub, mill.

7. M. Ts'ai fêng shih pu shih hsien tsai kei
wo mên tso i fu. 7. Isn't the tailor making
some clothes for us
at present?

Notice "shih pu shih" coming at the beginning of a compound question. It serves to emphasise the action as continuing in the present.

8. S. Shih ti. T'a shih tsai kei t'ai t'ai ts'ai tuan wai i, ho ch'ang p'ao. 8. He is making a coatee and coat for Madame.

9. M. Wo chih tao t'ai t'ai chi yü hsiang ch'üan tuan wai i, so i t'a chieh chien tao, yeh yu li yu. 9. I know that Madame is very urgently wanting to wear the coatee, and so he had some good reason for borrowing the scissors.

10. S. K'o shih yu i chien; k'ung p'a ts'ai fêng pa chien tao, liu ch'i lai la. 10. But there is just this point; suppose the tailor were to keep our scissors?

"K'o shih yu i chien", used when interposing a qualification to views expressed.

11. M. Na suan pu liao shih mo, tsui yao chin ti shih yao t'a tsao tsao ti pa tuan wai i tso hao, chiao t'ai t'ai hsi huan. 11. That is of small moment. The most important thing is for him to get that coatee finished early, to please Madame.

12. M. (cont.) Ni tsêm-mo pu tsao kei wo shuo. 12. But why didn't you tell me before?

9. 於 Yü.² In, at, on, etc.
急於 Chi-yü. Anxious about, in haste about.
由 Yu.² Reason, cause.
理由 Li-yu. The reason why.

10. 留起來 Liu-ch'i-lai. To retain, keep.

11. 算不了 Suan-pu-liao. Of no importance or account.

13. S. Yin wei wo pu chih
tao nin tsai na li.

Note use of "nin", a polite form of "ni", the second personal pronoun.

14. M. Pu shih yin wei ni
t'ai lan, mei yu
yung hsin chao
wo pa.

15. S. Pu shih ti, wo shih
tsai chao pu cho
hsien shêng.

16. M. Wo ping mei yu
li k'ai ch'ê ko ti
fang, tsêm mo ni
shuo chao pu cho
wo ni.

17. S. Na tao ch'i kuai,
wo tao ch'u chao
nin, na'êrh yeh
chao pu cho.

"Na'êrh yeh . . . pu"—nowhere, not anywhere.

18. M. Pa liao. Kan ni ti
ch'ü pa.

13. Because I did not know
where you were.

14. Isn't it (rather) because
you are lazy, and
have not tried to find
me?

15. No not that. I really
could not find you.

16. But I haven't left this
place, how can you
say you couldn't find
me?

17. That really is strange.
I looked everywhere
for you, but couldn't
find you.

18. Enough of this. Get
on with your job.

14. 用心 Yung-hsin. To exert oneself, mentally (use heart).
15. 找不着 Chao-pu-cho. Cannot find (seek not get).
16. 離開 Li-k'ai. To depart, leave, take one's leave.
17. 奇怪 Ch'i.² Strange, wonderful, rare.
Kuai.⁴ Extraordinary, unusual, strange, blame.
- 到處 Tao-ch'u. Everywhere.
18. 罷了 Pa⁴-liao. To finish, that will do! say no more.

EXERCISE No. 36

Some Useful Idiomatic Phrases

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Pa ni mên ti shu ta
k'ai. | 1. Open your books. |
| 2. K'an ti chi chang ti chi
chieh. | 2. What chapter and verse
shall we find? (lit.
look at, with a view
to reading). |
| 3. Ni nien tao ti chi yeh. | 3. To what page have you
read? |
| 4. Mei ko hsüeh shêng,
tou yao nien ti êrh
shih wu yeh ti, ti êrh
chang, ti i chieh. | 4. Each student must read
chap. two, verse one,
on page 25. |

"Ko"—each, every, followed by "tou", "tu"—all.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 5. So yu ti hsien shêng tou
yao tao hui. | 5. All the teachers must
come to the meeting. |
|---|--|

"Tao hui"—come to the meeting—is really equal to our be present, attend.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 6. Wo ho ni mên tsai i ch'i
ti shih hou, ni mên
yao chin liang ti fa
piao ni mên ti i
chien. | 6. Express your opinions
as far as you can,
while I am here with
you. |
|--|--|

- | | |
|---|--|
| 7. T'a ho wo mên t'ung
hsing, tso wo mên ti
ling tao. | 7. He is going with us, to
be our leader. |
|---|--|

"Tso" has the same sense as "tang", viz., to act as, to be.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 8. Wo tsai chu wei mien
ch'ien shuo ch'ê yang
ti hua, shih pu p'ei
ti. | 8. I am unworthy (not fit
to) to say this kind
of thing in your pre-
sence. |
|---|--|

"Chu wei"—all (you) gentlemen. Used when addressing an audience.

VOCABULARY OF EXERCISE No. 36

1. 打開 Ta-k'ai. To open, as of books.
2. 章 Chang.¹ Chapter, essay.
節 Chieh.² Verse, section.
3. 頁 Yeh.⁴ Page, leaf of a book.
5. 所有的 So-yu-ti. All that there are.
會 Hui.⁴ Meeting, conference, association.
6. 在一起 Tsai-i-ch'i. Together.
發表 Fa-piao. To make known.
意見 I-chien. Opinions, ideas.
7. 導 Tao.³ To lead.
領導 Ling-tao. To lead, a leader.
8. 諸 Chu.¹ All (precedes nouns).
面前 Mien-ch'ien. Presence, in front of.
配 P'ei.⁴ Match, be worthy, be equal to.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 9. Chang kuan tsai chün
túi chung, tsou lai
tsou ch'ü. | 9. The officers go in and
out amongst the
troops. |
| 10. T'a tsai lu p'ang kuan
k'an. | 10. He was looking on from
the side of the road
(an onlooker). |
| 11. Na ko fang tzu chêng
tsai tui mie'rh. | 11. The house is exactly
opposite. |
| 12. Ling lu ti, tsai ch'ien
mie'rh tsou. | 12. The guide goes ahead. |
| 13. Hu sung ti, tsai hou
pie'rh tsou. | 13. The escort goes behind. |
| 14. P'êng yu mên ping
p'ai ti, hsiang ch'ien
tsou. | 14. Friends advance shoul-
der to shoulder (side
by side). |
| 15. Ni chan tsai tang chung
pa. | 15. Stand in the middle. |
| 16. Pu yao wang i k'uai
êrh chi. | 16. Don't crowd together. |
| 17. Ta chia yao san k'ai. | 17. Let all scatter. |
| "Ta chia", a common expression for "all", when referring to
persons. | |
| 18. Hsiang li yüan i tie'rh
ti hao. | 18. It would be better if
you moved apart a
little. |
| 19. Pi tz'u jang pu. | 19. To make concessions
on both sides (lit.
mutually recede). |

"Pi tz'u", lit. that, this, is the most usual expression for mutually.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| 20. Ta chia ch'ien chin pa. | 20. Let all advance. |
|-----------------------------|----------------------|

9. 長官 Chang-kuan. Officials, officers.
軍隊 Chün-tui. Soldiers, military.
10. 旁 P'ang.² The side.
觀 Kuan.¹ To look on, observe.
13. 護 Hu.⁴ To protect, guard.
護送 Hu-sung. To escort, for protection.
14. 排 P'ai.² In rows, ranks, arrange, abreast.
並排 Ping-p'ai. Shoulder to shoulder, in line.
15. 當中 Tang-chung. The midst, in the centre.
16. 擠 Chi.³ To crowd together, to press.
17. 散 San.⁴ To scatter, disperse.
散開 San-k'ai. To scatter, disperse, apart.
19. 彼此 Pi.³ That.
彼此 Tz'u.³ This.
彼此 Pi-tz'u. Mutual, mutually.
讓 Jang.⁴ To concede, give way, yield.
讓步 Jang-pu. To make concessions, yield (give step).

21. Chê chi nien t'a chin la 21. He has made progress
 pu. this last few years.

"Chin-pu", "t'ui-pu", lit. advance step, retard step, progress and retrogression.

22. T'a ti mei mei t'ui la 22. His younger sister has
 pu. retrogressed.

23. Kuan chang i chin lai, 23. As soon as the officials
 ta chia chiu chan come in, let the
 ch'i lai, t'o mao chü whole group rise,
 kung. doff hats and bow.

"I chin lai . . . chiu"—as soon as . . . come in . . . (you will do this or that).

"Chai" is a special term for taking off the hat or cap. But the usual expression for "taking off clothes", including caps and hats, is "t'o".

24. Hsiang tso hsiang yu, 24. As to whether we turn
 tou shih t'ing chiao left or right it is the
 shih ti ming ling. teacher's orders that
 must be obeyed.

25. I shih chu, san yao 25. Clothes, food and shel-
 shu. ter are the three im-
 portant things.

26. Ch'uan tê nuan, ch'ih 26. To be warmly clad and
 tê pao, shih jên jên well fed is the desire
 so yao. of every man.

"Ch'ih tê pao"; cf. "ch'ih pao la"—I have eaten my fill—is not considered impolite as an expression of appreciation of a good meal.

21. 進步 Chin-pu. To advance, make progress.
22. 退 T'ui.⁴ To retreat, retire, move back.
 退步 T'ui-pu. Opposite of progress, to be retrograde.
23. 脫 T'o.¹ To doff the hat, take off (clothes).
 鞠躬 Chü.² To bow, bend the body.
 躬 Kung.¹ The body, person.
 鞠躬 Chü-kung. To make a bow.
24. 左 Tso.³ Left.
 右 Yu.¹ Right.
 命令 Ming-ling. Orders, commands.
25. 食 Shih.² Food.
 樞 Shu.¹ Cardinal, fundamental.
26. 暖 Nuan.³ Warm, genial.
 飽 Pao.³ Replete, full.

DIALOGUE No. 37

Two friends, A and B, take a Walk in the Country

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. A. Ch'in t'ien kuo
chieh, ko chi
kuan fang chia,
wo mên lü hsing
hao pu hao. | 1. To-day is a public holiday, all public offices are closed. What do you say to a ramble? |
|---|--|

"Kuo"—to pass—used of special days and occasions; *e.g.*, "kuo nien" is to celebrate the (New) Year.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 2. B. Hên hao, wo mên
hsia hsiang ch'ü,
i t'ung ch'ih yeh
ts'an. | 2. Very good, let us go into the country and have a picnic meal together. |
|---|---|

"Hsia hsiang"; "hsia"—to go down (into the country).

- | | |
|--|--|
| 3. A. Tsan ch'êng. P'an
wang t'ien ch'i
yao nuan ho. | 3. Splendid (lit. approved). I hope it will be warm. |
| 4. B. Chiu shih yin t'ien,
yeh pu yao chin.
Tsui k'o p'a ti
chiu shih shan
tien, ta lei. | 4. Even if it is overcast it doesn't matter. What is most to be feared is thunder and lightning. |

"Chiu shih . . . yeh"—even if . . . still, etc.

"K'o p'a ti", one way of expressing the passive voice; what is to be feared.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 5. A. K'o shih hsia t'ien
pu hui hsia hsüeh
ti. | 5. (One thing about it and that is) It is Summer and it won't snow! |
| 6. B. Pu ts'o, k'o shih
nan pao pu hsia
pao tzu. | 6. True, but one can't be certain it won't hail. |

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 37

1. 節 Chieh.² Feast, festival.
 機關 Chi.¹ Machine, organ of administration.
 機關 Kuan.¹ Public office, administrative department.
 機關 Chi-kuan. Public offices, associations, etc.
 放假 Chia.² Holiday.
 放假 Fang-chia. To close for holiday.
 旅行 Lū-hsing. To travel, go for a journey, picnic.
2. 鄉 Hsiang.¹ The country, countryside, rural.
 野 Yeh.³ Wild.
 餐 Ts'an.¹ A meal.
3. 贊 Tsan.⁴ Praise, approve.
 成 Ch'êng.¹ Approve.
 贊成 Tsan-ch'êng. To approve.
4. 陰 Yin.¹ Dark, cloudy, overcast, the female principle.
 閃 Shan.³ Flash, lightning.
 閃電 Shan-tien. Lightning (flash electric).
 雷 Lei.² Thunder.
5. 雪 Hsüeh.^{3, 5} Snow.
6. 雹 Pao.² (tzu). Hailstones.

7. A. Tung t'ien hsia shu-ang, shan shang
ti shu to ma hao
k'an.
7. When there is frost in
Winter, how beautiful
the trees on the
hills are!
8. B. Hao k'an shih hao
k'an. Pu kuo ho
kên hu li pie'rh,
tou chieh la tung,
hên pu fang pien.
8. Beautiful indeed. But
when rivers and lakes
are frozen up, it is
very inconvenient.

"Hên pu"—extremely un-: cf. "pu hên", not very, a difference of degree expressed by position of a word in the sentence.

9. A. K'o shih hsien tsai
shih ch'iu t'ien,
pushih tung t'ien.
Wo mên yu pu ta
suan tso ch'uan,
wo mên yao pu
hsing.
9. But it is Autumn and
not Winter. More-
over we are not
thinking of travelling
by boat, we are going
to walk.
10. B. Chin wan ti yüeh
liang, ying kai
shih yüan ti.
T'ien ch'i ch'ing
lang ti shih hou,
hsing hsing yu
kai to ma ti hao
k'an.
10. It ought to be full moon
to-night, and if the
sky (weather) is
clear, the stars ought
also to be very
beautiful.
11. A. Yao pu ch'i wu ts'ai
hao. Hao pu hao
wo mên hsien tsai
chiu tsou pa.
11. It will be all right if
there is no fog. What
about making a start
now?

"Hao pu hao", coming at the beginning of a query, means "What about . . . ? "Do you approve?", etc.

"Chiu" here as often has the sense of "immediacy".

12. B. K'o'i. Aiya. T'ien
ch'i liang k'uai,
ching chih yeh
12. Certainly. My! the day
is cool, the scenery
fine, the flowers are

7. 霜 Shuang.¹ Frost.
樹 Shu.⁴ Tree.

8. 河 Ho.² River.
湖 Hu.² Lake.
凍 Tung.⁴ To freeze.
方便 Fang-pien. Convenient.

9. 秋 Ch'iu.¹ Autumn, harvest.

10. 月亮 Yüeh-liang. The moon.
朗 Lang.³ Clear, fine.
圓 Yuan.² Round, circle.

11. 霧 Wu.⁴ Mist.
起霧 Chi'-wu. To be misty, foggy.

12. 涼快 Liang-k'uai. Cool and invigorating.
景 Ching.³ Fine, prospect.

hao, hua tou k'ai
la, tsai ts'ao ti
shang mien tsou,
to ma shu fu.

all in bloom, what a
relief to be walking
through the grassy
meadows!

"To ma . . ."—how! when preceding an adjectival expression.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 13. A. Ni k'an shan p'o
shang ti miao,
shan ting shang
ti t'a, to ma hao
k'an. | 13. Just look at the temples
on the hill slopes,
and the pagoda on
the hill top, how
lovely! |
| 14. B. Wo mên shang miao
shang ch'ü, kên
ho shang t'an i
t'an. | 14. Let's go up to the
temple and have a
chat with the bonzes
(Buddhist priests). |
| 15. A. Wo k'an chê tso
miao shih Tao
chiao, pu shih Fo
chiao. | 15. I think this is a Taoist
temple, not Budd-
hist. |

"Tso" is the classifier of temples, towers, houses, etc.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 16. B. Na mei yu kuan hsi,
tsa mên shang
ch'ü tsai shuo pa. | 16. That doesn't matter,
let's go up and then
we shall see. |
| 17. A. Ai, chê hsieh ts'ang
ying ho ma i, t'ao
yen pu t'ao yen. | 17. My! but these flies and
ants, what a nuisance
they are! |

"T'ao"—to beg, seek; "yen"—dislike. To ask for one's dis-
pleasure, so hateful, nuisance, etc.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 18. B. Hsing k'uei chê li
mei yu wên tzu.
Wên tzu yao jên
yao tê li hai. | 18. Fortunately there are
no mosquitoes here.
They bite terribly. |
|---|---|

12. 緻 Chih.⁴ Scenery, view.
 景 Ching-chih. Scenery, view.
 緻 Ts'ao-ti. The fields, on the grass, lawn.
 草地
13. 坡 P'o.¹ The slope of a hill.
 廟 Miao.⁴ Temple, fair.
 頂 Ting.³ Summit, top.
 塔 T'a.³ Pagoda, dagoba.
14. 和尚 Ho-shang.⁴ Buddhist priest.
15. 一座廟 I-tso-miao. A temple.
 道 Tao.⁴ Doctrine, principle, reason, way, etc.
 道教 Tao-chiao. Taoism, Taoist.
 佛 Fo.² Buddha.
 佛教 Fo-chiao. Buddhism.
17. 蒼 Ts'ang.¹ Fly, with the next.
 蠅 Ying.² Fly, with the preceding.
 螞蟻 Ma³-i.³ Ant.
 討 T'ao.³ To beg, seek.
 厭 Yen.⁴ Dislike.
 討厭 T'ao-yen. Annoying, vexing.
18. 咬 Yao.³ To bite.

19. A. Ai, k'an k'an lo t'o, 19. I say! look at this
 lo tzu, mao lü,
 k'o to la. multitude of camels,
 mules and donkeys.

"K'o . . . to la", the "k'o" for emphasis.

20. B. Tsung shih miao 20. There must be a fair on
 shang k'ai hsiang at the temple, with
 hui, k'o jên tao this mass of visitors.
 pu shao.

21. A. K'o pu shih ma. 21. Quite so. Some are
 Yu jên pao hai carrying their
 tzu, yu jên pei children, some have
 cho hsing li, hai bundles on their
 yu jên t'iao shui. backs, while others
 are carrying water
 (on their shoulders).

"K'o pu shih ma", a very common phrase, expressing assent, agreement.

Note the different words used for "carry" according to the method of carrying. See Vocabulary.

22. B. Hên jê nao. Pi shih 22. Very gay and lively.
 tsai ch'ang hsi. There must be theat-
 ricals on.

"Jê nao" and "hung huo" are common terms for noise and bustle, associated with fairs, markets, etc.

23. A. Tsa mên shang miao 23. Come on, let's go up to
 shang ch'ü k'an the temple and see.
 k'an.

24. B. Ai, chieh kuang, 24. Ai! by your leave,
 chieh kuang. make way.

25. A. K'an hsi yu shih 25. What shall we gain by
 mo hao ch'u. looking at theatricals?

26. B. Huo ch'ü huo pu 26. You had better make up
 ch'ü, ni tê na ting your mind whether
 chu i pa. you are going or not.

"Huo . . . huo"—either . . . or.

19. 駱駝驢毛驢
Lo.⁴ Camel.
T'o.² Camel, with the preceding.
Lü.² Donkey.
Mao-lü. Donkey.
Lo² (tzu). Mule.
20. 香
Hsiang.¹ Fragrant, incense.
21. 抱孩背挑行李
Pao.⁴ To nurse, carry in the arms.
Hai² (tzu). Child.
Pei.⁴ To carry on the back.
T'iao.¹ To carry on a pole on the shoulder.
Hsing-li. Baggage.
22. 鬧熱鬧唱戲
Nao.⁴ Noise, bustle, disturb.
Jê-nao. Bustling, hot and noisy.
Ch'ang.⁴ To sing.
Hsi.⁴ Theatricals, play on stage.
Ch'ang-hsi. Theatricals, to act, play on stage.
24. 借光
Chieh - kuang. By your leave! (borrow light).
25. 好處
Hao-ch'u. Benefit, advantage.

27. A. Pu ju ch'ên cho chê ko chi hui, ch'ü k'an i tz'u hsi pa. 27. Well, I suppose we had better take the opportunity to see a play.

"Tz'u"—a time, a turn. "T'ai" is the classifier of plays, lit. "stage".

28. B. Wo k'an mei yu pieh ti pan fa. Jên chê yang ti yung chi, hsiang hui yeh hui pu ch'ü. 28. I fear (see) there is nothing else we can do. The crowd pressing on us as it is, even if we want to go back, we shan't be able to do so.

"Pieh mei yu pan fa" could also be used. Note this use of "pieh"—otherwise, apart from this, not have way of doing.

"Hsiang hui, etc.", a good illustration of "pictorial" expression, showing the working of the mind in the particular situation.

29. A. Hsing k'uei wo mên mei yu to k'ang tung hsi. Na li yu i ko jên ch'ien la i p'i ma, p'a ts'ai la jên. 29. Fortunately we have not brought much baggage with us (on a pole). There's a man leading a horse, I'm afraid it might trample on someone.

"K'ang"—carry on shoulder; see 21 above.

"Ch'ien"—to lead a horse—a special term for this action.

30. B. Wei hsien tê hên. 30. Very dangerous indeed.

Note "tê hên" following the adjective, again for emphasis.

27. 趁 會
 機會
 Ch'ên.⁴ Avail of.
 Chi-hui. Opportunity.
28. 湧 擠
 湧
 擠
 Yung.³ To crowd or press together.
 Chi.³ To crowd together.
29. 扛 牽 匹 踩
 扛
 牽
 匹
 踩
 K'ang.⁴ To carry on shoulder.
 Ch'ien.¹ To lead a horse by the bridle.
 P'i.^{3, 5} Classifier of horses.
 Ts'ai.⁴ To trample or step on.
30. 危 險
 Wei.¹ Hsien.¹ Dangerous.

EXERCISE No. 38

Common Proverbs

1. Tsai chia ch'ien jih hao. 1. A thousand days at home is all right.

Tsai wai shih shih nan. But when you are away there are always difficulties.

"Shih shih"—everything. The repetition of the noun indicates multiplication, even to universality; e.g., "t'ien t'ien" is every day.

2. Shou tê k'u chung k'u. 2. Extreme suffering makes one an outstanding man.
Fang wei jên shang jên.

Note the parallelism here. "K'u chung k'u"—hardship in hardship; "jên shang jên"—man above man; both suggesting an extreme. "Fang", an alternative for "ts'ai"—"then" a logical sequence.

3. Chên chin tzu pu p'a 3. True gold doesn't fear
huo lien. the refiners' fire.
4. Chung kua tê kua, 4. You reap what you sow
chung tou tê tou. (lit. plant a melon and you reap a melon, plant beans and you get beans).

That which a man sows he shall also reap.

5. Ya tzu ch'ih huang 5. When a dumb man eats
lien, sui k'u pu nêng the "huang lien", he
yen. is unable to describe
its bitterness.

To suffer in silence.
"Huang lien"—a bitter plant.

6. Lu yao chih ma li. 6. A long journey reveals the strength of a horse.

VOCABULARY OF EXERCISE No. 38

3. 金 Chin.¹ Gold, metal.
 煉 Lien.⁴ To refine.
4. 瓜 Kua.¹ Melon.

5. 黃連 Huang lien.² A bitter plant.

6. 遙 Yao.² Distant.

Jih chiu chien jên hsin.

And you discern a man's heart after long acquaintance with him.

7. Ch'ui mao ch'iu tz'u.

7. Blowing the fur to find flaws (a faultfinder).

8. Pu p'a man, chih p'a chan.

8. It's well to keep going, even if the going is slow. Stagnation is to be dreaded.

To keep going is important.

9. Yüan shui chiu pu liao chin huo.

9. A distant well (water) is of no avail to put out a fire which is near at hand.

Hope deferred maketh the heart sick.

10. Tso ching kuan t'ien.

10. Sitting in a well and looking at the sky (parochialism).

Parochialism.

11. Ch'i hu nan hsia.

11. Once you are mounted on a tiger the difficulty is to get down.

You'll suffer for your rashness.

12. I ko jên chiao t'a liang chih ch'uan.

12. (Like) a man straddling two boats. (Hesitancy) "He who hesitates is lost".

Hesitancy is dangerous.

13. Pu tao ho pien pu t'o hsieh.

13. Don't take your shoes off until you reach the river.

Meeting trouble halfway.

7. 吹
疵

Ch'ui.¹ To blow.
Tz'u.¹ A flaw, blemish.

9. 救

Chiu.⁴ To save, deliver.

11. 虎

Hu.³ Tiger.

12. 踏
隻

T'a.⁴ Step on, tread.
Chih.¹ Classifier of boats, shoes, etc.

14. Ch'ien jên tsai shu, hou
jên ch'êng liang.

Our debt to our forefathers.

15. Shih niao tsai shu,

Pu ju i niao tsai shou.

A bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.

16. Jên shih chiu ti hao.
I fu shih hsin ti hao.

17. Mou shih tsai jên.
Ch'êng shih tsai t'ien.

18. Chin t'ien t'o la hsieh
ho wa, pu chih ming
t'ien ch'uan pu ch'
uan.

The uncertainty of life.

19. Hsia mao p'êng ssu lao
shu.

Extraordinary luck.

20. Shan yu shan pao, o yu
o pao.

14. Our forefathers planted
trees, and their des-
cendants avail them-
selves of the cool
shade.

15. Ten birds on the tree
are not so good as
one bird in the hand.

(One bird in the hand
is worth ten on the
tree.)

16. Old friends are best.
New clothes are best.

17. Man proposes but God
(Heaven) disposes.

18. We take off our shoes
and socks to-day, but
do not know whether
we shall put them on
to-morrow.

19. A blind cat happens
upon a dead rat.

20. Goodness brings a good
reward, evil an evil
recompense.

14. 栽 Tsai.¹ To plant.
 乘 Ch'eng.² Avail of.
15. 鳥 Niao.³ Bird.
17. 謀 Mou.² To plan, devise.
19. 貓 Mao.^{2 1} Cat.
 死 Ssu.³ Dead, to die.
 鼠 Shu.³ Rat, mouse.
 老鼠 Lao-shu. Rat, mouse.
20. 善 Shan.⁴ Good.
 惡 O.⁴ Evil.

20. Shan o pu pao, shih
hou wei tao.

If good and evil are
not requited, it is
(merely) because the
time has not yet
arrived.

21. Shan mên nan k'ai.
Shan mên nan pi.

21. It is hard to prise open
the door of benevo-
lence, and equally
hard to shut it.

Used of charitable deeds. It is hard to get people to help you when in need (from the standpoint of the needy). Once you have begun to distribute alms, you will find it hard to stop (from the standpoint of the benefactor); i.e., there will always be a crowd of beggars round you if you give to one.

20. 報 Pao.⁴ Report, reward.

21. 閉 Pi.⁴ To close.

DIALOGUE No. 39

In the City

Two friends, A and B, who meet a third friend, C

1. A. Tui mie'rh, na tso shih t'ou tsao ti fang tzu, shih shih mo.
1. What is that stone building opposite?

"Shih t'ou tsao ti"—made or built of stone.

2. B. Ni wên ti shih cha ch'i kan ti na ko fang tzu ma.
2. Are you asking about that building with the flag-pole?

3. A. Shih ti. Kua kuo ch'i ti na ko fang tzu.
3. Yes, the building with the national flag flying.

4. B. Ai. Na shih "Ai Kuo Tien Ying Yüan". Ni yao k'an tien ying ma.
4. Oh, that is the "Patriotic Cinema Theatre". Do you want to see the films?

5. A. Ch'êng li ti yin hang, chi tien chung kuan mên.
5. What time do the banks in the city close?

"Kuan mên". The difference between "kuan" and "shang" should be noted. "Kuan" is used of doors or hinges; "shang" of shutters.

6. B. Yin hang san tien chung kuan mên, ch'ien p'u i chih k'ai tao chiu tien chung.
6. The big banks close at three, but the cash shops keep open until nine o'clock.

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 39

1. 石 Shih.² (t'ou). Stone.
 造 Tsao.⁴ To build, made.
2. 插 Cha.¹ To stick in.
 旗 Ch'i.² Flag, banner.
 桿 Nan.³ Staff, pole.
4. 影 Ying.³ Shadow, image.
 電 影 Tien-ying. The cinema film (electric-
 shadow).
 愛 國 Ai-kuo. Patriotic.
5. 行 Hang.² A store, shop, etc.
 銀 行 Yin-hang. A bank.
6. 鋪 P'u.⁴ A shop.
 錢 鋪 Ch'ien-p'u. A Chinese cash shop.

7. A. Wo chê li yu i
 chang hui p'iao
 (chih p'iao) yao
 huan ch'êng hsien
 ch'ien, ts'ai nêng
 k'an tien ying.
7. I have a cheque here
 which I must cash
 before I can go to
 the pictures.

"Huan ch'êng"—change it to become . . .

"Ts'ai"—change your money first and "then" you will be able.
 The "ts'ai" of logical sequence.

8. B. Ch'ien tien yeh kei
 ni huan, yeh pu
 k'ou ch'ien.
8. The cash shops will
 change it for you,
 and charge no dis-
 count.
9. A. Na mo, wo mên
 hsien shang yu
 chêng chũ, wo
 yao ta tien pao
 kei wo nei jên.
9. Then let us go to the
 post office first. I
 want to send a tele-
 gram to my wife.

"Nei jên", used in referring to one's own wife, but not to the wife
 of another man. "Chia li ti" is a common synonym, i.e., "the
 one in my home".

"Kei" often means "to".

10. B. Yu chêng chũ, li
 chê'rh yüan ya.
 Hai shih tien pao
 chũ pi chiao chin.
10. The post office is quite
 far from here. The
 telegraph office is
 nearer.
11. A. Pu kuo wo i ting
 yao pa chê liang
 fêng kua hao hsin,
 chi kei wo kung
 ssu ti ta pan.
11. But I must first send
 these two registered
 letters to the mana-
 ger of my firm.

"Ta pan"—the big boss. Others in order of seniority are "erh
 pan", second boss, "san pan", third boss, and so on.

12. B. I fêng kua hao hsin,
 t'ieh to shao yu
 p'iao.
12. How many stamps must
 one put on a regis-
 tered letter?

7. 滙 Hui.⁴ To exchange money.
 滙 票 Hui-p'iao. Bank cheque, draft, etc.
 支 票 Chih-p'iao. Bank cheque, draft, etc.
8. 扣 K'ou.⁴ To deduct, discount.
9. 郵 Yu.² To convey, postal service.
 政 Chêng.⁴ Government, administration.
 郵 政 局 Yu-chêng-chū. The post office.
 報 Pao.⁴ Report, announce, inform.
 電 報 Tien-pao. Telegram.
 打 電 報 Ta-tien-pao. To send a telegram.
 內 Nei.⁴ Inside, within.
 內 人 Nei-jen. Wife, my wife.
11. 挂 號 Kua-hao. To register, letters, parcels, etc.
 一 封 信 I-feng-hsin. A letter.
 司 Ssu.¹ Manage, board, company.
 公 司 Kung-ssu. A public company.
 大 班 Ta-pan. Manager, chief.
12. 貼 T'ieh.¹ To stick on, as stamps.
 郵 票 Yu-p'iao. Postage stamps.
 寄 Chi.⁴ To send.

14. 同鄉 T'ung-hsiang. Fellow-villager, townsman.
想不到 Hsiang-pu-tao. Unexpected (think not arrive).

15. 了不得 Liao-pu-tê. Expression of emotion, elation, grief.
祖 Tsu.³ Ancestors.
受傷 Shou-shang. To receive an injury.
醫院 I-yüan. Hospital.

16. 留攔 Liu-lan. To detain.
令祖 Ling-tsu. Your grandfather.

18. 肚 Tu⁴ (tzu). Stomach, belly.
餓 O.⁴ Hungry.

19. A. K'o i. Wo pu hsiang ch'ih shih mo tung hsi. K'o shih wo tsui kan la. Wo yao ho i pei p'i chiu. 19. All right. I don't feel like eating anything. But I am thirsty (my lips are dry). I shall have a glass of beer.
20. B. Ai, ch'ê ko kuan tzu pu ts'o, hai yu yin yo tui t'ing. 20. Ah, this is a very good restaurant, and there is a band to listen to.
21. A. Na pu shih yin yo tui, pu kuo shih liu shêng chi ti hsiang shêng. 21. That isn't a band, it is only a gramophone('s noise).
22. B. Wo k'an shih wu hsien tien kuang po ti yin yo. 22. I think it is the wireless broadcasting music.
23. A. K'o pu shih ma. Wo t'ing shuo ch'êrh ch'a pu to mei wan shang tou yu t'iao wu. Ni hui t'iao wu pu hui. 23. Of course it is. I hear that almost every evening there is dancing here. Can you dance?
24. B. Hui shih hui. Wo chin t'ien t'ai lei la, pu hsiang t'iao wu. 24. Yes I can, but I am tired to-day and don't feel like dancing.
25. A. Na mo, wo mên chiu ch'ü k'an tien ying pa. I mien hsiu hsi, i mien chang chih shih. 25. Then let's go to the pictures. On the one hand we can take a rest and on the other increase our knowledge.

"I mien . . . i mien"—on the one hand . . . and on the other.

19. 嘴乾 Tsui-kan. Thirsty (lips dry).
 啤 P'i² (chiu). Beer.

20. 樂 Yo. Yüeh.⁴ Music.
 音樂 Yin-yo. Music.
 音樂隊 Yin-yo-tui. Band.
21. 留聲機 Liu-shêng-chi. Gramophone (retain-voice-machine).
 響聲 Hsiang³-shêng. Noise, sound.
22. 無線電 Wu-hsien-tien. Wireless (no-wire-electric).
 廣 Kuang.³ Wide, broadcast.
 播 Po.¹ To spread abroad.
 廣播電台 Kuang-po-tien-t'ai. A broadcasting station.
23. 跳 T'iao.⁴ To dance, jump.
 舞 Wu.³ To posture, brandish, dance.

24. 累 Lei.³ Tired, fatigued.

25. 一面 I-mien. On the one hand.

26. *B. Pu ts'o. Wo i wei na tao kêng yu hsing ch'ü (ch'ü wei).* 26. Very good. I think that will be more interesting.

26. 趣

興 趣

Ch'ü.⁴ Interesting, amusing.

Hsing-ch'ü. Interesting, interest.

DIALOGUE No. 40

On War and Peace

Two friends, A and B

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. A. Wo chē i pei tzu
ti kung fu, chiu
p'êng tao la liang
tz'u ti shih chieh
ta chan.</p> | <p>1. I have experienced (lit.
met with) two world
wars in my lifetime.</p> |
| <p>2. B. Wei shih mo shih
chieh shang pu
nêng kou wei
ch'ih ho p'ing ni.</p> | <p>2. How is it that peace
cannot be organised
on earth?</p> |

"Nêng i", synonym for "nêng kou"—can, be able to.

- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>3. A. Kên pên chiu shih
yin wei kuo chia
kên kuo chia,
chung tsu kên
chung tsu chih
chien, fa hsien pu
kung p'ing ti shih
hsiang.</p> | <p>3. At bottom it is because
between nations and
races, certain injus-
tices arise.</p> |
|--|--|

"Kên pên"—the root, source, etc., or

"Tao ti"—really, lit. arrive at bottom.

"Chih chien". "Chih" the possessive goes better with "chien" than "ti".

"Fa hsien", lit. become evident, so reveal.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>4. B. Ni ti i ssu shih shuo,
pi hsien ch'ü
hsiao i ch'ieh pu
kung p'ing ti</p> | <p>4. Do you then mean, that
in order to obtain a
peaceful world, we
must first eliminate</p> |
|---|---|

VOCABULARY OF DIALOGUE No. 40

1. 輩 Pei.⁴ Generation.
2. 維 Wei.² To maintain, organise
持 Ch'ih.² To organise, maintain.
維持 Wei-ch'ih. To organise and keep going.
3. 之 Chih.¹ Like "ti", the sign of the pos-
 sessive, only with a slightly literary
 flavour.
事項 Shih-hsiang. The details of affairs, affairs.
族 Tsu.² A clan, tribe.
4. 取消 Ch'ü-hsiao. To cut out, eliminate.

shih, ts'ai nêng
p'an wang tê tao,
yu i ko ho p'ing
ti shih chieh ma.

everything that is
unjust?

"Ni ti i ssu shih shuo"—in exact terms your meaning is.
"Ts'ai"—of logical sequence. Cf. Dial. 39, sen. 7.

5. A. Shih chieh shang fa
shêng chan shih,
to pan shih yin
wei wo kang ts'ai
shuo kuo ti yüan
ku. Pu kuo jên
jên tou yu i ko
tzu ssu ti hsin.
Chê yeh pu k'o
pu chu i ti.
5. The majority of wars
that arise on this
earth are due to the
reason I have just
mentioned. But the
fact that every man
is selfish is something
that cannot be ig-
nored.

"To i pan"—mainly, the majority.
"Pu k'o pu . . .", another example of the double negative for
emphasis.

6. B. Pu ts'o. Jên ti tzu
ssu hsin, shih tsai
nan yü ch'ü tiao.
6. Quite right. The sel-
fish instincts of man
are certainly hard to
eradicate.
7. A. K'o shih hsien tsai
ti, ti êrh tz'u ta
chan i ching wan
la. Tê Kuo, I
Kuo, Jih Pen,
tou i ching t'ou
hsiang la.
7. But the second Great
War is now over.
Germany, Italy and
Japan have all sur-
rendered.

"Hsiang", also read "chiang", but not in the sense of surrender.

8. B. Ai ya. Chung Kuo
ti k'ang Jih Pên
ti ch'in lüeh, i
ching pa nien
liao.
8. Ah! China has been
resisting Japanese
aggression for eight
years now.

5. 私 Ssu.¹ Selfish, private.
 自私 Tzu-ssu. Selfish.
 原 Yuan.² Source.
 注 Chu.⁴ Fix.
6. 去掉 Ch'ü-tiao. To eliminate, get rid of.
7. 德國 Tê²-kuo. Germany.
 意國 I-kuo. Italy.
 日本 Jih-pen. Japan.
 投降 T'ou.² To hand in, surrender.
 降 Hsiang.² To submit, surrender (with the preceding).
8. 抵抗 Ti.³ To resist.
 抗 K'ang.⁴ To resist, oppose (with the preceding).
 侵 Ch'in.¹ To invade.

9. A. Liang pien ssu shang ti jên, tou fei ch'ang ti to la. 9. The killed and wounded on both sides are extremely (unusually) many.
10. B. Shih tsai pu shao. Fang tzu pei cha tan cha huai la ti, yeh shih hên to. 10. Very many indeed. And the number of buildings that have been destroyed by bombing is tremendous.

"Pei", another instance of the Passive voice expressed in this way. See Dial. 39, sen. 15.

11. A. Mêng chün i ching chan shêng la, Tê Kuo ho Jih Pen i ching ta pai la. Ni hsiang Chiang lai hai hui fa shêng chan shih ma. 11. Now that the Allies are victorious, and Germany and Japan have been defeated, do you think there will be another war?

"Chan shêng"—fight-win, get the victory.

12. B. Pu kan shuo i ting. Tan shih chô i tz'u chan chêng yung ti wu ch'i, fei ch'ang ti ts'an pao. Yeh hsü ko kuo tou shou la chô chung k'ung hsia (ho), tsai pu kan hsüan chan liao. 12. One cannot say for certain. But the weapons used during this war have been so cruel and terrifying, that perhaps as each nation has been so intimidated by the terror, no one will dare to proclaim war again.

"Chô i tz'u"—this, this instance of . . .

"Fei ch'ang". "Fei" is not; "ch'ang" is usual, so extraordinary.

"Huo cho"—perhaps, possibly.

8. 略 侵略
Liao.² To plunder.
Ch'in-liao. Aggression.
10. 被 炸 彈 炸 彈 壞
Pei.⁴ Sign of passive.
Cha.² Smash, explode.
Tan.⁴ Bomb, bullet.
Cha-tan. Bomb.
Huai.⁴ Ruin, destroy, spoil.
11. 盟 軍 勝 敗
Mêng.² Covenant, alliance.
Mêng-chün. The Allied Forces.
Shêng.⁴ Victory, conquer.
Pai.⁴ Defeat, spoil.
12. 武 器 殘 暴 恐 嚇 宣 戰 宣 爭
Wu³-ch'i. Weapons.
Ts'an.² Injure, cruel.
Pao.⁴ Violent, fierce, cruel.
K'ung.³ To terrify, fearsome.
Hsia.⁴ Alarm, startle.
Hsüan.¹ To proclaim, make public.
Hsüan-chan. To declare war.
Chêng.¹ Wrangle, strive.

13. A. Wo hsiang hsin shih
chê yang, ping
ch'ieh chin nien
liu shih to kuo,
tsu chih la i ko
lien ho hui, yao
chin li ti wei
ch'ih shih chieh
ho p'ing.

"Hsiang hsin"—to believe. The use of "hsiang" here is probably an instance of its reflective use, forming the middle voice form of the verb.

14. B. Ting hao. Tan shih
wo k'an tsai pi
yao shih, hai tê
yung lien ho ti
chün li, ju hai
chün, lu chün,
k'ung chün ti li
liang, lai pang
chu, hui i ts'ai
neng yu mei man
ti hsiao kuo.

"Lien ho", or "lien pang"—connected or Allied States. Cf. 11, where we have "mêng chün"—the covenanted or allied forces.

"Mei-man". "Mei" is good, excellent; "man" is full, satisfactory.

15. A. T'ung i la. Hsien
tsai ti chêng chih
chu i hên fu tsa.
Yu min chu chu
i, kung ch'an chu
i, hai yu ch'i t'a
ti ko ming ti ho
shou chiu ti, ko
chung chêng chih
shang ti p'ai pieh.

"T'ung i"—same meaning, so agreed.

13. I believe that it will be so. Moreover more than sixty nations have organised a League, with the idea of exerting every effort to maintain the peace of the world.

14. Excellent. But I think that we shall have to use the united Forces, Navy, Army and Air Forces, in case of necessity, to help make it possible for this Assembly to function effectively.

15. Agreed. There exists at the present time a great variety of political theories. We have Democracy, Communism, and Progressive (revolutionary) and Conservative parties in Government circles.

13. 信 Hsin.⁴ To believe.
 相 Hsiang-hsin. To believe, have faith.
 組 Tsu.³ To organise, cord.
 織 Chih.¹ To weave, but with the preceding
 means to organise.
 且 Ch'ieh.³ Moreover, and.

14. 聯 Lien.³ To connect, unite.
 海 Hai.³ The sea.
 海軍 Hai-chün. The Navy.
 陸軍 Lü⁴-chun. The Army.
 空軍 K'ung-chün. The Air Force.
 美滿 Mei-man. Complete, satisfactory.
 效 Hsiao.⁴ Effect, effective.
 果 Hsiao-kuo. Result, effect.
 會議 Hui⁴-I.⁴ Assembly.
 助 Chu.⁴ Help, assist.

15. 治 Chih.⁴ To govern.
 政治 Chêng-chih. Political, Government.
 複 Fu.⁴ Double.
 雜 Tsa.² Confused, complicated.
 複雜 Fu-tsa. Complex, confused.
 產 Ch'an.³ Property.
 共產 Kung-ch'an. Communist (public or common property).
 主義 Chu-i. -ism, ideology.
 其他 Ch'i-t'a. Others, other.

"Chu i", equal to our -ism theory, ideology, etc.; *e.g.*, "San Min Chu I", the "Three People's Principles" of Sun Yat Sen.

"Fu-tsa". "Fu" is double; "tsa" confused, so complex, complicated, many and varied.

"Ko-ming", lit. change the decree, revolutionary.

16. B. Na tao pu yao chin.

Pu p'a chêng chih
shang ti tang p'ai
to, chih p'a chung
jên pu chu i
chêng chih shang
ti shih ch'ing.

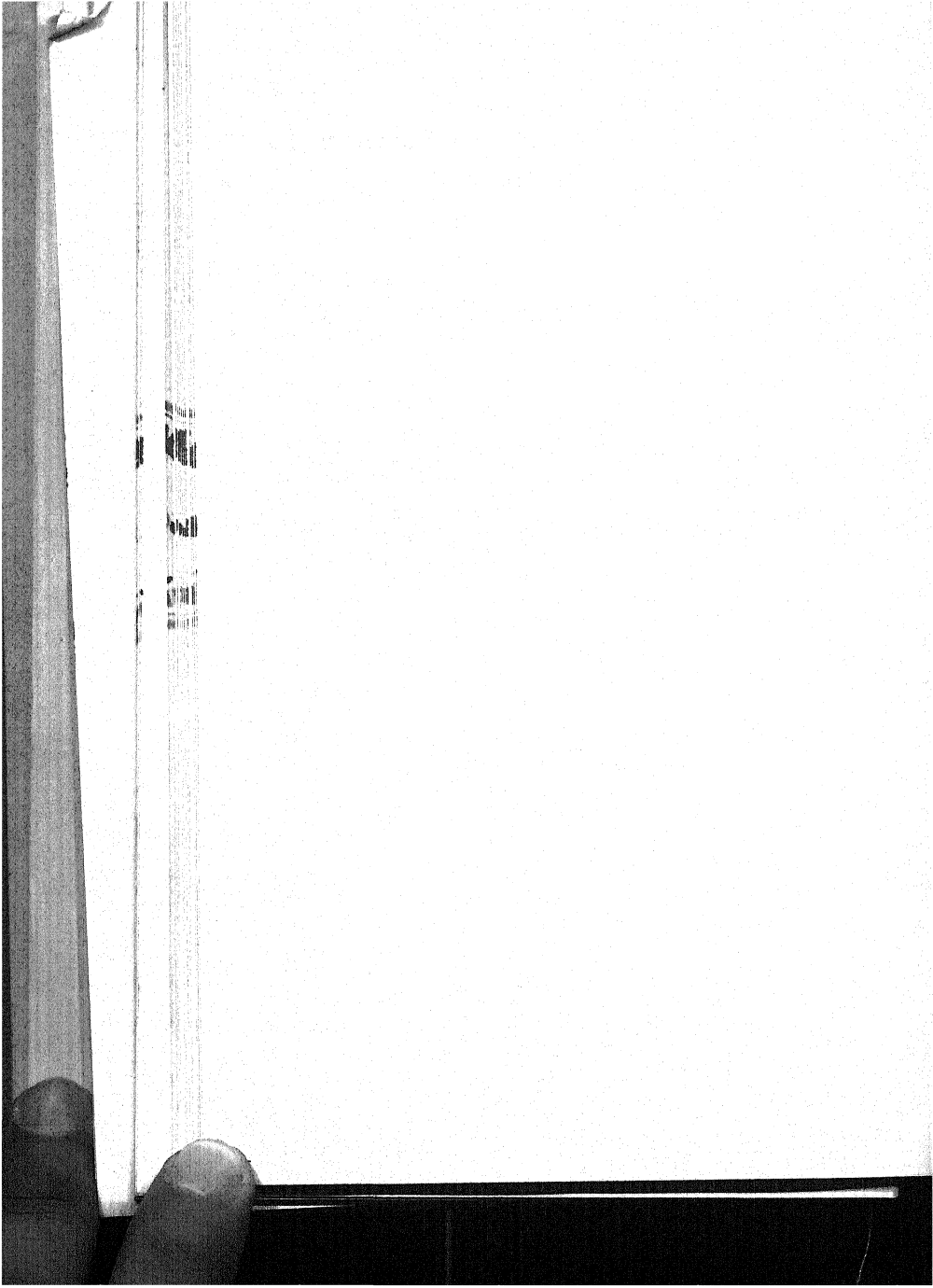
16. But that is unimportant. We need not fear multiple political parties. What is to be feared is that the mass of the people pay no attention to politics.

"Tang p'ai"—parties, factions,

"Chia" is used to indicate a certain class or cross-section of people: "chêng-chih-chia"—politicians; "wên-hsüeh-chia"—literary man, author ("wên" being letters, literature).

"Chu i" is a verb here, to pay attention or heed to. Cf. 15 above.

15. 革 命 Ko.² To change, alter.
 革 命 Ko-ming. Revolutionary (change the de-
 cree).
 守 舊 Shou-chiu. Conservative (guard the old).
 派 別 P'ai.⁴ Party, separate, branch.
 派 別 P'ai-pieh. Parties.
16. 黨 Tang.³ Party, association, faction.
 衆 人 Chung-jên. Everybody, the people.



CHINESE TEXT OF THE DIALOGUES

HINTS FOR THE STUDENT

As the aim of this book is to give the student a basic knowledge of both the written and spoken forms of the Chinese language, the forty dialogues have been prepared in Romanised and Chinese characters.

The student should use the Chinese characters from the very outset of his studies, and turn to the Romanised form only as a last resort.

Here are a few hints to aid the student in acquiring a mastery of the dialogues, *viz.* :—

1. Write out the sentences in the Chinese characters repeatedly.
2. Do not attempt to absorb too many sentences at any one session, especially at the beginning. Learn thoroughly what you do.
3. Constantly revise your past work.
4. As you write the sentences, repeat the separate sounds aloud. The actual hearing of the sounds is an additional aid to memory.
5. Frequently close the book and repeat the sentences without its aid.
6. Constantly compare your efforts at memorising with the text.
7. Vary the sentences by altering the pronouns, and the number and tense of the verbs.
8. Think of the "opposite" of adjectives, adverbs, etc., *e.g.*, "black" and "white"; "long" and "short"; "quickly" and "slowly", etc., and make new sentences along this line.
9. As you have opportunity of conversing, use what you have learnt. Do not be afraid of making mistakes.

Listen attentively to the response especially if it is from a Chinese. This will often be preceded by a repetition of your question, probably in better "Chinese" !

10. Repeat the reply to yourself, and write down in a note-book anything that is new.
11. Finally, let me repeat advice given in the Introduction. Think of each sentence as a whole, as representing an "idea", and do not be too anxious to analyse the sentence into its component parts. Ability to do this will come naturally as you acquire more of the language.

第一課

354

TEACH YOURSELF CHINESE

- 1 門口有人。 2 誰？ 3 我。 4 是誰？ 5 不知道。
- 6 我去看一看。 7 不用，我叫隆福去。 8 隆福。
- 9 哎。 10 來吧。 11 哎。 12 門口有人，你去看一看是誰。
- 13 哎。 14 先生貴姓？ 15 我姓李，王先生在家嗎？
- 16 在家，請進來。 17 好。 18 李先生來了。 19 請進來吧。
- 20 呀，李先生好哎。 21 好，王先生張先生都好哎。
- 22 好好，請坐請坐。 23 謝謝。 24 泡茶。 25 說話，就來。
- 26 請李先生喝茶。 27 不敢當。 28 再坐一會兒。
- 29 對不住，有人等着，我得回去。 30 不送不送。
- 31 那兒的話。 32 再見，再見。

第二課

- 1 王先生來了。 2 請他進來。 3 王先生好呀？ 4 好，太太喫過飯沒有？ 5 喫了。先生喫了嗎？ 6 還沒有喫。或偏過了。 7 請先生坐。或先生請坐。 8 請太太先坐。 9 先生太客氣。 10 不客氣，是理當的。 11 可以給先生泡茶。或沏茶。 12 哎，預備好了。 13 請先生喝茶。 14 謝謝。 15 中國話，我不大懂。 16 太太幾時到敝國來的？ 17 我是上月才到貴國來的。 18 太太的中國話說得好。 19 過獎過獎。 20 真的實在好。 21 中國話容易學，不容易學？ 22 並不太難。 23 我願意把中國話學好。 24 我盡心的教你就是了。

第三課

- 1 這個是什麼？
2 那是一本書。
3 是什麼書？
4 是一本字典。
5 那個東西叫什麼？
6 那是一管鉛筆。
7 我們可以做什麼？
8 我們可以唸書。
9 我們可以唸什麼書？
10 我們可以唸這個讀本。
11 請先生唸、我聽。
12 那個法子不大好。
13 那麼先生先唸、我就跟着唸、行不行？
14 行、這個法子很好。
15 要我唸錯了、請先生告訴我。
16 理當理當。
17 現在唸完了書、我們還可以做什麼？
18 我們可以寫字。
19 好、我喜歡寫字。
20 會寫字不會？
21 不會、可是我願意學。
22 那麼、我就盡心的教你。
23 寫字用什麼東西？

24 我們用一管筆、一張紙、一塊墨、和一方硯台、再加上一點
 兒水、研墨。 25 我把這些東西拿來、我們就寫字。
 26 好、我們寫字吧。

第四課

1 這個東西叫什麼？ 2 那是一個茶盃(碗)。 3 茶盃
 和茶碗有什麼分別？ 4 茶盃有把兒、茶碗沒有把兒。

5 那是什麼東西？ 6 那是一個(把)茶壺。 7 茶壺和

水壺一樣不一樣？ 8 不一樣、茶壺是泡茶用的、水壺是

燒水用的。 9 這些煙捲兒是誰的？ 10 那些煙捲兒

是我的。 11 有洋火(火柴)沒有？ 12 有、你不要？

13 不要、我不喫(抽)煙。

14 這兩管筆是你的嗎？

15 這

一管鋼筆是我的。

16 那一管呢？

17 那一管毛筆是不

是你的呀？

18 不是我的、是我朋友的。

19 那一瓶墨

水也是他的嗎？

20 不是他的、是先生的。

21 這些煙

捲兒好不好？

22 不大好。

23 你在那兒買的？

24 在

市場上買的。

25 在這裡有賣的沒有？

26 在這裡沒

有賣的。

27 在那裡有賣的呢？

28 上大街上去、或者

可以買。

29 咱們倆可以上街去買幾個吧。

30 好、咱

們一塊兒去。

第五課

1 他來了沒有？

2 他沒有來。

3 你來不來？

4 我

來。 5 昨天他們來了麼？

6 他們來了。

7 明天你

們來不來？

8 明天我們不來。

9 今天你去不去？

10 我去。

11 明天你回來不回來？

12 明天不回來。

13 明天她回去不回去？

14 是的、明天她回去。

15 你

上那裡去？

16 我上街去。

17 我也去。

18 你去幹

什麼？

19 我去買東西。

20 買什麼東西？

21 買一頂

帽子和一雙鞋。

22 到過北京沒有？

23 沒有到過。

24 起來、我們走吧。

25 等一等、得拿幾個錢。

26 那不

要緊、我帶得有錢。 27 可是借人的錢不大好。 28 那要看情形怎樣。 29 有的時候好、有的時候不好、是不是。 30 對了。

第六課

1 太太叫我吧。 2 是的、叫廚子和看門的(門房)來、我要和你們說幾句話。 3 他們就來。哎、來了。 4 坐下吧。 5 不用坐、我們站着的好。 6 今天我很忙、要大家幫忙。 7 太太叫我們做什麼、我們照辦就是了。 8 先把喫飯的家具拿來、我要看一看。 9 太太是叫我們把刀子、叉子、調匙和勺子、都要拿來嗎? 10 是的、也要拿茶盃、碗、

碟子、和盤子。

11 這些東西拿來了、叫我們放在那裡呢。

12 把他們都放在桌子上。

13 太太今天晚上不是請客

嗎？

14 不是晚上請客、是今天下午請幾個人來喝茶。

15 那麼太太得叫廚房多烤麪包和點心。

16 黃油和菓

子醬多不多？

17 這些都夠十來個客人喫。

18 家具

也夠十來個人用嗎？

19 不大夠、要是刀子叉子不夠的

時候、可以預備筷子叫他們使。

20 只怕有的人不會使

筷子。

21 那倒沒有法子了。

第七課

1 先生好嗎？

2 謝謝、先生你好。(P) 承問承問。

3 先

生(您)喫了飯沒有? 4 喫了,先生(您)喫了嗎?還沒有喫。

5 偏過了。(P)

6 貴姓。(P) 姓什麼?(C)

7 賤或敝姓王。(P)

我姓王。(C)

8 台甫。

9 草字清長。(P)

10 名字叫什

麼或什麼名字。(C)

11 名叫清長或清長。(C)

12 先生多

大年紀或先生多大歲數?

13 五十五或五十五歲。

14 先生貴庚或先生貴甲子。(P)

15 先生高壽?

16 兄弟

還小、虛度了五十五歲。(P)

17 先生貴國或貴國是那

國或貴國是那裡?(P)

18 不敢當、敝國英國。(P)

19 先生

是那裡來的?(C) 20 我是南京來的。

21 先生貴處或府

上在那裡?(P)

22 不敢當、敝處北平。

23 北平離這裡多

遠?

24 三百多里路。

25 先生往那裡去?

26 我上漢

口去。 27 閣下是走水路、還是走旱路來的呢？ 28 我
沒有走水路、也沒有走旱路、我是坐飛機來的。 29 走了幾
天的工夫？ 30 一共四天的工夫。 31 哎呀、非常的快。

第八課

1 家裡有幾個人？ 2 統共六個。 3 父母還在嗎？或父
母都在不在？ 4 父親在、母親不在了。 5 令尊高壽？ (P)
6 八十二歲。 7 令堂去世是多大年紀？ (P) 8 五十六歲。
9 可惜可惜。 10 先生有寶眷沒有？ (P) 11 還沒有成
家。 (P) 12 先生訂了婚沒有？ 13 訂了。 14 先生結了
婚嗎？ 15 結了婚了。 16 先生有幾個孩子？ 17 四個。

18 男[？]的有幾個。(位^(P)) 19 兩個男[？]的、兩個女[？]的。 20 好

福氣。 21 托福托福。(P) 22 先生令[？]耶幾位。(P) 23 小

犬兩個。(P) 24 令媛有幾位。(P) 24a 小女兩個。 25 先生、

貴幹[？]或先生有什麼差事[？]或先生辦什麼公幹[？]或先生幹什麼

事。(C) 26 我是個商人或我做買賣。 27 先生奉了教沒

有。 28 在教。 29 是耶穌教、還是天主教呢。[？] 30 我是

耶穌教(或基督教)。[？] 31 這裡有耶穌教堂或這裡有福音

堂。 32 有牧師女教士在這裡嗎。[？] 33 有女教士、沒有

牧師。 34 先生什麼時候到的中國。[？] 35 我是三個月以

前來的。 36 哎呀先生說的中國話真好。 37 過獎過

獎。我不過會講幾句。

38 再見再見。

第九課

A 數目字

1 一。

2 二。兩₃

三。

4 四。

5 五。

6 六。

7 七。

8 八。

9 九。

10 十。

11 兩個人。

12 兩本書。

13 十一。

14 十七。

15 二十。

16 八十。

17 一百。

18 六百。

19 九百。

20 一百一十(或一百二)。

21 一百一十二。

22 一百一十五。

23 一百七。

24 七百六十八。

25 這個數目字翻出來是

怎樣的唸呢?

26 一百零五。

27 二百零九。

28 兩千

或二千。

29 一千零八十九或一千八十九。

30 三千九

百零三。

31 三千九百三。

32 一萬。

33 一萬一千零

四十二。

34 三萬零五十六。

35 四萬零七個或四萬

零零七。

36 第一(頭一個)。

37 第十八。

38 第一百三

十五。

39 一半。

40 十分之一。

41 四分之三。

42 八分之七。

B 1 在地下有幾件東西？

2 等一等我

數數吧。

3 東西夠數不夠數呢？

4 我看少(差)短着

一個。

5 那麼他們必需補上。

6 今天是星期(禮拜)

幾？

7 今天是星期(禮拜)三。

8 今天初幾？今天十

幾？今天二十幾？

9 今天是初八。

10 頭一個月叫正

月、末一個月(或第十二個月)叫臘月。

11 其餘那幾個月

叫什麼。

12 二月、三月、四月、一直到十一月、都是一樣(都

是照例的)。

13 可是十一月也叫冬月。

14 年底是什

麼意思。

15 年底就是臘月最後幾天的意思。

16 過

年是什麼意思。

17 過年就是新年頭一天的意思。

18 把這些玩藝兒分開給孩子玩。

19 把這些糖也分給

他們。

20 可以每個人給他一份。

21 我已經分了兩次。

第十課

1 你身上帶了表沒有？

2 沒有但是對面兒有鐘。

3 你看有幾點鐘。

4 我近視眼、看不清楚。

5 我看

見了，現在是(有)一點鐘。

6 哎，我約了一個朋友十二

點半鐘見面，已經耽誤了。

7 也許他還在等你。

8 恐怕他等不到我，走了。

9 現在幾點鐘？

10 一點

過一刻(或一點一刻)。

11 要是十二點一刻，我還可以

趕得上。

12 要是十二點差一刻，那就更好。

13 現在

幾點鐘。

14 一點二十五分，

15 那麼，再等十分鐘，就

是兩點差二十五分，是不是？

16 不錯，不錯。

17 去年

夏天你上那兒避暑去的？

18 去年我們那兒也沒有去，

前年我們到嶗山去避暑的。

19 你從嶗山回來以後，做

了什麼？

20 什麼也沒有做，我在家裡閒着。

21 從前

你不是愛打網球嗎？

22 那個時候、打網球、踢足球都是

我喜歡的。

23 那麼、你後天來和我打網球好嗎？

24 大

後天行不行？

25 不敢說、因為前天我和一個朋友約好、

大後天和他打牌。

26 那麼、就是後天吧。

27 好、你帶

兩個球拍子來。

第十一課

1 你有表沒有？

2 沒有、但是我家裡有一座鐘。

3 那

個鐘對不對？

4 不對、那個鐘走得慢。

5 我的表走

得快。

6 那麼、得把快慢慢改一改。

7 改了也沒有用。

8 怎樣沒有用呢？

9 我的表走的沒有準。

10 那麼、

你的表得修理。 11 不錯，可是不知道誰能替我修理。

12 我認得一個鐘表匠。 13 好，你拿我的表，叫他看看，好

不好。 14 可以，不過今天上午我沒有工夫。 15 下午

你有工夫沒有？ 16 不一定，你把表給我，要是後半天有

工夫，我就給你送去。 17 勞駕勞駕。 18 那沒有什麼。

19 今天晚上，我請幾個朋友喫飯，你能來不能來？

20 不敢當，我還有事。 21 你最好能來。我請你陪客？

22 喫飯要幾個鐘頭？ 23 大概用兩個鐘頭。 24 喫了

飯以後要打牌嗎？ 25 隨便，我自己倒想下幾盤棋。

26 你們下棋，大家可以出去逛一逛。 27 那倒不行，女客

可以做針線、男客喫煙譚譚吧。

28 咱們不到半夜以前

不會分手的。

29 十一黑鐘以前回去就好。

第十二課

1 把窗戶關上。

2 恐怕關不上。

3 怎麼關不上。

4 有毛病。

5 有什麼毛病。

6 這幾天天氣發潮、叫

窗戶框子走了縫。

7 那麼得叫木匠來修理修理。

8 是的、我叫李司夫來看一看。

9 前門鎖上了沒有？

10 鎖上了或鎖不上、那個鎖上了銹。

11 拿鑰匙來、試

一試。

12 最好先塗一點兒油。

13 你說的對、先塗一

點兒油吧。

14 把後門開開吧。

15 那個門我已經開了。

16 不要再關上。

17 要是把門敞開、恐怕小偷進來偷東

西。

18 可不是嗎、不如把門關上。

19 這個瓶子的塞

子、我取不出來。

20 那是因爲沒有合式的東西、得用一

個螺絲轉。

21 把這個箱子(匣子、盒子、筒子)打開。

22 開這個箱子很費事。

23 怎樣費事呢？

24 釘子太

多、全都上銹了。

25 那個好辦。你上王先生那裡去借

他的鉗子。

26 要是王先生不在家、問誰去借呢？

27 他家裡總有用人、就向他借好了。

28 是的、我就去。

29 你經過園子的時候、看看水井蓋上了沒有。

30 我今

天清早打完了水、就把井蓋上了。

31 你那幾個桶子都

盛(倒)滿了水嗎。

32 家裡所有的桶子、我都盛滿了水。

33 園子裡那個大水缸裝的是髒水、你倒出去了沒有？

34 我把那個髒水、完全倒出去了、一點兒也沒有留。

35 我把一件事情忘記了。

36 是什麼事情？

37 咱們

井裡邊的水、是苦的、還是甜的呢？

38 是甜的、可以用來

煮飯泡茶。

第十三課

1 把這一張桌子搬到樓上去。

2 一個人搬不動、得叫

幾個人來幫忙。

3 要幾個人幫忙？

4 至少要三個

人。

5 雇三個人來抬桌子、經濟不上算。

6 可真不

上算、不如雇他們一天的工夫、還可以叫他們做別的事情。

7 那是自然的、還有什麼事叫他們做呢？ 8 事情倒不

少、他們可以打掃院子、收拾廚房。 9 雇這種人、一天得

給多少工錢？ 10 這樣的人都算小工、一天給他六毛錢

就行。 11 雇兩個人不夠嗎？ 12 不夠、這個桌子很重、

兩個人抬不動。 13 那麼就雇三個人吧、他們幾點鐘上

工？ 14 早上六點鐘上工、晚上六點鐘下工。 15 休息

幾個鐘頭？ 16 中午他們要歇一個半鐘頭。 17 就這

樣的辦吧。 18 把這幾把椅子、搬到那邊去。 19 那邊

沒有空地、我想放在外頭好。 20 可是把椅子老丟

在外邊不大好，還不如拿到地蔭子裡面去。 21 我想起

一個好法子。 22 是什麼法子？ 23 先把這一條長

桌子，搬到客房裡去。 24 是的，以後再做什麼呢？

25 再把這一條凳子掉過來，就有地方放這幾把椅子了。

26 是的，就這樣的辦吧。 27 先生得先讓我把手子上的

東西搬走。 28 自然，再換一張乾淨的桌布。 29 晚上

請客不請客？ 30 請四位客，所以要收拾飯廳。 31 大

司夫曉不曉得？ 32 曉得，我昨天吩咐了他。 33 那麼，

我就好好兒的預備。 34 好，地毯要掃一掃，席子要翻過

來，器具要洗乾淨，端飯的時候要伶俐，什麼都要整整齊齊

的。
35 是的、聽先生的吩咐。

第十四課

1 這個東西有多重。
2 一石九斤半。
3 請你給我

稱一稱這個包裹、沒有過重吧。
4 過了重了。
5 究

竟有多重。
6 八斤七兩八錢。
7 這個口袋裡有多

少糧食。
8 有一石六斗七升。
9 再談一談尺寸吧。

10 那倒容易明白、十分就是一寸、十寸就是一尺、十尺就是

一丈。
11 可是有的時候、我聽人說、幾步幾步、這是什

麼意思。
12 哎、是的、一步就是五尺。
13 那麼、兩步

也是一丈、是不是。
14 不錯、還得知道一百八十丈、就是

一里。 15 那麼、三里就是差不多和一英里一樣遠。

13

16 差不多。

17 做一條褲子、得用多少材料。

18 那看

材料的寬狹。

19 比方說、材料是二尺寬、用多少。

20 二尺寬的材料、得用一丈二尺的布。

21 一個人跑一

小時(二點鐘)能跑多遠。

22 全世界最快的記錄、就是

十英里。

23 哎喲、一個人想破了這個記錄、很費事。

24 不錯、不錯。

第十五課

1 明天中午我要請三個客。

2 太太想喫什麼飯。

3 先預備幾個小碟子。

4 要肉湯不要。

5 要鷄湯。

6 太太喫什麼肉？現在羊肉貴一點兒。

7 這幾天天氣

熱，喫涼菜也行，比如火腿、鷄片、牛舌頭等等。

8 再加

土豆、菠菜。

9 可是得把菜煮熟啦。

10 太太也要

喫甜的嗎？

11 是的，預備冰淇淋和點心吧。

12 要奶

餅和餅乾不要？

13 要，末了還要喝咖啡。

14 太太不

要水果嗎？

15 買蘋果、梨、葡萄吧。

16 還要喝酒嗎？

17 黃酒就行，也要呂宋煙。

18 也許有一兩位客人是戒

酒的，最好先預備幾瓶汽水。

19 不錯。

20 擺桌子得

找一個幫忙的。

21 你可以找老媽到廚房幫忙好了。

22 另外預備水煙袋，也許有人想抽水煙。

23 桌子上也

要擺糖、牛奶、鹽、胡椒麪、醋、醬油、和芥末吧。

24 牙籤

也不要忘了。

第十六課

1 街上有洋車(或黃包車)沒有?

2 有是有、不過不很多。

3 你趕快去給我雇一輛。

4 太太上那裡去?

5 我

要上李太太那裡去。

6 太太要雇來回車嗎?

7 雇

洋車是論里數、還是論鐘點呢?

8 多半是論鐘點。

9 那麼、最好雇他三個鐘頭。

10 太太要我和他講價錢

嗎?

11 一個鐘頭、應該給他多少錢?

12 我說不準、一

個鐘頭、大概該給他五毛錢。

13 我以爲五毛錢太多了

一點兒、你和他講價的時候、最好先少給他一點兒。

14 那不用說、我們做買賣、就是這樣。

15 可是我聽說

中國商界、現在都是「言不二價」。

16 大商店多半都是

定價、可是小買賣還是照舊講價。

17 那麼、你快一點兒

去、價錢越少越好。

18 那不用說、我盡力就是了。

19 也不要耽誤工夫、快快的回來吧。

20 我盡力的辦、

能早回來、我就早回來。

第十七課

1 趙小姐你認得不認得？

2 認是認得、可是不大熟識。

3 她多大歲數、你知道不知道？

4 不知道、我猜她是十

六歲上下。

5 她的父母都在世嗎？

6 她父親還在

不過母親早去世了。

7 她早幾年去的世、你記得不記得？

8 不大清楚、我想她是五六年前去的世。

9 那麼、趙小

姐是可憐的。

10 實在可憐。

11 她家裡一共幾個人？

12 通共八個人。

13 他弟兄幾位？

14 三個弟兄、三個

姊妹。

15 趙小姐是行幾？

16 她行二、她有一個哥哥、

兩個兄弟、兩個妹妹。

17 那麼、照你的話、她也沒有姐

姐、也沒有母親。

18 不錯、她早就擔負家裡邊兒的責任、

也很懂家事。

19 趙小姐跟人訂了婚沒有？

20 不知

道、我可以給你打聽。

21 我很喜歡托你替我辦這件事。

22 盼望我能辦得妥當、不給你丟臉就是了。

23 咱們倆

是多年的老朋友、你也很懂禮貌、我看你不會叫我丟臉的。

24 豈敢豈敢、可是她親戚不少、不得罪一兩個人、是不容易
哪。 25 無論如何、你不要說謊、要是你碰見什麼難處、恐

怕過不去的時候、你回來詳詳細細的告訴我、就得了。

26 你那樣的出主意、我很佩服、我不會對你失信的。

27 好、事情辦成了、我就好好兒的謝謝你。

28 別提那

個、我不過是盡力幫朋友的忙吧了。

第十八課

1 這個東西好。

2 但是這個比那個好。

3 所以我

們說這個更好。

4 據我看、這是最好的東西。

5 也

可以說是頂(挺)好。

6 這個布不好、可是和那個一般

好。

7 這樣的布、不如那個好。

8 也可以說、這個

更不好。

9 還有一個說法、就是這個比那個壞。

10 可是頭一個說法比第二個說法強。

11 拿這一塊布

和那一塊比一比。

12 要叫我比一比那一方面呢?

13 先比一比長短、再把布的好歹比一比、再比一比顏色、掉

色不掉色。

14 這個布太貴、我買不起。

15 這個箱

子太重、我挪不動。

16 就是我們倆想抬也抬不動。

17 這裡有根棍子、不過是太粗、我們拿不住。

18 我們

買的東西太多、一個小車裝不下。

19 貨物實在太多、

兩個馬車也拉不動。

20 我們回到家的時候、恐怕一個

屋裡也放不下這些東西。

21 把他們堆起來、也許就裝

得下了。

22 可是得小心、把東西堆起太高、恐怕夠不着。

23 不過站在椅子上、或是小台子上、就夠着了。

24 有

台子這麼高、也就行。

25 可是也得看台子的寬狹怎

樣。

26 要是你比我先到家、可以和用人商量、怎麼辦、

怎麼好。

27 要是我比你晚到怎樣呢？

28 要是我

比你先到家、必是因為你走錯了路。

29 那麼、誰先到、

誰辦就是了。

第十九課

1 掌櫃的、恭喜發財。

2 托福、沒有什麼生意。

3 我

要買綢子、有沒有？

4 有、先生要什麼樣兒的綢子、要

好的、還是要次一點兒的呢？

5 要好的、綢子是怎樣買

的、是論尺、還是論斤？

6 綢子是論尺買的、茶是論斤、

信封是論個買的。

7 領教領教、讓我看看幾樣綢子吧。

8 這個綢子頂好、材料耐久、也不掉色。

9 多少錢一尺？

10 七毛錢一尺。

11 未免稍微貴了一點兒、還有比這個賤

一點兒的（便宜一點兒的）沒有？

12 有是有、可是別忘了「一

分價錢一分貨」。

13 我雖是捨不得花那麼多的錢、不過這

個綢子的材料跟顏色都很好、給我量一丈五吧。

14 裁

縫做好了、太太穿上身、一定是很好看的。

15 櫃上有多

少人？

16 有二十多、都是懶的。

17 拿尺來量一量這

個綢子。

18 你有沒有做蚊帳的材料。

19 有哪、上中

下三等都有、太太喜歡那一種呢？

20 看看中等的吧、這

個材料、也可以做簾子嗎？

21 分量輕了一點兒、再重

一點兒的材料好。

22 我還要幾丈耐使一點兒的、做鋪蓋。

23 那倒好辦、我們也有很結實的布、做縴子很合式。

24 教我看看吧、可是你們快要關店門、不是嗎。

25 那沒

關係、關了店門還得清算當天的賬

第二十課

1 要一雙鞋。 2 請坐、要的是幾號。 3 大概是八

號。 4 先生要皮鞋、還是布鞋呢。 5 要皮鞋、穿布鞋

不能擋泥水。 6 不錯、可是在家裡閒着、穿布鞋是很舒

服的。 7 先把皮鞋拿來、試一試吧。 8 這一雙、我看大

小合式。 9 太緊、再試一雙大一點兒的。 10 好、這雙

正合式、舒服不舒服。 11 舒服、我就拿這一雙。在那兒

可以買領子、領帶和帽子。 12 在對面兒興隆記商店。

13 你能夠把這雙鞋送到我的家裡去嗎。 14 行、先生府

上在那兒。 15 上馬街四十六號。 16 那不遠、我就打

發一個夥計、給先生送去。

17 叫他坐洋車、我給他開車費。

18 不必、給他幾個酒錢就得了。

第二十一課

1 你看一看這個地毯乾淨不乾淨？

2 這屋子太暗、我

看不大清楚。

3 把燈點上、就看得清楚了。

4 這一盞

燈裡沒有油、點不亮。

5 家裡沒有安電燈、實在可惜。

6 不要緊、我就點一枝蠟燭。

7 有洋火沒有？

8 我

想口袋裡有一盒、可是找不着啦。

9 那就沒有法子。

10 我就把地毯拿到外邊兒去抖一抖。

11 好、我就給你

幫忙把毯子捲起來（或疊起來）。

12 現在天氣涼、家裡

應當生火。

13 院子裡有炭(煤)沒有？

14 一點兒也

沒有，今年還沒有買啦。

15 廚房有柴火沒有？

16 有，我就放在火爐裡去點。

17 沒有洋火怎樣辦呢？

18 我上隔壁人家去借去。

19 快去吧，我身上覺得冷，一

回來就生火吧。

20 太陽快下去的時候，人人都覺得冷。

21 你看那櫃子裡面有絨毯，拿出兩牀來。

22 先生躺一

躺，多蓋上一點兒，再多喝開水，出一點兒汗，過兩天就好啦。

23 開開那個抽屜，裏邊兒有發汗葯，我喫三兩顆，再把燈

滅了，我要睡覺。

第二十二課

TEACH YOURSELF CHINESE

390

1 拿熱水來、我要洗臉。

2 先生不要洗澡嗎？

3 恐

怕熱水不夠洗澡。

4 也夠了、水很熱、添點冷水就不

大離。

5 可是我也得刮臉、用冷水不行。

6 先生

渴了嗎？我把一盃涼開水拿到樓上去了。

7 明天我要早

早的起來、你五點鐘來叫我。

8 我看先生乏了、還是

早點睡的好。

9 我明天起來的時候、要給我送溫水、洗

手。

10 昨天你把牀沒有鋪好、我沒有睡好覺。

11 對

不起先生、昨天事情太多、忙不過來。

12 要是你的事

情太多、幹不過來的時候、我就該給你找一個幫忙的。

13 叫先生費心、不過還有一件事情和先生說。

14 是什

麼事情、你說吧。

15 現在城裡頭生活程度太高、過日子

很難。

16 你一個月掙多少錢？

17 八塊錢一個月、不

夠用。

18 那麼、我就給你加三塊錢一個月、行不行。

19 勉強、謝謝。

第二十三課

1 我就把你天天應當辦的事說給你聽、每禮拜一、要洗衣服。
2 把不乾淨的衣服送到洗衣店去、行不行？

3 教洗衣店洗衣服、不上算、乾淨的衣服送回來的時候、全是窟窿。
4 那麼、叫裁縫補一補。
5 是的、你看這

一件汗衫擗的地方太多。

6 洗衣店的工人不加小心、

不如家裡洗的好。

7 每禮拜二要收拾家裡的房屋、樓

上和樓下。

8 收拾客房和洗澡房、是我的事、收拾飯廳

和廚房、是厨子的事、是不是。

9 另外還有書房和廁

所、這些歸誰辦呢？

10 平常這些都是看門的或是馬夫

幹的。

11 無論誰幹、家裡總得要乾淨整齊。

12 聽先

生的吩咐。

13 每禮拜六要擦銀子和玻璃器具、全房子

的地毯要抖一抖、或者挂在院子裡揮一揮。

14 這樣做、

灰塵很大、叫鄰居不喜歡。

15 那不相干、家裡得講究衛

生。

16 各人要講究各人的衛生、但是可不要妨碍人家

的衛生。

17 你說的有理，現在不要多說話，幹你的去吧。

18 先生給我一塊乾淨的抹布，我就去抹桌子、椅子、鏡子
一切的傢具。

19 好，也不要忘了抹傢具的時候，要把窗

戶開開換換空氣。

20 天氣好的時候，可以這樣辦，括

風下雨的時候，恐怕不行。

第二十四課

1 大司夫來算賬。

2 太太稍微等一等，我拿賬簿和

鉛筆。

3 這個禮拜，你買了什麼東西，慢慢的說吧。

4 這個禮拜，我買了羊肉、白菜、地蛋、紅蘿蔔、雞蛋、花生。

5 沒有買牛肉、鴨子、野鷄嗎？

6 這幾天市場上沒有這些東西，後天趕集也許有賣的。

7 多日沒有喫白菜花，不是沒有呢。
8 有是有，可是

價錢太大，我不敢買。
9 大概因為不是時候，留心

價落的時候就買。
10 太太喜歡喫生菜嗎？現在又

多又便宜。
11 喜歡喫，可是得小心，生菜總得先用開

水洗過，才敢喫。
12 今天我身上不舒服，發燒，恐怕

傷了風了。
13 我請大夫（醫生）來看一看，好不好？

14 不要請西醫，請中國先生給我開方子就行。
15 可是

賬還沒有算，統共花了多少錢？
16 統共花了十一塊

五毛六。
17 恐怕這個賬算錯了，你再算算。
18 我看沒

有算錯、我還剩下兩塊七。

19 恐怕你腦經不清楚、我

看你還下欠九毛。

20 也許太太算的對、我的腦子就

是昏一點兒。

第二十五課

1 明天我要出門。

2 先生上那兒去？

3 打算上普

天池去看一個朋友。

4 好、我願意陪您去、行不行？

5 但是你要帶你自己在路上喫的東西。

6 那不成問題、

先生幾點鐘起身？

7 在清早太陽剛上來的時候動身。

8 先生坐轎車、還是騎牲口呢？

9 也不坐轎車、也不

騎馬、我們步行吧。

10 那太費事、怎麼不坐汽車呢？

11 坐公共汽車不舒服、路道不平、顛簸的厲害。 12 普天

池離這裡多麼遠？ 13 大約十五里路。 14 那倒不遠、

步行也可以。 15 可是可以、但是必須帶一個冷熱水瓶子、

裝滿了開水去喝。 16 那個我倒忘不了、還有什麼該帶

的呢？ 17 也帶一個雨傘或雨衣「伏天肯下雨」。 18 先

生預料得好、我照辦就是了。 19 我們已經跑了十來

里路、我們在旅館停一會兒好不好？ 20 這條路上的旅

店不怎麼好、倒不如坐在路旁歇一會兒。 21 同意、我

們也可以喝一口水、喫幾塊餅乾。 22 哎、老先生、倒普

天池還有幾里路？ 23 不遠、還有五六里路。 24 前面

兒的路、好走不好走？

25 好走、不過村子外邊兒有幾個

泥坑就是了。

26 村子裡邊兒有飯館沒有？

27 沒有

好的、賣的也不過是家常便飯。

28 飯館好找不好找

呢？
29 好找、一進村門、在路東的就是了。

30 勞駕

勞駕。

31 沒有什麼、理當的。

第二十六課

1 這個車是往北京開的車不是？

2 不是、這是往漢口

開的車。

3 往北京開的火車、是在那一個月台呢？

4 是第三號月台。

5 先生要打那一等的票？

6 這

一趟是快車還是慢車呢？

7 是慢車、可是頭二等都有。

8 挂的飯(餐)車沒有?

9 沒有飯(餐)車,可是有廚房。

10 車上能買什麼飯?

11 能買牛肉排、鷄子湯、炒鷄蛋等

等。

12 可以,找腳夫給我搬東西。

13 搬行李有一定

的價錢嗎?

14 兩個銅子一件,是定價,另外還得給幾個

酒錢。

15 那麼,我們上車吧。

16 一路平安。

17 替

我問候家裡邊兒的人。

18 火車是幾點鐘到北京?

19 那得看路上通不通。

20 這幾天貨車很多。

21 客

人也是不少。

22 看光景,時局像要變更。

23 不錯,運

的隊伍也是多啦。

24 先生聽的什麼消息(新聞)?

25 沒有什麼可靠的消息,不過謠言倒不少。

26 盼望再

不要打戰、老百姓是苦極了。

27 軍閥不管那些、只打算

擴充自己的地盤。

28 哎喲、才過的是通縣、還有兩個車

站就到了北京。

29 跟先生談話、時間不覺得過的那

麼快。

30 領過教不少。

31 那兒的話呢。

第二十七課

1 幾點鐘開船。

2 聽說六點鐘開船。

3 現在幾點

鐘。

4 三點半鐘。

5 那麼、時候還早。

6 不錯、

但是開船以前、我有些事情幹。

7 你打了船票沒有？

8 打了票、不過行李還沒有收拾好啦。

9 那麼樣、你

心裡自然有一點兒着急。

10 是的、幸虧有幾個朋友幫

忙。

11 好，先生趕快去辦吧，我不再耽誤您的工夫。

12 咱們船上再見。

13 再見。

14 先生暈船不暈船？

15 頭幾天，我覺得不很舒服，但是船上慣了，就不覺得怎樣。

16 先生到過外國沒有？

17 英國、法國、美國、

我都到過。

18 先生會說法國話嗎？

19 會說幾句通

常的話？

20 服那邊兒的水土不服？

21 將就吧。

22 那邊兒天氣怎麼樣？

23 夏天不像中國熱，冬天不像

中國冷。

24 先生也喫得慣法國飯嗎？

25 法國飯沒

有中國飯的滋味，不過喫上幾天，也就對付。

26 哎，

今天刮大風，船上不大穩當。

27 你看波浪怎樣的翻騰

起來、船搖擺得厲害。

28 別怕、只賸下三天的海路、船

就到了碼頭。

29 希望越早越好。

30 放心吧。

第二十八課

1 他跑的太快、我趕不上。

2 這個磚牆沒有縫兒、螺

絲轉鑽不進去。

3 這個水壺已經盛滿、再也裝不進

了。

4 我的事情太多、辦不到了（或忙不過來）。

5 你

要記得、俗語說的好、「忙者不會、會者不忙」。

6 這個桶

子裝的太緊、我拿不出來。

7 今天我帶的東西太多、賣

不出去。

8 這一塊木頭太硬、釘子也打不進去。

9 心

裡面的意思多、可是說不出來。

10 中國人有句俗話說

「茶壺煮鷄蛋，倒不出來」就是這個意思。

11 我的耳朵

聾了，他說話，我聽不出來。

12 他的眼睛瞎了，他什麼

也看不見。

13 他是近視眼，看不大清楚。

14 他是

個啞吧，話也不會說，人家說話，他也聽不見。

15 要是

瞎了眼，什麼也看不見。

16 他的胳膊發麻，你摩他他

也不覺得。

17 他失了知覺。

18 這一件衣裳太髒，我

洗不乾淨。

19 多使胰子，大大的使勁，就可以洗乾淨了。

第二十九課

1 天冷，我們穿棉袍或外套。

2 你們不穿皮襖嗎？

3 皮襖倒穿不起。

4 年輕的人喜歡洋裝。

5 那是

自然的。

6 夏天多穿夏布、綢子。

7 冬天穿皮鞋。

夏天穿布鞋。

8 戴的是草帽或遮陽帽。

9 女人的

衣裳、摩登一點兒才好。

10 袖子、掛子、都是短的。

11 襪子現在是很長。

12 學生有穿西裝的嗜好。

13 理髮也是洋裝的多。

14 辮子是老不見了。

15 梳

一梳頭髮。

16 刷一刷頭髮和牙齒。

17 衣服要齊整、

掛子要扣好。

18 指甲要修整、手、臉要保持乾淨。

19 出門要帶洗臉盆、擦臉布、和手絹、也不要忘了帶牙刷。

20 早起早睡、每天運動、是保持康健的好方法。

21 把自

己所學的教給別人、也是長知識的法子。

22 你碰見窮

苦人、要體恤他們。

23 人沒有飯喫、該賙濟他們。

24 要飯的未必然是窮。

25 孩子們要教訓他們守規矩。

第三十課

1 中國話難學不難學呢？

2 寫字不難、說話不容易。

3 說話怎樣不容易、難處在那兒呢？

4 外國人說中國話、

難處在四聲的多。

5 這四聲是什麼、或什麼叫做四聲？

6 第一叫上平（或陰平）、第二叫下平（或陽平）、第三叫上

（賞）聲、第四叫去聲。

7 我聽說、說中國話有五聲、對

不對？

8 也不能說不對、因為有的地方、他們加上一個

入聲。

9 學中國話、用什麼法子好呢？

10 請一位中

國人當先生、你一句一句的跟着他唸。

11 我跟着他唸的

時候、盡心的效法他的口音、對不對？

12 對了、不過是

有的人說國語、也有不少人說土話。

13 外國人還

是學國語好、是不是？

14 不錯、現在各處都通行國語。

15 領教先生、寫中國字是用那樣的筆好？

16 寫中國

字、還是用毛筆的好。

17 用鋼筆行不行？

18 行是

行、不過沒有毛筆好。

19 我看見過有人用鉛筆。

20 有

的是、不過我還是勸你從起頭要用毛筆。

21 領教領教。

第三十一課

1 我請先生費心替我做一件事。

2 不客氣、你要我替

你做什麼？

3

我向來沒有向先生求過什麼。

4

現在

你究竟要什麼呢？

5

盼望將來先生提拔我的兒子。

6 他現在做什麼事？

7

從前他在辦公室當書記。

8 爲什麼他要另外找工作？

9

起初的時候，他們對他

很好，以後就漸漸的冷淡起來了。

10

他們對待他的態

度改變，必定有一個緣故。

11

他們以前待他厚，以後待

他薄，沒有什麼道理。

12

也許他們經濟上有困難吧。

13 先生說的對，所以他們減少了他的薪水。

14

他們還

沒有打發他走吧？

15

到現在還沒有，恐怕不久他們就

一定不要他了。

16

既然如此，我也不能不幫忙。

17 千萬請先生費心。

18 沒有什麼、這是理所當然的。

19 他要是將來找到一個好事情、真是托先生的福。

20 那兒的話、慢慢走。

第三十二課

1 先生會說英國話嗎？

2 會一兩句、太不夠用、先生

會講中國話嗎？

3 我正在學呢、還不大會。

4 先生

很知道敝國的風俗。

5 知道的有限、我來領教領教。

6 先生太謙虛、太客氣。

7 我來打聽貴縣人民的情

形。

8 很好、先生想知道那一方面的事情？

9 先談

教育一方面。

10 每個村子有初等小學、大一點的鎮子

有高等小學、縣裡有中學。 11 學校裡也收女生嗎？

12 不錯、各學校都是男女在一塊兒上學。 13 老百姓都

識字嗎？ 14 識字的不多、今年要提倡一個識字運動。

15 教師是在那兒畢業的？ 16 教師是本省師範學校畢

業的多。 17 也有女教師嗎？ 18 有是有、不過不多。

19 今年莊稼怎麼樣？ 20 今年年頭很豐盛、百姓都很平靜。

21 這邊兒種的是什麼莊稼多？ 22 麥子多、不過也有小

米、油麥、棉花、旱烟。 23 那麼、百姓納糧不費事。 24 也

很難說、不過比別的縣分強。 25 貴處人民也很講究衛

生嗎？ 26 不大講究、常常發生時症。 27 這邊兒有

土匪沒有？

28 沒有，這邊兒的警察和軍官都盡職。

29 我想貴縣不愧是模範縣。

30 過獎過獎。

第三十三課

1 你要是願意，就可以醫治我的病。

2 雖然我願意，還

是不能治你的病。

3 你既是不能治我的病，你該介紹

我給別的大夫。

4 我也給你寫介紹信，也送你到大夫

那裡去。

5 這樣做，一定對我很有益，可是我不想去。

6 爲什麼你不想去？

7 因爲我不認識他，和他不熟

習。

8 你縱然和他不熟，你也可以放心，因爲我知道

他是一個好大夫、擔保他能醫治你。

9 你既然這樣的

勸我、我就遵命就是了。

10 你這樣的聽我勸、我也很高

興。

11 我不得不照着你所說的去做。

12 你要小心、

不要把我給你的信丟了。

13 不怕、我不會丟掉的。

14 要是你跌倒了、就不敢擔保怎樣。

15 信要是掉下來

了、我就趕快把他拾起來。

16 大夫來到我這裡、或者我

到他那裡去、不是一樣的嗎？

17 不一樣、因為他那裡

有藥品、有藥布。

18 可是大夫還沒有給我看脈、也沒

有用溫度表量。

19 你也沒有告訴我、你身上那兒疼

啦、我看你熱度並不高、伸出舌頭來看一看。

20 疼、是

肚子疼啦、頭也疼啦。

21 大小便怎麼樣、通不通？

22 小便通啦、大便不通。

23 那麼、我給你配瀉藥、你不

要喝濃茶、常常喝淡茶吧。

24 請大夫給我配一副丸

藥吧、我不能喫藥粉。

第三十四課

1 趙先生的脾氣如何？

2 他是一個心平氣和的人。

3 聽說他的太太的脾氣不好。

4 你說的對、但是她的

丈夫給她立了一個好榜樣。

5 一個人要是不忍氣、常

常會發生麻煩。

6 不過趙先生是個好人、不願意家裡

邊發生囉唆。

7 他們家裡邊打過架沒有？

8 沒有、

但是有的時候、免不了起一點兒衝突。 9 有的時候、聽

見他們大聲吵嘴。

10 哎喲、這是家裡面常見的事。

11 先生看怎樣能把這種事減少。

12 一個人要是驕傲、

常常看不起別人。

13 一個人要是謙卑、就不會發生這

樣的事情。

14 他的太太總喜歡談論人家的長短。

15 那麼、我想她的丈夫和他不容易處。

16 不錯、但是

他盡量的忍耐、不惹她。

17 趙先生必定是一個聰明

通達的人。

18 對了、他深通儒學。

第三十五課

1 拿刀子來、割掉這一條繩子。

2 這條繩子太粗、用

刀子割不斷。

3 那麼、另外找一條比較細的繩子、或

是拿剪刀來絞一絞。

4 裁縫把剪子借去了。

5 他

借了我們的剪子去做什麼？

6 他說他自己的剪子太

鈍、得磨一磨。

7 裁縫是不是現在給我們做衣服？

8 是的、他是在給太太裁短外衣和長袍。

9 我知道太

太急於想穿短外衣、所以他借剪刀也有理由。

10 可是

有一件、恐怕裁縫把剪刀留起來了。

11 那算不了什

麼、最要緊的是要他早早的把短外衣做好、叫太太喜歡。

12 你怎麼不早給我說。

13 因為我不知道您在那裡。

14 不是因為你太懶、沒有用心找我吧。

15 不是的、我實

在找不着先生。

16 我並沒有離開這個地方、怎麼你說

找不着我呢？

17 那倒奇怪、我到處找您、那兒也找不

着。

18 罷了、幹你的去吧。

第三十六課

1 把你們的書打開。

2 看第幾章第幾節？

3 你唸

到第幾頁？

4 每個學生、都要唸第二十五頁的第二章

第一節。

5 所有的先生都要到會。

6 我和你們在

一起的時候、你們要盡量的發表你們的意見。

7 他和

我們同行、做我們的領導。

8 我在諸位面前說這樣的

話、是不配的。

9 長官在軍隊中走來走去。

10 他在

路旁觀看。

11 那個房子正在對面兒。

12 領路的在前

面兒走。

13 護送的在後邊兒走。

14 朋友們並排的

向前走。

15 你站在當中吧。

16 不要往一塊兒擠。

17 大家要散開。

18 相離遠一點兒的好。

19 彼此

讓步。

20 大家前進吧。

21 這幾年他進了步。

22 他的妹妹退了步。

23 官長一進來、大家就站起來、

脫帽鞠躬。

24 向左向右、都是聽教師的命令。

25 衣、食、住、三要樞

26 穿得暖、喫得飽、是人人所要。

第三十七課

1 今天過節、各機關放假、我們旅行、好不好？

2 很好、

我們下鄉去一同喫野餐。

3 贊成、盼望天氣要暖和。

4 就是陰天也不要緊、最可怕的就是閃電、打雷。 5 可

是夏天不會下雪的。 6 不錯、可是難保不下雹子。

7 冬天下霜、山上的樹多麼好看。 8 好看是好看、

不過河跟湖裡邊兒都結了凍、很不方便。 9 可是現

在是秋天、不是冬天、我們又不打算坐船、我們要步行。

10 今晚的月亮、應該是圓的、天氣清朗的時候、星星又該多麼的好看。 11 要不起霧才好、好不好我們現在就走吧。

12 可以、哎喲、天氣涼快、景緻也好、花都開了、在草地上面走、多麼舒服。 13 你看山坡上的廟、山頂上的塔、多麼

好看。

14 我們上廟上去跟和尚談一談。

15 我看這

座廟是道教、不是佛教。

16 那沒有關係、咱們上去再

說吧。

17 哎、這些蒼蠅和螞蟻、討厭不討厭！

18 幸虧

這裡沒有蚊子、蚊子咬人咬得厲害。

19 哎、看看駱駝、

騾子、毛驢可多啦。

20 總是廟上開香會、客人倒不少。

21 可不是嗎、有人抱孩子、有人背着行李、還有人挑水。

22 很熱鬧、必是在唱戲。

23 咱們上廟上去看看。

24 哎、借光借光。

25 看戲有什麼好處？

26 或去或

不去、你得拿定主意。

27 不如趁着這個機會、去看一次

戲吧。

28 我看沒有別的辦法、人這樣的湧擠、想回也

回不去。

29 幸虧我們沒有多扛東西、那裡有人牽了

一匹馬、怕踩了人。

30 危險得很。

第三十八課

1 在家千日好、在外時時難。

2 受得苦中苦、方爲人上

人。

3 真金子不怕火煉。

4 種瓜得瓜、種豈得豈。

5 啞子喫黃連、雖苦不能言。

6 路遙知馬力、日久見人心。

7 吹毛求疵。

8 不怕慢、只怕站。

9 遠水救不了近

火。

10 坐井觀天。

11 騎虎難下。

12 一個人腳踏

兩隻船。

13 不到河邊不脫鞋。

14 前人栽樹、後人乘

涼。

15 十鳥在樹、不如一鳥在手。

16 人是舊的好、衣

服是新的好。

17 謀事在人、成事在天。

18 今天脫了

鞋和襪、不知明天穿不穿。

19 瞎貓碰死老鼠。

20 善有善報、惡有惡報、善惡不報、時候未到。

21 善門

難開、善門難閉。

第三十九課

1 對面兒那座石頭造的房子是什麼？

2 你問的是插

旗桿的那個房子嗎？

3 是的、挂國旗的那個房子。

4 哎、那是愛國電影院、你要看電影嗎？

5 城裡的銀行

幾點鐘關門？

6 銀行三點鐘關門、錢舖一直開到九點

鐘。

7 我這裡有一張滙票（支票）要兌成現錢、才能看

電影。

8 錢店也給你換、也不扣錢。

9 那麼、我們

先上郵政局、我要打電報給我內人。

10 郵政局離這兒

遠呀、還是電報局比較近。

11 不過我一定要把這兩封

掛號信、寄給我公司的大班。

12 一封掛號信、貼多少

郵票？

13 那我不曉得、我們上局子裡去問一問。

14 好、哎、過來的就是一個同鄉、好呀、想不到在這兒碰見你、你忙什麼？

15 哎、了不得、我的祖父給汽車絆倒了、受

了重傷、我現在上醫院看他去。

16 可惜可惜、不敢留

攔你、替我問候令祖吧。

17 謝謝、再見。

18 咱們到

館子裡喫東西吧、我肚子餓了、

19 可以、我不想喫什

麼東西、可是我嘴乾了、我要喝一盃啤酒。

20 哎、這個館

子不錯、還有音樂隊聽。

21 那不是音樂隊、不過是留聲

機的響聲。

22 我看是無線電廣播的音樂。

23 可不

是嗎、我聽說這兒差不多每晚上市上都有跳舞、你會跳舞不會？

24 會是會、我今天太累了、不想跳舞。

25 那麼、我們就

去看電影吧、一面休息、一面長知識。

26 不錯、我以為

那倒更有興趣、(趣味)。

第四十課

1 我這一輩子的工夫、就碰到了兩次的世界大戰。

2 爲

什麼世界上不能夠維持和平呢？

3 根本就是因爲國家

跟國家、種族跟種族之間、發現不公平的事項。

4 你的

意思是說必先取消一切不公平的事、才能盼望得到一個和平的世界嗎？

5 世界上發生戰事、多半是因爲我剛

才說過的原故、不過人人都有了一個自私的心、這也不可不注意的。

6 不錯、人的自私心、實在難於去掉。

7 可

是現在的第二次大戰已經完了、德國、意國、日本、都已經投降了。

8 哎喲、中國抵抗日本的侵略、已經八年了。

9 兩邊死傷的人、都非常的多啦。

10 實在不少、房子

被炸彈炸壞了的、也是很多。

11 盟軍已經戰勝了、德國

和日本、已經打敗了、你想將來還會發生戰事嗎、

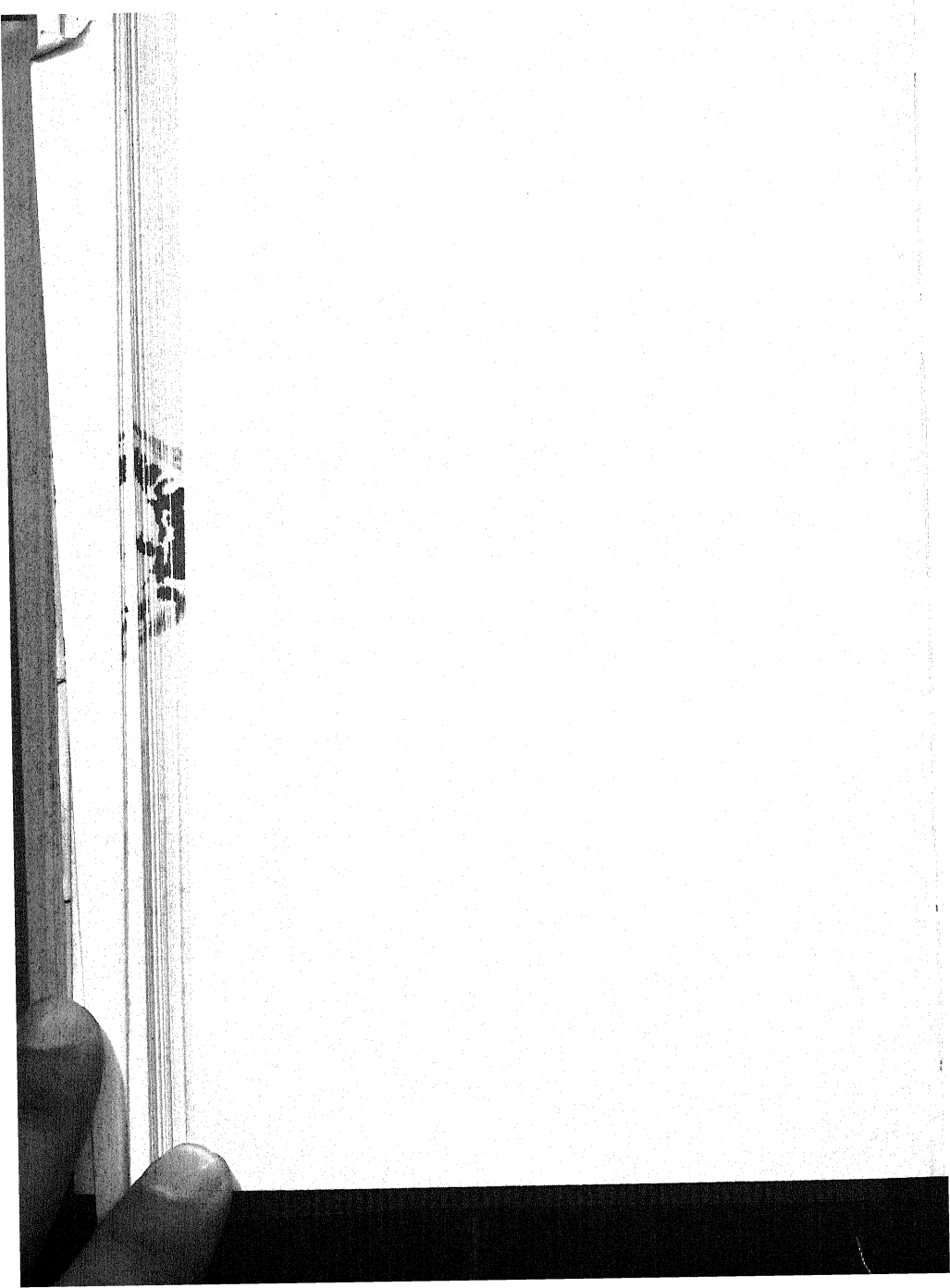
12 不敢說一定、但是這一次戰爭用的武器、非常的殘暴、也許各國都受了這種恐嚇、再不敢宣戰了。 13 我相信是

這樣、並且今年六十多國、組織了一個聯合會、要盡力的維持世界和平。 14 頂好、但是我看在必要時、還得用聯

合的軍力、如海軍、陸軍、空軍的力量來幫助、會議才能有美滿的效果。 15 同意啦、現在的政治主義很複雜、有

民主主義、共產主義、還有其他的革命的、和守舊的各種政治上的派別。 16 那倒不要緊、不怕政治上的黨派

多、只怕衆人不注意政治上的事情。



GRAMMAR

GRAMMAR NOTES

1. The Article.

The INDEFINITE article, *i.e.*, a, or an, is expressed by the numerical adjective "I" (one), followed by a "classifier", which varies according to the noun it precedes, or which may be understood. (See 8, below.)

The most frequently used "classifier" is "ko" 個 which may be translated "piece", *e.g.*, "I ko jên", a man.

Other "classifiers" in common use are given in a separate paragraph below. (See 8.)

The DEFINITE article, *i.e.*, the, appears only in relative clauses, and then, as in all other cases, its place is taken by the distinguishing adjectives "chê ko" 這個 This, and "na ko" 那個 That. *E.g.*, The man whom I mentioned is "Wo so shuo ti na ko jên". This man is "Chê ko jên". That man is "Na ko jên".

2. Distinguishing Adjectives.

We have already pointed out that "chê ko" means "this" and "na ko" means "that". If the plurals "these" and "those" are required, they are formed by the addition of "hsieh" 些 to "chê" and "na" respectively, *e.g.*, These men, "Chê hsieh jên". Those men, "Na hsieh jên".

If you wish to distinguish definitely this group of men from another, you say "Chê i hsieh jên", 這一些人 This group of men, or "Na i hsieh jên", 那一些人 That group of men.

3. Personal Pronouns.

The personal pronouns are as follows: "Wo", 我 I, me. "Ni", 你 You. "T'a", 他 He, she, it.

The plural of these is formed by the addition of "mên", 們: "Wo-mên", 我們 We, us. "Ni-mên", 你們 You. "T'a-mên", 他們 They, them.

Formerly there was no distinction of gender in these pronouns, but more recently the distinction is sometimes made by writing the character "nü" 女 at the left-hand side of the characters, especially for "ni" 妳 and "t'a" 她 to express the feminine gender.

4. The Possessive Sign.

The most commonly used mark of the possessive is "ti" 的, which is added to the pronoun or noun which it qualifies, *e.g.*, "Wo ti mao tzu", My hat. "Ni-mên ti tung-hsi", Your (pl.) things. "Na ko jên ti shu", That man's book.

There is another mark of the possessive "chih" 之 but this has a somewhat literary flavour, and is only occasionally used in common speech. It is used in exactly the same way as "ti".

Frequently the possessive is expressed in other ways, one of the more common being to use the distinguishing adjectives "chê ko", "na ko", etc., after the personal pronouns, *e.g.*, "Wo chê ko tung hsi", This thing of mine. "T'a na hsieh yen chüan'rh", Those cigarettes of his.

5. Interrogative Pronouns.

Who? is "Shui", 誰. Whose? is "Shui ti", 誰的 *e.g.*, Who is that? "Na ko jên shih shui". Whose are those things? "Na hsieh tung hsi shih shui ti".

Which? is expressed by "Na ko", the "na" being in the third tone, *e.g.*, "Na³ ko shih ni ti", Which is yours?

When you wish to distinguish one of two things, or one of more, you should say "Na³ i ko shih ni ti", Which one is yours?

What? is usually expressed by "Shih mo", which is the popular form of "shên mo", e.g., What is this? is "Chê ko shih shih mo".

6. Nouns.

Nouns are not divided artificially into different genders as in French or other Continental languages. But unless the gender is self-evident from the word itself, there are words for male and female of persons and animals, which are prefixed to the noun. E.g., "Ni yu chi ko hai tzu", How many children (no sex indicated) have you? "Wo yu san ko nan hai tzu", I have three boys ("nan" meaning male). "Ni yu nü hai mei yu", Have you any girls? ("nü" being female).

Note that "nan", male, and "nü", female, are applied only to persons. The words to distinguish the sex of animals are "mu", 牡 male, and "p'in", 牝 female.

Usually the plural of nouns is indicated by the plural form of the distinguishing adjective which precedes them, e.g., "Na hsieh jên shang na³ erh ch'ü", Where are those men going?

But "mên", the sign of the plural with personal pronouns, is sometimes applied to nouns denoting persons; rarely, if ever, to "things". E.g., you can say "nan jên mên", males, "nü-jên mên", females, "hai-tzu mên", children, but you cannot say "kou mên", dogs.

Abstract Nouns are formed chiefly in two ways, as follows:—

(1) By joining together two adjectives of exactly opposite meaning; e.g., "Ta-hsiao" (big-little) is size. "Ch'ang-tuan" (long-short) is length. "Yüan-chin" (far-near) is distance. "Kuei-chien" (dear-cheap) is price.

(2) By the addition of the word "ch'u" 處, meaning state or condition, to adjectives, e.g., "hao ch'u",

benefit, advantage, “hai ch’u”, harm, injury, “yung ch’u”, use, usefulness, “nan ch’u”, difficulty, etc.

7. **Cases of Nouns and Pronouns** are usually distinguished by the position of the word in the sentence; e.g., “Wo ai ni” is I love you, and “Ni ai wo” is You love me, as far as the Nominative and Objective or Accusative Cases are concerned.

It should, however, be noted that the Objective Case often precedes the verb of which it is the object. In such instances the object of the verbal action is usually prefixed by “pa”, or “na”, to take, e.g., “Pa chē ko tung hsi, fang tsai chē li”, which means Put this thing here.

Many illustrations of this are given in the Dialogues.

The Dative Case is usually expressed by the words “kei”, give, “t’i”, instead of, or “wei”, for, e.g., “Kei wo tso chē ko”, Do this for me. “Wo pu nēng pa wo ti shu sung kei t’a”, I cannot present my book to him. “Ni t’i wo wēn hou ni chia li pie’rh ti jēn”, Inquire about the well-being of your family for me.

8. Classifiers.

This is a class of words, as has been indicated above, which is used with nouns, to help to distinguish them one from the other. Quite a number will be found in the Dialogues. Examples are given below:—

1. Ko, 個 Piece, the most common, used almost for anything.
2. Ting, 頂 Used with caps, hats, etc.
3. Kuan, 管 Used with slender long things, like pipes, pencils, etc.
4. Chan, 盞 Used with lamps, wine cups, etc.
5. Pa, 把 Used with teapots, teacups, etc.
6. Tso, 座 Used with hills, temples, towers, etc.
7. T’ou, 頭 Used with animals.

8. Chien, 件 Used with affairs, details.
9. K'o, 顆 Used of small round things, like pearls, beads, etc.
10. Ts'êng, 層 Used of layers, strata, anything piled up, in tiers, etc.
11. Chang, 張 Used with tables.

There are many others, which will be found in any good dictionary. The student should exercise care in using the right classifier with nouns, as this is a mark of a good speaker.

10. Adjectives of Quality.

A whole Dialogue has been given to the subject of adjectives and their degrees of comparison. (See Dialogue 18.) There is therefore no need to go into any detail in this section. Note however that the adjectives are very simple, and do not change whatever their position in the sentence might be. You may say "Chê ko jên hao", This man is good, or "Chê shih i ko hao jên", This is a good man. "Ti" 的 is sometimes used when the adjective is in the predicative position, e.g., "Na ko tung hsi shih ko hao ti", That is a good thing.

11. **Adverbs of Manner** are formed from adjectives usually by the duplication of the adjective and the addition of "ti", 的, e.g., "Hao hao ti", Well. "Man man ti", Slowly. "Wan wan ch'üan ch'üan ti", Completely.

Adverbs of Place and Time have been fully illustrated in the Dialogues and do not call for special consideration here.

Adverbs of Approximation, nearly, about, etc., are usually formed by a phrase like "Ch'a pu to", "Ch'a pu li", "Pu ch'a shih mo", "Ch'a pu to shao", "Ta kai", "Ta yüeh", "Ta lüeh". Words like

“generally” by “Ta kai shuo”, “Lüeh lüeh ti shuo”. Other expressions like “shang hsia”, up, down, or “tso yu”, left, right, are used for approximate figures.

12. The Auxiliary Verbs “to be” and “to have”.

The verb “to be” is represented by the one word “shih” 是 and is the same for all persons and numbers. Changes in TENSE or MOOD are expressed by additional words or phrases of temporal, conditional or imperative significance.

Likewise the verb “to have” is represented by the one word “yu” 有 and remains the same for all persons and numbers, the tenses and moods being expressed by additional words or phrases.

13. The Regular Verb.

Taking the verb “to come” 來 as an example, the following concise paradigm applies to all, viz.:—

Number and Person. No change, the differences being expressed by the pronouns or adjectives which accompany the verb.

Tense.

The Present Tense is the simple form of the verb, e.g., “Wo lai”, I come, or I am coming.

The Past or Perfect Tense. “Wo lai liao” (la), or “Wo lai kuo”, I came, or I have come.

N.B.—While these two enclitics “liao” (la) and “kuo” are both used in most parts of China as indicated, you should use “kuo” and not “liao” (la) when you wish to refer to the distant past of completed action, e.g., Have you ever been to Peking? or Did you ever go to Peking? is “Ni ch’ü kuo Pei-ching mei yu”.

The Future Tense is formed by preceding the verb with a word of future significance, like “chiang”, 將

“yao”, 要 “chiu” 就 etc.; e.g., “T’a Chiang lai”, “T’a yao lai”, “T’a chiu lai”, or by two of these words in combination; e.g., “T’a chiu yao lai”, “T’a Chiang yao lai”, etc. There are other ways of expressing the relative immediacy of a person’s coming; e.g., “T’a li k’o chiu lai”, He is coming immediately, or, as in Dialogue No. 1, “Shuo hua chiu lai”, As you speak he comes, etc.

Compound Tenses like the Pluperfect, Future Perfect, can also be expressed, chiefly by the addition of phrases of Past or Future Past significance, to the verb; e.g., “T’a mei yu lai i ch’ien, wo i ching tsou la”, I had gone before he arrived (Pluperfect). “Kan hsia li pai êrh wo shih i ching tsou la”, I shall have gone by next Tuesday (Future Perfect).

Present Participle. This is by adding the word “cho” 著 to the verb, and frequently by adding a phrase of time; e.g., “Kên cho t’a yu san ko jên”, Accompanying him were three men. “T’a lai cho ti shih hou”, At the time of his coming.

Moods.

The *Indicative Mood* has been adequately dealt with above.

The *Imperative Mood* is the same as the indicative, with or without additional words implying command, exhortation, etc.; e.g., “Lai” or “Lai pa” is Come! “Wo mên tsou pa”, Let us go! “Chiao t’a ch’ü”, Tell him to go.

The *Infinitive Mood* is the same as the Indicative, usually of course accompanied by some main verb; e.g., “Wo yüan i ch’ü”, I am willing to go.

The *Conditional Mood* again is as the Indicative, usually preceded by a word or phrase implying Condition, such as doubt, fear, probability, uncertainty, etc.; e.g., “Jo shih t’a ch’ing ni, ni chiu ying tang ch’ü”, If he

invites you, you ought to go. "Yao shih", 要是 If. "T'ang jo", 倘若 Supposing. "Huo cho", 或者 Perhaps. "Yeh hsü", 也許 Perhaps. "K'ung p'a", 恐怕 I fear, lest. "Pu i ting", 不一定 Uncertain. "Pu kan shuo", 不敢說 Cannot say, are a few instances of the possibilities of the language to express the Conditional or Subjunctive Mood.

Other Auxiliary Verbs like "lai", 來, "ch'u", 出 "tao", 到, "liao", 了, "shang", 上, "hsia", 下 "chao", 着, "tiao", 掉, are all found in the text, in combination with main verbs.

The student will note particularly the frequent references in the Dialogue Notes to the way in which these auxiliaries express possibility or impossibility of the completion of the action of the main verb.

Note further that "tê", 得, when used as an auxiliary, carries with it a sense of "oughtness", "fitness", etc.

The Passive Voice. This is most commonly expressed by the words "chiao", written either 叫 or 教, but chiefly 叫; by "pei", 被, or "shou", 受, and less frequently "ai", 挨.

Examples are as follows:—

1. Na hsieh tung hsi pei Those things were burned
huo shao la. by fire.
2. Wo ti mao tzu chiao My hat was blown off by
fêng kua la. the wind.
3. Yeh su shou jên ti ling Jesus was insulted by men.
ju.
4. Na t'iao kou ai liao ta. That dog was beaten.

14. Negatives and Prohibitions.

The principal Negatives are "pu", 不 and "mu", 沒 also pronounced "mei" or "mo". The student will be helped by knowing that "pu" is usually used with "shih", to be, while "mu" is used with "yu". The

common uses of these negative particles are illustrated below:—

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Chê ko shih ni ti pu shih. | Is this yours or not? |
| 2. Pu shih wo ti. | It is not mine. |
| 3. Ni yu shu mei yu. | Have you a book? |
| 4. Yu. Mei yu. | Yes! No! |
| 5. T'a lai pu lai. | Is he coming? |
| 6. T'a pu lai. | No, he is not. |
| 7. T'a ch'ü la mei yu. | Has he gone? |
| 8. T'a hai mei yu ch'ü. | No, he has not gone yet. |

Note that "ma" is often used for "mei yu" in questions; e.g., "T'a lai la ma (mei yu)", Has he come? "Ni yu i p'i ma ma (mei yu)", Have you a horse?

The ordinary way of expressing *Prohibition* is to use a phrase like "Pu yao", 不要, Do not, often shortened into "Pieh", 別, or "Pu k'o", 不可, "Pu kai", 不該 or very strongly, "Ch'ien wan pu k'o", 千萬不可; e.g., "Ni pu yao kao su t'a", Don't tell him. "Pieh tsou", Don't go! "Chê ko hua, ni ch'ien wan pu k'o ho t'a shuo", On no account must you tell him this, etc.

15. Either . . . or. Neither . . . nor.

The most common way of expressing these alternatives is as follows:— 或 . . . 或. 也不 . . . 也不.

"Ni huo ch'ü huo pu ch'ü, tê na ting chu i", You must make up your mind either to go or not (whether to go or not).

"Wo yeh pu yao chan, yeh pu yao tso", I neither want to stand nor sit. Note that sometimes the first "yeh" is omitted, but the sense is the same.

The above are the main grammatical points in the Chinese language which will form a guide to the beginner in understanding and framing sentences. This section by no means exhausts all the rules which a careful speaker of Chinese consciously or unconsciously observes. The language is so flexible and free that rules may or may

not be observed. Practically everything that has been said above, or in the Notes which accompany the Dialogues, on the subject of Grammar, is open to modification. But the student will at least have observed from what has been written that there *is* such a thing as Chinese Grammar!



CHARACTER INDEX IN THE WRITTEN FORM

CHARACTER INDEX IN THE WRITTEN FORM

The 1,200 odd characters included in the Dialogues are reproduced in this Section, in the written form, with the Romanised equivalent, tone mark, and main meanings alongside.

Chinese characters, when written, differ in several respects from the printed forms. It is therefore useful for the student, at the very beginning of his studies, to become acquainted with the written forms.

In the Vocabularies accompanying the Dialogues and Exercises the printed form of the characters is used. By comparing these with the written equivalents the student will readily discern the differences and be ready to tackle a simple Chinese letter.

I strongly recommend the student to learn to write the Chinese characters in the form in which they are found in this Section. I think the effort will be found to be worth while, not only in the greater interest and pleasure which will result, but also in the help to memory which writing the characters affords.

The following hints will guide and help the student in this branch of the study. As is well known, the writing of Chinese characters is an art, just as much as the painting of pictures. So Chinese writers use the brush (mao pi), as only by that means can the artistic possibilities of the characters appear. But nowadays large numbers of the younger generation of Chinese students use fountain pens. Students of this book who have artistic gifts should get accustomed to using the brush. But probably the great majority will be content to use the fountain pen. Get one with a soft nib, which will allow of gradation of thick and thin in the strokes, and also permit of a flowing free-hand style. Even a good

lead pencil of the right quality can serve quite well in the early stages, until the student has mastered the form and proportion of the characters.

If you use the brush you will of course use Chinese ink, rubbed with water on a slab.

First copy the characters just as they are in the index by placing a piece of tracing or other transparent paper over them. This will give you good style from the start. To write accurately and nicely it is important to write the different strokes of each character in the proper order. There are rules to guide the student in this respect, to which as usual there are some exceptions.

Chinese teachers habitually say that all the strokes required to form any character are found in the character "yung", which means "Eternal", and which is written

永

However, as W. Simon points out in his book "How to Study and Write Chinese Characters",* at least fifteen different strokes, some of which are slight variants of others in the group, are readily discernible. These fifteen strokes, as given by Simon, are as follows:—

一 丨 丶 丿 丨 ㇏ ㇏ ㇏ ㇏ ㇏ ㇏ ㇏ ㇏ ㇏ ㇏

It is customary to write top before bottom strokes, left before right, and horizontals before verticals. But in cases where the top horizontal stroke is connected with a right hand vertical, and a left hand vertical also forms part of the character, it is usual to write the left hand vertical stroke first. Then it is also important to remember that the closing stroke of squares or quadrilaterals is the bottom horizontal, and this always comes last. These few rules, to which there are some exceptions, should suffice to guide the student in his early writing lessons.

* "How to Study and Write Chinese Characters", W. Simon, pub. by Lund, Humphries, a book which the writer heartily commends to the student.

E.g., if we want to write the character “k’ou”, for mouth, which is written 口, the order of strokes is 1. 丨, 2. ㇏ 3. 一; and in “li”, 里, Chinese mile, the order is 1. 丨, 2. ㇏, 3. 一, 4. 一, 5. 一, 6. 丨, 7. 一

Write each character several times before proceeding to fresh ones. You will gradually discover that certain parts of many characters recur frequently. These are probably I. Radicals, of which there are 214, a list of which follows the Character Index, and which give a clue to the meaning, or II. Phonetics, of which Soothill, for instance, selects 888,† and which afford a clue to the sound of the character. By this type of analysis we trace the characters in the dictionaries, as will be pointed out in the final Section. By this means also the student will be able to group the characters into classes, either according to Radical or Phonetic, which will accelerate progress in learning to write and read large numbers of characters.

E.g., as an interesting test, pick out from the Index all those characters in which you can detect the Radical “mu”, 木, wood, or tree, or again the Radical “chin”, 金, metal, “yü”, 雨, rain, etc., and note how the rest of the character indicates differences in species while the genus remains the same, or akin.

Likewise trace common Phonetics like 者, “chu”, the characters 猪, pig, 諸, all, 煮, boil, etc.

Or again, “ch’ing”, 青, in 情, disposition, 清, pure, 請, invite.

In these ways the burden of memorising will be greatly lightened and keener interest developed.

The Index to the characters in written form follows.

† “The Students’ Four Thousand Characters and General Pocket Dictionary”, W. E. Soothill, M.A.

Characters 1—20

第	Ti ⁴ Number, degree. Used to introduce ordinal numbers.	不	Pu ¹ No. Not.
一	I ¹ One.	知	Chih ¹ To know.
課	K'o ⁴ Task, Exercise.	道	Tao ⁴ Way, Truth.
門	Mên ² Door, Gate.	去	Ch'ü ⁴ To go.
口	K'ou ³ Mouth, Opening.	看	K'an ⁴ To look, To look at To think. To con- sider.
有	Yu ³ There is, there are. Has, have.	用	Yung ¹ Need, Use.
人	Jên ² Man.	叫	Chiao ⁴ To call, cause, order.
誰	Shui ² Who, Whom.	隆	Lung ² Eminent. Prosper- ous.
我	Wo ³ I, Me	福	Fu ² Happiness.
是	Shih ⁴ Is, are, am, etc.	哎	Ai ³ An exclamation.

Characters 21—40

來

Lai²
To come.

吧

Pa⁴
Final particle.

先

Hsien¹
Before, formerly,
first.

生

Shêng¹
Born, to beget, life.
Raw. A scholar.

貴

Kuei⁴
Honourable, dear,
costly.

姓

Hsing⁴
Surname, clan.

李

Li³
A surname. Plum.

王

Wang²
A surname. King,
prince.

在

Tsai⁴
At, in, on, present,
living.

家

Chia¹
Home, house, fam-
ily, class.

嗎

Ma¹
Interrogative.

請

Ch'ing³
Invite, please, call,
engage.

進

Chin⁴
Enter, advance.

好

Hao³
Good, well, com-
plete.

了

Liao,³ Lo,³ La³
To end, finish.
Sign of past tense.

呀

Ya¹
Particle.
Exclamation,
initial or final.

張

Chang¹
A surname.
Also classifier of
nouns.

都

Tu,¹ Tou¹
Both, all, together.

坐

Tso⁴
To sit. A seat.

謝

Hsieh⁴
To thank, thanks.

Characters 41—60

泡

P'ao⁴To brew, soak,
bubble, infuse.

茶

Ch'a²

Tea.

說

Shuo¹To speak, say,
narrate.

話

Hua⁴Words, language.
speech.

就

Chiu⁴Immediately, then,
so, etc.

喝

Ho¹

To drink.

敢

Kan³

Dare, presume.

當

Tang¹To bear, act as,
ought.

再

Tsai⁴

Again, repeat.

會

Hui²A time, a turn,
able to. A so-
ciety. To meet.

兒

Erh¹Enclitic, added to
nouns, suffix.

對

Tui⁴To face, pair,
opposite.

住

Chu⁴

To dwell, to stop.

等

Têng³

To wait, a class.

著

Cho²Particle, sign of
present parti-
ciple.

得

Tê²

Must, ought, get.

回

Hui²To return, go
back.

送

Sung⁴To send, escort,
accompany.

那

Na^{3 4}Where, how, why?
There, that.

的

Ti¹Sign of possessive,
's.

Characters 61—80

見	Chien ⁴ To see, perceive.	偏	P'ien ¹ Deflected, on the contrary, prejudiced.
二	Erh ⁴ Two, Second.	客	K'o ⁴ Guest, traveller.
他	T'a ¹ He, she, it.	氣	Ch'i ⁴ Breath, air, vapour, flavour.
太	T'ai ⁴ Too, very, superlative, exalted.	理	Li ³ Right, principle, arrange, fitting.
喫	Ch'ih ¹ To eat, used of tobacco as well as food.	可	K'o ⁴ May, might, can, be able.
過	Kuo ⁴ Sign of past tense, to pass over.	以	I ³ To take, by means of.
飯	Fan ⁴ Rice, food.	給	Kei, Chi ³ Give, for, to. Sign of dative.
沒	Mei, Mu, Mo ⁴ Negative, used with the verb "Yu", to have.	沏	Ch'i ³ Infuse, brew. Alternative for "p'ao".
還	Huan, Hai ² Still, yet, — precedes negative.	預	Yü ⁴ Beforehand.
或	Huo ⁴ Perhaps, if, someone.	備	Pei ⁴ Prepare, ready.

Characters 81—100

中
國
大
懂
幾
時
到
敝
上
月

Chung¹
Middle.

Kuo²
Country.
Kingdom.

Ta⁴
Big. Great.
Much.

Tung³
To understand.

Chi³
Many. How much?
How many?

Shih²
Time, Season.

Tao⁴
Arrive, reach.

Pi⁴
Humble,
my (polite).

Shang⁴
The last point of
time, above, on,
go up.

Yüeh⁴
Month, moon.

才
獎
真
實
容
易
學
並
難
願

Ts'ai²
Just, thereupon,
scarcely.

Chiang³
Praise, commend.

Chên¹
True, real.

Shih²
Solid, sincere, true,
real.

Yung,² Jung²
Easy, contain,
face, looks.

I⁴
Easy.

Hsüeh²
Learn.

Ping⁴
Together, all,
abreast.

Nan²
Difficult.

Yüan⁴
Wish, willing.

Characters 101—120

意

I⁴

Idea, wish, intention, meaning.

把

Pa³

Take, take hold. Introduces object of verb.

盡

Chin⁴

Limit, exhaust, utmost.

心

Hsin¹

Heart, mind.

教

Chiao¹

Teach, instruct.

你

Ni³

You.

三

San¹

Three.

這

Chê⁴

This, here.

個

Ko⁴

Piece. Classifier of nouns.

什

Shih²

Used for No. 111.

甚

Shên²

What, very, any.

麼

Mo¹

Interrogative particle.

本

Pên³Classifier of books, documents.
Root, source.

書

Shu¹

Book.

字

Tzû⁴

Word, written word.

典

Tien³

Constant, rule, record.

東

Tung¹

East.

西

Hsi¹

West.

管

Kuan³

Tube, classifier of tubular things.

鉛

Ch'ien¹

Lead (metal).

Characters 121—140

筆
們
作
做
唸
讀
聽
法
子
跟

Pi³
Pen, pencil, brush.

Mên²
Sign of plural.

Tso⁴
To do, to make,
to act.

Tso⁴
To do, to make,
to act.

Nien⁴
To read aloud.

Tu²
To read.

T'ing¹
To listen, to hear.

Fa^{2 3 4}
Method, way of
doing things,
law.

Tzŭ³
Son, terminal of
nouns, child.

Kên¹
To follow, accom-
pany, the heel,
with.

行
Hsing²
To go, to do.

很
Hên³
Extreme, very.

要
Yao⁴
If, necessary,
want.

錯
Ts'o⁴
Mistake, error,
wrong.

告
Kao⁴
Inform, accuse.

訴
Su⁴
Inform, explain.

現
Hsien⁴
Now, at present.

完
Wan²
To finish, com-
plete, end.

寫
Hsieh³
To write.

喜
Hsi³
Joy, pleased, glad.

Characters 141—160

歡

Huan¹
Rejoice. Take
pleasure.

紙

Chih³
Paper.

塊

K'uai⁴
Piece.

墨

Mo, Mei⁴
Ink.

和

Ho^{2 4}
With, together,
harmony.

方

Fang¹
Square, classifier
of pieces of
Chinese ink.

硯

Yen⁴
Ink-slab.

台

T'ai²
Slab.

加

Chia¹
To add.

點

Tien³
A little, point,
dot.

水

Shui³
Water.

研

Yen²
To grind, as ink
on a slab. To
inquire.

些

Hsieh³
A few, some, sign
of plural, with
adjectives.

拿

Na²
To take.

四

Ssü⁴
Four.

盃

Pei¹
Cup, with or with-
out handle.
Glass.

杯

As No. 156.

碗

Wan³
Cup, bowl, with
or without
handle.

分

Fên^{1 4}
(1) Verbal form,
to divide. (4)
Part, tenth.

別

Pieh²
To distinguish;
also "do not".

Characters 161—180

壺	Hu ² Kettle, pot.	兩	Liang ³ Two, preceding nouns.
樣	Yang ⁴ Pattern, way, manner.	鋼	Kang ¹ Steel.
燒	Shao ¹ To burn, bake (to boil).	呢	Ni ¹ Mark of interrogation, and final enclitic.
煙	Yen ¹ Tobacco, snuff, smoke, opium.	毛	Mao ² Hair.
烟	As No. 164.	朋	P'êng ² Companion, friend mate.
捲	Chüan ³ A roll, to roll up.	友	Yu ³ Intimate acquaintance, friend.
洋	Yang ² Foreign, the sea, over the sea, vast.	瓶	P'ing ² Bottle.
火	Huo ² Fire.	也	Yeh ³ Also.
柴	Ch'ai ² Firewood, fuel.	買	Mai ³ To buy.
抽	Ch'ou ¹ To draw, to pull out.	市	Shih ⁴ The market.

Characters 181—200

場	Ch'ang ² An open place, square.	天	T'ien ¹ Day, Heaven.
裡	Li ³ In, inside, within.	明	Ming ² The dawn, bright, clear, open.
裏	As No. 182.	今	Chin ¹ Now, the present
賣	Mai ⁴ To sell.	她	T'a ¹ She.
街	Chieh ² Street.	幹	Kan ⁴ To do, manage, Ability.
者	Chê ³ Particle, to form adverbs, ab- stract nouns, etc.	頂	Ting ³ Classifier of hats, caps, etc. Top, button.
咱	Tsa ² We (familiar).	帽	Mao ⁴ Hat, cap.
倆	Lia ³ Two.	雙	Shuang ¹ A couple, both, pair.
五	Wu ³ Five.	鞋	Hsieh ² Shoe.
昨	Tso ³ Yesterday.	北	Pei ^{3 4} North.

Characters 201—220

京

Ching¹
Capital city.

起

Ch'i³
To get up, rise,
mount.

走

Tsou³
To walk, to go.

錢

Ch'ien²
Money.

緊

Chin³
Tight, pressing.

帶

Tai⁴
To carry on the
person.

借

Chieh⁴
To borrow, to
lend.

情

Ch'ing²
Facts affairs, feel-
ings, nature.

形

Hsing⁴
Form, appearance.

怎

Tsên³
How? In what
way?

候

Hou⁴
A period, a time,
to wait, to
expect.

六

Liu⁴
Six.

厨

Ch'u²
Kitchen, cook.

房

Fang²
Room, house.

司

Ssü¹
An officer, to
manage.

站

Chan⁴
To stand, station,
post, etc.

忙

Mang²
Busy.

幫

Pang¹
Help, assist.

句

Chü⁴
Sentence, phrase.

傢

Chia¹
Utensils.

Characters 221—240

具

Chü⁴
Utensils.

刀

Tao¹
Knife, blade.

叉

Ch'a¹
Fork.

調

T'iao²
To stir, to mix.

羹

Mei⁴
Ink black.

匙

Shih,² Ch'ih²
Spoon, key.

勺

Shao²
Scoop, ladle.

碟

Tieh²
Plate, saucer.

盤

P'an²
Plate, dish.

放

Fang⁴
Put, place.

棹

Cho¹
Table.

桌

As No. 231.

晚

Wan³
Evening, late.

下

Hsia⁴
Beneath, to
descend, to
begin, under.

午

Wu³
Noon.

多

To¹
Much, many.

烤

K'ao²
To bake, roast.

麵

Mien⁴
Flour, bread.

包

Pao¹
Parcel, wrap.

黃

Huang²
Yellow.

Characters 241—260

油

Yu²
Oil.

果

Kuo³
Fruit, conse-
quences, etc.

醬

Chiang¹
Thick, paste, etc.

夠

Kou⁴
Enough, sufficient.

十

Shih²
Ten.

筷

K'uai⁴
Chopsticks.

使

Shih³
To employ, use.

只

Chih³
Only.

怕

P'a⁴
To fear.

倒

Tao³
On the contrary,
to fall over.

七

Ch'i¹
Seven.

承

Ch'êng²
To receive.

問

Wên²
To inquire, ask, a
question.

您

Nin²
You, Sir. (A
polite form.)

賤

Chien⁴
Humble, mean,
low, cheap.

甫

Fu³
Title or rank,
surname.

草

Ts'ao³
Gross, humble.

清

Ch'ing¹
Clear.

長

Chang⁴ A staff.
Ch'ang² Long.

名

Ming²
Name, fame.

Characters 261—280

年 Nien²
 Year, years.
 紀 Chi⁴
 To record.
 歲 Sui⁴
 The year, years.
 數 Shu⁴
 Number, to count.
 庚 Kêng¹
 Age.
 甲 Chia³
 First.
 高 Kao¹
 High.
 壽 Shou⁴
 Age, old age,
 long life.
 兄 Hsiung¹
 Elder brother.
 弟 Ti⁴
 Younger brother.

小 Hsiao³
 Small, young.
 虛 Hsü¹
 In vain, empty,
 useless.
 度 Tu⁴
 To ford, pass,
 pass over.
 英 Ying¹
 Brave, illustrious,
 England.
 南 Nan²
 South.
 處 Ch'u³
 Place, dwelling
 place.
 府 Fu³
 Home, residence,
 a prefecture.
 平 P'ing²
 Peace, level,
 ordinary.
 離 Li²
 Apart from, separated from.
 遠 Yüan³
 Far, distance
 distant.

Characters 281—300

百

Pai, Po^{3 2 4}
Hundred.

里

Li³
"Li" (about one-third of a mile).

路

Lu⁴
Road.

往

Wang^{3 4}
Towards.

漢

Han⁴
Name of a dynasty. Part of Hankow.

旱

Han⁴
Dry, dry land.

非

Fei¹
Not, bad.

飛

Fei¹
To fly.

機

Chi¹
A machine, opportunity.

工

Kung¹
Work.

夫

Fu¹
A man.

常

Ch'ang²
Usual, ordinary.

快

K'uai⁴
Quick, lively.

八

Pa¹
Eight.

統

T'ung²
Together, connected.

共

Kung⁴
Together, combined.

父

Fu⁴
Father.

母

Mu³
Mother.

親

Ch'in¹
Close relationship.

令

Ling⁴
Honourable.

Characters 301—320

尊

Tsun ¹Honourable (used
in ceremonial
language).

堂

T'ang ²The hall, principal
room.

世

Shih ⁴The world, this
life, generation.

惜

Hsi ¹To pity, sym-
pathise.

寶

Pao ³

Precious, valuable.

眷

Chüan ⁴

Family, wife.

成

Ch'êng ²Complete, finish
become.

訂

Ting ⁴

Fix, settle.

婚

Hun ¹

Marriage, marry.

結

Chieh ²To tie a knot, to
join together.

孩

Hai ²

Child, children.

男

Nan ²Male (of human
beings).

位

Wei ⁴Classifier of per-
sons.

女

Nü ³Female (of human
beings).

托

T'o ⁴Rely upon, due to,
depend on.

相

Hsiang ¹

Mutual.

郎

Lang ²

Prince, your son.

犬

Ch'üan ³

Dog, pup.

媛

Ai, ⁴ Ngai ⁴

Loved, beloved.

差

Ch'a ¹ 'to err.Ch'ai ¹ To send.

Characters 321—340

事	Shih ⁴ Affair, matter, business.	音	Yin ¹ Sound.
辦	Pan ⁴ To do, to manage.	牧	Mu ⁴ Shepherd, pastor.
公	Kung ¹ Public, official.	師	Shih ⁴ Teacher.
商	Shang ¹ Commerce.	士	Shih ⁴ Scholar.
奉	Fêng ⁴ To join, attach oneself to.	前	Ch'ien ² Before, formerly.
教	Chiao ¹ Instruction, Church.	講	Chiang ¹ Expound, preach.
耶	Yeh ¹ Used in transli- terating.	九	Chiu ³ Nine.
穌	Su ¹ To revive.	目	Mu ⁴ Index, list, eye.
基	Chi ¹ A foundation, a base.	繙	Fan ¹ To translate, turn over.
督	Tu ¹ To oversee, to superintend.	翻	Fan ¹ To upset, to over- turn.

Characters 341—360

零

Ling²
Nought, cipher.

千

Ch'ien¹
Thousand.

萬

Wan⁴
Ten thousand.

頭

T'ou²
Head, first, beginning.

半

Pan⁴
Half.

分

Fên¹
A tenth, a portion.

之

Chih¹
Sign of possessive.

地

Tì⁴
Earth, floor, locality.

少

Shao³
Few, little, short of.

必

Pi⁴
Must, certainly, necessary.

須

Hsü¹
Necessary, must, wait, a moment.

補

Pu³
Patch, repair, mend.

星

Hsing¹
Star, spark.

期

Ch'i²
Date, appointed time, expect.

禮

Li³
Ceremony, courtesy, politeness.

拜

Pai⁴
Worship, pay respect.

初

Ch'u¹
Beginning, first.

正

Chêng⁴
Right, correct, chief, first month.

末

Mo⁴
Last, end, dust, not.

腊

La⁴
Twelfth moon, winter sacrifice.

Characters 361—380

臘
其
餘
致
隨
冬
思
新
玩
藝

As No. 360.

Ch'i²
He, she, it.Yü²
Surplus.Chih⁴
To cause, to ex-
tend to, to send.Sui²
Comply with,
according to, to
follow.Tung¹
Winter.Ssü¹
To think on, pon-
der, thought.Hsin¹
New.Wan⁴
Enjoy, amuse,
play.I⁴
Skill, craft.

耍
糖
每
份
經
身
表
但
面
鐘

Shua³
To play, to trifle.T'ang²
Sugar, sweets.Mei³
Each, every.Fên¹
A portion.Ching¹
Pass through,
manage.Shên¹
Body, self.Piao³
Watch.Tan⁴
But, only, yet.Mien⁴
Face, front, side,
aspect.Chung¹
Clock, bell.

Characters 381—400

近

Chin⁴
Near.

視

Shih⁴
See, look.

眼

Yen³
Eye, the eye.

約

Yüeh,¹ Yo¹
To make an appointment, covenant, bind.

已

I³
Sign of perfect tense.

耽

Tan¹
Obstruct, delay, prevent.

誤

Wu⁴
To thwart, hinder.

許

Hsü³
Perhaps, maybe.

恐

K'ung³
Fear.

怕

P'a⁴
Fear, afraid.

刻

K'o⁴
A quarter, fifteen minutes.

趕

Kan³
To catch up, pursue, drive.

更

Kêng⁴
Sign of comparative.

夏

Hsia⁴
Summer.

避

Pi⁴
Avoid, escape, flee.

伏

Fu²
Summer heat.

暑

Shu³
Summer heat.

勞

Lao²
To toil, suffer, weary.

山

Shan¹
Hill, mountain.

從

Ts'ung²
From, follow, obey.

Characters 401—420

閒

Hsien²

Leisure, idle.

愛

Ai⁴

To love, to like.

打

Ta³

To beat, strike, to play at . . .

網

Wang³

Net.

球

Ch'iu⁴

Ball.

踢

T'i¹

To kick.

腳

Chiao,² Chüeh²

Foot.

因

Yin¹

Cause, because.

為

Wei²

Because, do, make, be.

規

Kuei¹

Rule, fix.

牌

P'ai³

Cards, dominoes.

拍

P'ai²

To beat, clap, etc.

座

Tso⁴

Classifier of clocks, etc.

慢

Man⁴

Slow.

改

Kai³

Alter, change.

準

Chun³

Standard.

修

Hsiu¹

Repair, put in order.

能

Nêng²

Can, able.

替

T'i⁴

For, instead of substitute.

認

Jên⁴

To recognise, to acknowledge.

Characters 421—440

匠

Chiang⁴
An artisan.

己

Chi³
Self, personal.

定

Ting⁴
Fix, settle, certain.

盤

P'an²
Plate, board, a classifier.

後

Hou⁴
After, later.

棋

Ch'i²
Chess.

駕

Chia⁴
Chariot, progress.

逛

Kuang⁴
Stroll, visit.

最

Tsui⁴
Most, very.

針

Chên¹
Needle, needle-work.

陪

P'ei²
To accompany, entertain.

鍼

As No. 435.

頭

T'ou²
The head, the beginning.

線

Hsien⁴
Thread, needle-work.

概

Kai⁴
All, general.

綫

As No. 437.

便

Pien⁴
Convenient.
P'ien⁴ Cheap.

談

T'an²
To chat, gossip, talk.

自

Tzū⁴
Self, natural, from.

譚

As No. 439.

Characters 441—460

夜

Yeh⁴
Night.

窗

Ch'uang¹
Window.

戶

Hu⁴
A hole, opening,
screen.

關

Kuan¹
To close, bar, put
to.

病

Ping⁴
Disease, illness.

發

Fa¹
To produce, be-
come.

潮

Ch'ao²
Damp, humid,
tide.

框

K'uang⁴
Frame.

縫

Fêng²
A seam, split,
crack.

木

Mu⁴
Wood, timber.

鎖

So³
Lock, to lock.

鏽

Hsiu⁴
Rust, to rust.

鑰

Yao,⁴ Yo⁴
A key.

試

Shih⁴
To try, to test,
experiment.

塗

T'u²
To grease, to oil,
smear.

開

K'ai¹
To open.

敞

Ch'ang³
To open, wide
open, disclose.

偷

T'ou¹
To steal, a thief.

嗎

Ma⁴
Interrogative
particle.

塞

Sai,⁴ Sé⁴
Cork, stopper.

Characters 461—480

取

Ch'ü²

To take off or out.

出

Ch'u¹To come or go
out, to produce.

合

Ho²To close, to pair,
side by side.

式

Shih⁴Pattern, shape,
fashion.

螺

Lo²Conch, small
screw.

絲

Ssü¹

Wire, thread.

轉

Chuan³

To turn.

箱

Hsiang¹

Box.

匣

Hsia²

Small box, crate.

盒

Ho²A tin or box,
casket.

筒

T'ung²

A tin, a container.

費

Fei⁴

Waste, expend.

釘

Ting¹

A nail, to nail.

全

Ch'üan²Perfect, complete,
all.

鉗

Ch'ien²

Pincers, tongs.

總

Tsung³

All, general.

向

Hsiang⁴Facing toward, to
or from.

園

Yüan²Courtyard,
garden.

井

Ching³

A well.

蓋

Kai⁴

To cover.

Characters 481—500

清	Ch'ing ¹ Dawn, daybreak.
早	Tsao ³ Early.
桶	T'ung ³ A bucket, a barrel.
盛	Ch'êng ² To fill, to hold. Shêng ⁴ Abundant.
滿	Man ³ Full, to fill.
所	So ³ The relative pronoun. A place, that which.
缸	Kang ¹ A butt, large vessel for water, etc.
裝	Chuang ¹ To fill up, to pack, to contain.
髒	Tsang ¹ Dirty, filthy.
留	Liu ³ To leave, to retain, keep.

件	Chien ⁴ An article, an item. A classifier.
忘	Wang ² To forget.
記	Chi ⁴ To remember.
邊	Pien ¹ A side, an edge.
苦	K'u ³ Bitter.
甜	T'ien ² Sweet.
煮	Chu ³ To boil, to cook.
搬	Pan ¹ To move, to remove.
樓	Lou ² A second storey, tower.
動	Tung ⁴ To move. To excite.

Characters 501—520

至	Chih ⁴ Extreme. Reach to. Utmost.	種	Chung ³ Seed, grain. A kind or sort.
雇	Ku ⁴ To hire.	重	Chung ⁴ Heavy, cumber- some.
抬	T'ai ² To carry between two or more persons. To raise.	休	Hsiu ¹ Rest, recuperate, relax.
濟	Chi ⁴ To help, save, up to the mark.	息	Hsi ² Rest, to rest.
算	Suan ⁴ To reckon, calcu- late.	歇	Hsieh ¹ To rest, ease off.
然	Jan ² Certainly, really, still, although.	椅	I ³ A chair, couch.
掃	Sao ³ To sweep.	空	K'ung ¹ Empty.
院	Yüan ⁴ A courtyard, a hall.	想	Hsiang ³ To think, reflect.
收	Shou ¹ To receive, collect, gather.	外	Wai ⁴ Outside. Foreign.
拾	Shih ² Arrange, pick up.	老	Lao ³ A long time. Old.

Characters 521—540

丟

Tiu³
To leave.

蔭

Yin¹
A cellar, under-
ground. Secret.

條

T'iao²
Classifier of long
things.

凳

Têng¹
To rise, to mount,
to begin.

掉

Tiao⁴
To change round,
turn round.

讓

Jang⁴
To allow, permit.

換

Huan⁴
To change.

乾

Kan¹
Dry, clean.

淨

Ching⁴
Clean.

布

Pu⁴
Calico, cotton
cloth.
To notify, to pub-
lish.

廳

T'ing¹
Court, Hall.

曉

Hsiao³
To know.

吩

Fên¹
To order, com-
mand.

咐

Fu⁴
To commission,
order.

毯

T'an³
Carpet, felt.

席

Hsi²
Mat, reed mat.

器

Ch'i⁴
A vessel, a uten-
sil, implements.

洗

Hsi³
To wash, bathe,
rinse.

端

Tuan¹
A beginning. A
clue. To serve.

伶

Ling²
Clever, active,
adjust.

Characters 541—560

俐
整
齊
於
斤
釐
稱
裏
量
糧

Li⁴Lively, quick,
smart.Chêng³To set in order,
to repair, ad-
just.Ch'i²Even, regular. To
arrange.Yü²In, on, at, from.
Than.Chin¹A catty, one and
a third lbs.Li²The 1000th part of
a Chinese foot;
1000th part of
a "tael".Ch'êng¹To weigh, call,
style.Kuo³

To bind, wrap.

Liang²To measure, to
deliberate. To
buy, as grain.Liang²

Grain, food.

石
斗
升
袋
尺
寸
白
文
步
意

Shih² A stone.Tan⁴ A bushel.Tou³

A peck.

Shêng¹

A pint.

Tai¹

Bag, sack.

Ch'ih

A foot.

Ts'un⁴

An inch.

Pai²White, clear, in
vain.Wên²Literature,
elegant.Pu⁴Pace, step, five
feet.I⁴Idea, intention,
meaning, wish.

Characters 561—580

思

Ssu¹Think on, ponder,
thought.

褲

K'u⁴

Trousers.

材

Ts'ai²

Materials.

料

Liao⁴Materials, calcu-
late.

寬

K'uan¹

Wide, broad, easy.

狹

Hsia²

Narrow.

比

Pi³

To compare.

布

Pu⁴

Cloth, to spread.

跑

P'ao³

To run, to gallop.

世

Shih⁴The world, a gen-
eration.

界

Chieh⁴The world, bound-
ary.

記

Chi⁴To record, to re-
member, a sign.

錄

Lu⁴

To record, copy.

破

P'o⁴

Break, solve.

碟

Tieh^{2 5}

Saucer.

肉

Jou,⁴ Ju⁴

Meat.

湯

T'ang¹

Soup, gravy.

雞

Chi¹

Chicken.

羊

Yang²

Sheep.

魚

Yü³

Fish.

Characters 581—609

猪

Chu¹
Pig, pork.

排

P'ai²
Chops.

骨

Ku³
Chops.

熱

Jê⁴
Hot.

涼

Liang²
Cool, pleasant.

菜

Ts'ai⁴
Vegetables, food.

腿

T'ui³
Leg, thigh, ham.

片

P'ien⁴
Sliced, a slice, a strip.

牛

Niu²
A cow.

舌

Shê²
Tongue.

土

T'u³
Earth.

豆

Tou⁴
Beans.

菠

Po^{1 2}
Spinach.

熟

Shou,² Shu²
Ripe, soft, properly cooked.

啦

La¹
A final particle.

冰

Ping¹
Ice.

淇

Ch'i²
Name of a river used in transliteration.

淋

Lin²
To drip. Used in transliteration.

奶

Nai³
Milk, curdled milk, cheese.

餅

Ping³
Cake, slab.

Characters 601—620

咖
啡
蘋
梨
葡
萄
酒
呂
宋
戒

Chia¹

Used in transliteration.

Fei¹

Used in transliteration.

P'ing,² P'in²

Apple.

Li²

Pears.

P'u²

The vine, a grape.

T'ao²

Grapes.

Chiu³

Wine.

Lü³A tube.
The Philippines.Sung⁴Name of a
dynasty.Chieh⁴

Forbid, prohibit.

擺

Pai³To spread, to lay
on table.

找

Chao³To seek, to look
for.

媽

Ma¹An old woman, a
mother, a wait-
ing woman.

另

Ling⁴

Separate.

鹹

Hsien²

Salt. Brackish.

鹽

Yen²

Salt.

胡

Hu²

Pepper.

椒

Chiao¹

Pepper.

醋

Ts'u⁴

Vinegar.

芥

Chieh⁴

Mustard.

Characters 621—640

牙

Ya²
Tooth, teeth.

簾

Ch'ien¹
Bamboo-slip.

車

Ch'ê
Cart, carriage,
vehicle.

輛

Liang⁴
Classifier of ve-
hicles.

論

Lun⁴
To discuss, ac-
cording to.

價

Chia⁴
Price, value.

應

Ying¹
Ought, should,
must; suitable.

該

Kai¹
Ought, should. To
owe.

做

Tso⁴
To make, To do,
To be, To act
as.

罷

Pa⁴
To cease. A final
particle. Sign
of imperative.

言

Yen²
Words, speech.

店

Tien⁴
An inn, a shop.

照

Chao¹
According to. To
illumine.

舊

Chiu⁴
Old—of time, per-
sons, etc.

越

Yüeh⁴
The more, compa-
rative sign.

力

Li⁴
Strength, power,
force.

趙

Chao⁴
A common sur-
name.

姐

Chieh³
An elder sister.
A young lady.

識

Shih⁴
To know, to re-
cognise.

猜

Ts'ai¹
To guess.

Characters 641—660

憐
通
姊
妹
哥
擔
負
責
任
盼

Lien ²Pitiful, pity, sym-
pathise.T'ung ¹Together with, al-
together.Tzu ²

Elder sister.

Mei ⁴

Younger sister.

Ko ¹

Elder brother.

Tan ¹To carry with a
pole over the
shoulder. To
sustain.Fu ⁴To bear, to sus-
tain. To carry
on back.Tsê,² Chai ²Burden of office,
responsibility.Jên ⁴Office, the care or
burden of office.P'an ⁴To hope for, to
expect.

望

Wang ⁴To expect, hope.
To gaze at.

妥

T'o ³

Satisfactory.

臉

Lien ³

Face.

貌

Mao ⁴

Appearance, form.

豈

Ch'i ³How, how can it
be?

戚

Ch'i ⁴

Relatives.

罪

Tsui ⁴Sin, crime, offence,
offend.

無

Wu ²Without, apart
from. A nega-
tive.

何

Ho ²

How, why.

誑

K'uang ³

Lies, false.

Characters 661—680

碰	P'êng ⁴ To meet with. To come across. To hit upon.	據	Chū ⁴ According to.
詳	Hsiang ² Details.	挺	T'ing ³ To stick out, stiff.
細	Hsi ⁴ Fine, delicate.	壞	Huai ⁴ Bad, vicious, ruined.
主	Chu ³ Opinion, lord, master.	強	Ch'iang ² Strong, superior, violent.
佩	P'ei ⁴ Wear at waist, respect.	短	Tuan ³ Short.
服	Fu ² Clothes, to wear. 'To serve, to be willing.	歹	Tai ³ Bad.
失	Shih ¹ To lose, to err.	顏	Yen ² Colour, face.
信	Hsin ⁴ To believe in, to trust. A letter.	色	Sê, ⁴ Shai ⁴ Colour, beauty.
酬	Ch'ou ² Reward, bestow.	挪	No ² To move.
提	T'i ² To lift in the hand; to raise, to mention.	根	Kên ¹ Classifier of sticks.

Characters 681—700

棍

Kun ⁴

Staff, stick.

粗

Ts'u ¹Broad, thick (or
round things).
Coarse.

貨

Huo ⁴

Goods, wares.

物

Wu ⁴

Things, goods.

馬

Ma ³

Horse.

拉

La ¹

To pull, drag.

屋

Wu ¹Room in a house.
House.

堆

Tui ¹Heap, pile, to pile
up.

掌

Chang ¹To control, palm
of hand.

櫃

Kuei ⁴Shop counter,
cupboard.

恭

Kung ¹

Reverence, offer.

發

Fa ¹To issue, to send,
to manifest.

財

Ts'ai ²

Wealth, riches.

綢

Ch'ou ²Manufactured
silk.

次

Tz'ü ⁴Inferior, second-
rate, next.

封

Fêng

Classifier of let-
ters, cover, seal,
envelope.

領

Ling ³

Receive, lead.

耐

Nai ⁴

Endure, bear.

久

Chiu ³

Old, long time.

未

Wei ⁴

Not yet.

Characters 701—720

免	Mien ³ Avoid, remit.	穿	Ch'uan ¹ To wear, to put on.
稍	Shao ² Somewhat, slight.	懶	Lan ³ Lazy, indolent, reluctant.
微	Wei ¹ Small, minute, slight.	蚊	Wên ² Mosquito.
便	P'ien ² Cheap. Pien ⁴ Convenient.	帳	Chang ⁴ Curtain, net for bed.
宜	I ² Right, suits, fits.	哪	Na ² A final particle.
雖	Sui ^{1 2} Supposing, though, even, still.	簾	Lien ² Curtain.
捨	Shê ³ Let go, relinquish.	輕	Ch'ing Light (in weight).
花	Hua ¹ To spend. A flower.	鋪	P'u ¹ To spread.
丈	Chang ⁴ Measure of length —about 10 English feet.	結	Chieh ² Solid, strong, reliable, real.
裁	Ts'ai ² To cut, to cut out, to plan.	縛	Ju ⁴ Mattress.

Characters 721-740

係	Hsi ⁴ Connected with, concern, in- volve.	暗	An, ⁴ Ngan ⁴ Dark, secret.
賬	Chang ⁴ Account, bill.	燈	Têng ¹ Lamp.
號	Hao ⁴ A mark, a sign, a name or style.	盞	Chan ³ Classifier of lamps.
皮	P'i ² Leather, skin.	亮	Liang ⁴ Bright, light.
擋	Tang ³ To resist, to ward off.	安	An, ^{1 4} Ngan ^{1 4} To fix, place. Rest, peace.
泥	Ni ² Mud, slush.	電	Tien ⁴ Electricity, light- ning.
舒	Shu ¹ Comfortable at ease.	枝	Chih ¹ Branch, classifier of candles, pens, etc.
興	Hsing ¹ Rise, prosper.	蠟	La ⁴ Wax.
夥	Huo ³ Assistant, band, company.	燭	Chu ² Candle.
計	Chi ⁴ To reckon, to cal- culate.	抖	Tou ³ To shake, shudder.

Characters 741—760

疊

Tieh⁴
To fold up, a fold.

炭

T'an⁴
Coal.

煤

Mei²
Coal.

爐

Lu,² Lou²
Stove, brazier.

隔

Ko²
Partition.

壁

Pi⁴
Screen, partition,
wall.

覺

Chüeh,² Chiao²
To feel, to be con-
scious of.

冷

Lêng³
Cold.

陽

Yang²
The sun, male
principle, south.

絨

Jung²
Wool, woollen.

牀

Ch'uang³
Bed, classifier of
blankets, etc.

躺

T'ang³
To recline, lie
down.

汗

Han⁴
Perspiration.

屜

T'i⁴
Drawer, in a
table, etc.

藥

Yao,⁴ Yo⁴
Drugs, medicines.

葯

As No. 755.

顆

K'o¹
Classifier of pills,
seeds, pearls,
etc.

滅

Mieh⁴
To put out, as a
lamp, etc. To
destroy.

睡

Shui⁴
To sleep, slumber.

澡

Tsao³
To bathe the
body.

Characters 761—780

添 T'ien¹
To add to, increase.

刮 Kua¹
To scrape, to shave.

乏 Fa²
Fatigued, tired.

温 Wên¹
Warm, mild, to warm up.

手 Shou³
Hand, hands.

城 Ch'êng²
The city.

活 Huo²
Living, Livelihood, lively.

程 Ch'êng²
Capacity; a journey, a career.

日 Jih⁴
Day, the sun.

挣 Chêng⁴
To earn.

勉 Mien³
To rouse oneself, make an effort.

衣 I¹
Clothing, to dress.

窟 K'u¹
Hole, cave.

窿 Lung³
Hole, cave.

衫 Shan¹
Shirt.

撻 Ch'ê²
To tear, rend, to fold.

厠 Ts'ê,⁴ Ssu⁴
Private, closet.

所 So³
A place, a cause.

歸 Kuei¹
Revert to, to belong to.

常 Ch'ang⁴
Usual, ordinary, constant.

Characters 781—800

馬

Ma³
Horse.

擦

Ts'a¹
To rub, polish.

銀

Yin²
Silver, money.

玻

Po¹
Glass.

璃

Li²
Glassware.

挂

Kua⁴
To hang up, to
suspend.

揮

Tan⁴
To dust, beat.

灰

Hui¹
Ashes.

塵

Ch'ên²
Dust, small par-
ticles.

鄰

Lin²
Neighbouring,
neighbour.

居

Chü¹
To dwell.

干

Kan¹
Concern.

究

Chiu⁴
To analyse, ex-
amine, to be
particular
about.

衛

Wei⁴
To guard, protect.

各

Ko⁴
Each, every, all.

妨

Fang¹
Hinder, obstruct.

碍

Ai,⁴ Ngai⁴
Hinder, stand in
the way.

礙

As No. 797.

抹

Mo³
To dust, polish,
rub with the
hand.

鏡

Ching⁴
Mirror.

Characters 801—820

切 Ch'ieh¹
All, everything.

括 Kua¹
To blow.

風 Fêng¹
The wind.

雨 Yü³
Rain.

簿 Pu⁴
Account book.

蛋 Tan⁴
Egg, egglike.

芋 Yü⁴
The taro and
other edible
tubers.

紅 Hung²
Red.

蘿 Lo²
Carrots.

蔔 Pei²
Carrots.

鴨 Ya¹
Duck.

野 Yeh³
Wild, rustic.

集 Chi¹
The fair, to gather
together.

落 Lo,⁴ Lao⁴
To come down, to
fall, as prices,
etc.

傷 Shang¹
To injure, to catch
(cold).

醫 I¹
To heal, cure.

剩 Shêng⁴
Remainder, left
over.

腦 Nao³
The brain.

欠 Ch'ien⁴
To be short, to
owe.

昏 Hun⁴
Confused.

Characters 821—840

普

P'u³
Universal.

池

Ch'ih²
Pool, pond.

題

T'i²
To mention, sub-
ject of dis-
course.

剛

Kang¹
Just now, just
then.

轎

Chiao⁴
A sedan chair.

騎

Ch'i²
To ride astride.

牲

Shêng¹
An animal, cattle.

步

Pu⁴
A step, pace, on
foot.

顛

Tien¹
Upset, jolting,
bumpy.

簸

P'o⁴
Winnow, used, of
the jolting
movement.

厲

Li⁴
Sharp, severe,
oppress.

害

Hai⁴
Hurt, injure.

傘

San³
Umbrella, parasol.

肯

K'ên³
Willing, prone to.

跑

P'ao³
To run, also to
walk (long dis-
tances).

旅

Lü³
Travel, journey.

館

Kuan¹
Hostel, hotel.

停

T'ing²
To halt, stop.

旁

P'ang²
By the side of,
near.

坑

K'êng¹
Pit, hollow.

Characters 841—860

館

As No. 837.

村

Ts'un¹
Village.

票

P'iao⁴
Ticket, voucher.

趟

T'ang⁴
Time, turn, track,
classifier of
trains.

餐

Ts'an¹
To dine, a meal.

炒

Ch'ao³
Fry, roast.

銅

T'ung²
Copper, copper
coins.

光

Kuang¹
Light.

景

Ching³
Circumstances,
prospect.

局

Chü²
Position, plan.

像

Hsiang⁴
Like, image.

變

Pien⁴
To change, alter.

運

Yün⁴
To transport,
move, revolve,
luck.

隊

Tui⁴
A company, as of
soldiers.

伍

Wu³
Rank of five, mili-
tary.

消

Hsiao¹
To disperse.

息

Hsi²
Breathe, interest,
news.

新

Hsin¹
New, recent,
fresh.

聞

Wên²
To hear, to smell.

靠

K'ao⁴
Rely, reliable
trust.

Characters 861—880

謠

Yao³
Lies, false.

戰

Chan⁴
Fight, war,
alarmed.

苦

K'u³
Bitter, sorrow.

極

Chi²
The extreme limit.

軍

Chün¹
Army, military
forces.

閥

Fa²
Rank, class.

擴

K'uo⁴
Expand, extend.

充

Ch'ung¹
To fill.

啲

Yo¹
An exclamation.

縣

Hsien⁴
District of ad-
ministration,
county town.

船

Ch'uan²
Boat, ship.

急

Chi²
Haste, urgent.

幸

Hsing⁴
Felicitous, fortu-
nate.

虧

K'uei¹
Lucky, luckily.

暈

Yün⁴
Dizzy.

慣

Kuan⁴
To be accustomed
to.

美

Mei³
Beautiful, admir-
able.

滋

Tzŭ²
Rich (in sense of
flavour).

味

Wei⁴
Taste, flavour.

穩

Wên³
Steady, firm,
secure, stable.

Characters 881—900

波

Po¹

Waves of the sea.

浪

Lang⁴

Waves of the sea.

騰

T'êng

To rise up, to mount.

搖

Yao²

To roll, as a ship.

騰

As No. 817.

海

Hai³

The sea, maritime, vast.

碼

Ma³

Docks, jetty.

希

Hsi¹

Hope, rare, few.

磚

Chuan¹

Brick.

牆

Ch'iang²

A wall.

轉

Chuan³

Revolve, to turn.

鑽

Tsuan¹

To bore, awl, gimlet.

俗

Su²

Common, vulgar.

語

Yü³

Words, language, proverb.

硬

Ying⁴

Hard.

思

Ssu¹

To think, to consider.

耳

Erh³

Ear.

朵

To³

Ear, pendant, classifier of pendent things.

聾

Lung²

Deaf, to be deaf.

睛

Ching¹

Eye, iris, pupil.

Characters 901—920

瞎

Hsia¹
Blind.

啞

Ya³
Dumb.

吧

Pa¹
Dumb.

胳膊

Ko¹
Arm.

臂

Pei⁴
Arm.

麻

Ma²
Hemp, numb.

摩

Mo²
To feel with the
hand.

裳

Shang²
Clothes.

胰

I²
Soap.

勁

Chin,⁴ Ching⁴
Strength.

棉

Mien²
Cotton, cotton
wool.

袍

P'ao²
Long gown.

襖

Ao,³ Ngao³
Outer gown, lined
coat.

戴

Tai⁴
To wear or carry
on the head.

遮

Chê¹
To cover, to
screen.

袖

Hsiu⁴
A sleeve.

掛

As No. 786.

襪

Wa⁴
Stockings, socks.

嗜

Shih⁴
Fond of, addicted
to.

髮

Fa³
The hair of the
head.

Characters 921—940

辮

Pien⁴

The queue, plait.

梳

Shu,¹ Su¹

A comb, to comb.

刷

Shua¹

A brush, to brush.

齒

Ch'ih³

Teeth.

扣

K'ou⁴

A button, to button.

指

Chih³

The fingers, to point.

保

Pao³

To guard, protect, preserve.

持

Ch'ih²

To preserve, hold, grasp.

盆

P'ên²

A basin, bowl, bath.

絹

Chüan⁴

A napkin, towel, handkerchief.

康

K'ang¹

Well, hale, hearty, peace.

健

Chien⁴

Sturdy, strong.

窮

Ch'iong²

Poor, poverty-stricken.

體

T'i³

The body, limbs, to sympathise.

恤

Hsü^{4 5}

Pity, to sympathise.

賙

Chou¹

To be charitable, to help.

濟

Chi⁴

To save, help, deliver.

訓

Hsün⁴

To teach, instruct.

守

Shou³

To keep, observe.

矩

Chü³

Rule.

Characters 941—960

聲
陰
賞
入
效
語
勸
向
求
竟

Shêng¹
Tone, voice,
repute.

Yin¹
Shady, secret. The
female prin-
ciple.

Shang³
Reward. Name of
second tone.

Ju⁴
To enter. Name
of entering tone.

Hsiao⁴
To imitate, copy.

Yü³
Words, a saying.

Ch'üan⁴
Exhort, encour-
age.

Hsiang⁴
Facing towards, to
or from.

Ch'iu²
To implore, to
seek after.

Ching⁴
Really, finally.

將
提
拔
室
漸
淡
待
態
改
緣

Chiang¹
To take, hold; a
leader.

T'i²
To mention, raise
a matter.

Pa²
Raise, help up.

Shih⁴
Room, house,
office.

Chien⁴
Gradually.

Tan⁴
Inspid, weak (as
liquids).

Tai⁴
To treat, to be-
have.

T'ai⁴
Behaviour, bear-
ing, attitude.

Kai³
To alter, to
change.

Yüan²
Cause, reason.

Characters 961—980

故

Ku⁴

Cause, reason.

厚

Hou⁴

Generous, thick.

薄

Po², Pao²

Mean, stingy, thin.

困

K'un⁴

Straitened, distressed.

減

Chien³

To reduce, diminish.

薪

Hsin¹

Fuel, firewood.

既

Chi⁴

Since, seeing that.

限

Hsien⁴

Limit, boundary.

謙

Ch'ien¹

Humble, modest.

育

Yü

Rear, nurture.

鎮

Chên⁴Market town,
mart, to guard.

倡

Ch'ang⁴

To lead.

畢

Pi⁴

To finish, end.

業

Yeh⁴Course, occupa-
tion, profession.

省

Shêng³

A province, frugal.

範

Fan⁴

Model, pattern.

莊

Chuang¹A farm, farm-
stead, the fields.

稼

Chia⁴Grain, crops, to
sow.

豐

Fêng¹Luxuriant,
flourishing.

靜

Ching⁴

Placid, calm.

Characters 981—1000

麥

Mai ⁴, Mo ⁴
Wheat.

米

Mi ³
Millet, grain in
general.

納

Na ⁴
To pay, to take,
to receive.

糧

Liang ²
Taxes, rations,
grains.

症

Chêng ⁴
Disease, ailments.

匪

Fei ³
Worthless, ban-
dits, rebels.

警

Ching ¹
Alarm, startle,
watch.

察

Ch'a ²
To examine, inves-
tigate.

察

Chih ²
Public office, ap-
pointment.

職

K'uei ⁴
Ashamed.

愧

模

Mu ², Mo ²
Model, pattern.

治

Chih ⁴
To cure, to treat
(medically, etc.)

介

Chieh ⁴
Introduce, an-
nounce.

紹

Shao ⁴
Introduce, hand
down.

益

I ²
Benefit, advan-
tage.

習

Hsi ²
Versed in, fami-
liar, practiced.

縱

Tsung ⁴
Although, lax.

遵

Tsun ¹
To accord with,
follow, obey.

命

Ming ⁴
A command. Fate.
Life.

興

Hsing ¹
Elated, rejoice.

Characters 1001—1020

跌

Tieh¹

To stumble, fall.

品

P'in³Sort, class, kind,
character.

脈

Mo⁴

The pulse.

疼

T'êng²

Pain, to be in pain.

配

P'ei⁴To mix, make up,
as medicines.

瀉

Hsieh⁴To purge, drain,
diarrhoea.

濃

Nêng², Nung²Thick, strong—of
liquids.

副

Fu⁴A dose. Classifier
of medicine
doses.

丸

Wan²

Pill, pills.

粉

Fên³Medicinal powder,
flour, meal.

脾

P'i²Spleen, disposi-
tion.

立

Li⁴To stand up, to
establish.

榜

Pang³

Example, pattern.

忍

Jên³

Endure, restrain.

麻

Ma²

Hemp.

煩

Fan²To trouble, annoy,
annoyance.

囉

Lo²Vexatious, annoy-
ance.

唆

So¹To incite, dis-
cord, mischief.

架

Chia¹Blows, squabble,
a frame.

衝

Ch'ung¹To clash, dash
against.

Characters 1021—1040

突	T'u ⁴ Rush against.	深	Shên ¹ Deep, profound, versed in.
吵	Ch'ao ³ Altercation, row, noise.	儒	Ju ² Confucian, learned.
嘴	Tsui ³ Lips.	割	Ko ¹ To cut.
驕	Chiao ¹ Proud, arrogant.	繩	Shêng ³ Rope, string, cord.
傲	Ao ⁴ , Ngao ⁴ Haughty, proud.	粗	Ts'u ¹ Coarse, rough, bulky.
卑	Pei ¹ Low.	斷	Tuan ⁴ To cut off, break.
耐	Nai ⁴ To endure, be patient, bear.	較	Chiao ³ To compare, to test, more than.
惹	Jo ³ To provoke.	絞	Chiao ³ To cut with scis- sors, twist, crosswise.
聰	Ts'ung ¹ Intelligent, under- standing, clever.	剪	Chien ¹ Scissors.
達	Ta ² Penetrate, inform.	鈍	Tun ⁴ Dull, blunt.

Characters 1041—1060

磨

Mo²To grind, rub,
mill.

由

Yu²

Reason, cause.

奇

Ch'i²Strange, wonder-
ful, rare.

怪

Kuai⁴Extraordinary,
unusual, to
blame.

章

Chang¹

Chapter, essay.

節

Chieh²

Verse, section.

頁

Yeh⁴Page, leaf of a
book.

導

Tao³

To lead.

諸

Chu¹

All.

觀

Kuan¹To look on, to
observe.

護

Hu⁴

To protect, guard.

擠

Chi³To crowd to-
gether, to press.

散

San⁴To scatter, dis-
perse.

彼

Pi³

That.

此

Tz'ü³

This.

讓

Jang⁴To concede, give
way, yield.

步

Pu⁴

A step, on foot.

退

T'ui⁴To retreat, retire,
move back.

脫

T'o¹To doff the hat,
take off
(clothes).

鞠

Chü²To bow, bend the
body.

Characters 1061—1080

躬

Kung¹

The body, person.

左

Tso³

Left.

右

Yu⁴

Right.

素

Su⁴Cardinal, funda-
mental, ordin-
ary.

食

Shih²

Food.

樞

Shu¹A pivot, axis, fun-
damental.

暖

Nuan³

Warm, genial.

飽

Pao³

Replete, full.

假

Chia²

Holiday.

鄉

Hsiang¹The country,
countryside,
rural.

頓

Tun⁴To stamp the foot,
a time.

野

Yeh³

Wild.

讚

Tsan⁴To praise, to com-
mend.

閃

Shan³

Flash, lightning.

響

Hsiang³Sound, echo. To
make a noise.

响

As No. 1075.

雷

Lei²

Thunder.

雪

Hsüeh^{3 5}

Snow.

霜

Shuang¹

Frost.

樹

Shu⁴

Tree.

Characters 1081—1100

河

Ho²
River.

湖

Hu²
Lake.

凍

Tung⁴
To freeze.

秋

Ch'iu¹
Autumn, harvest.

霧

Wu⁴
Mist.

緻

Chih⁴
Scenery, view.

坡

P'o¹
The slope of a hill.

廟

Miao⁴
Temple, fair.

塔

T'a³
Pagoda.

尚

Shang⁴
Still, yet, to
ascend, to be in
charge of.

佛

Fo²
Buddha.

蒼

Ts'ang¹
A fly.

蠅

Ying²
A fly.

螞

Ma³
An ant.

蟻

I³
An ant.

討

T'ao³
To beg, seek.

厭

Yen⁴
Dislike.

咬

Yao³
To bite.

駱

Lo⁴
Camel.

駝

T'o²
Camel.

Characters 1101—1120

騾

Lo²
Mule.

驢

Lü²
Donkey.

香

Hsiang¹
Fragrant.

抱

Pao⁴
To nurse, carry in
the arms.

背

Pei⁴
To carry on the
back.

挑

T'iao¹
To carry on a
pole on the
shoulder.

唱

Ch'ang⁴
To sing.

戲

Hsi⁴
Theatricals, play
on stage.

鬧

Nao⁴
Noise, bustle, dis-
turb.

趁

Ch'en⁴
Avail of.

湧

Yung³
To crowd or press
together.

擠

Chi³
To crowd to-
gether.

扛

K'ang⁴
To carry on
shoulder.

牽

Ch'ien¹
To lead a horse
by the bridle.

匹

P'i³
Classifier of
horses.

踩

Ts'ai⁴
To trample or
step on.

危

Wei¹
Dangerous.

險

Hsien¹
Dangerous.

金

Chin¹
Gold, metal

煉

Lien⁴
To refine.

Characters 1121—1140

瓜

Kua¹
Melon.

蓮

Lien²
The lotus.

遙

Yao²
Distant.

吹

Ch'ui¹
To blow.

疵

Tz'ü¹
A flaw, blemish.

救

Chiu⁴
To save, deliver.

近

Chin⁴
Near, to approach.

虎

Hu³
Tiger.

踏

T'a⁴
To step on, tread.

隻

Chih¹
Classifier of boots,
shoes, etc.

栽

Tsai¹
To plant.

乘

Ch'êng²
To avail of. To
ascend.

鳥

Niao³
Bird.

舊

Chiu⁴
Ancient, old.

謀

Mou²
To plan, devise.

貓

Mao^{2 1}
Cat.

死

Ssü³
Dead, to die.

鼠

Shu³
Rat, mouse.

善

Shan⁴
Good, virtuous. To
perfect.

惡

O⁴ Evil,
wicked, wrong.
Wu⁴
Hate, dislike.

Characters 1141—1160

報

Pao ⁴To announce, to
inform. A news-
paper.

閉

Pi ⁴To close, to stop
up.

石

Shih ²

Stone.

造

Tsao ⁴

To build, make.

插

Cha ¹

To stick in.

旗

Ch'i ²

Flag, banner.

桿

Kan ³

A staff, a pole.

影

Ying ³

Shadow, image.

行

Hsing ²

To walk, to do.

Hang ²

A store, shop.

滙

Hui ⁴To exchange
money.

郵

Yu ²To convey, postal
service.

政

Chêng ⁴Government, ad-
ministration.

內

Nei ⁴

Inside, within.

貼

T'ieh ¹To stick on, as
stamps.

祖

Tsu ³

Ancestors.

肚

Tu ⁴

stomach, belly.

餓

O ⁴

Hungry.

啤

P'i ²

Beer.

樂

Yo ⁴, Yüeh ⁴

Music.

廣

Kuang ³

Wide, broadcast.

Characters 1161—1180

播

Po¹

To spread abroad.

跳

T'iao⁴

To dance, jump.

舞

Wu³To posture,
brandish, dance.

累

Lei³

Tired, fatigued.

趣

Ch'ü⁴Interesting, amus-
ing.

輩

Pei⁴

Generation.

維

Wei²To maintain, or-
ganise.

族

Tsu²A clan, a tribe,
to collect to-
gether.

項

Hsiang⁴The nape of the
neck, an item.

原

Yüan²

A source, original.

私

Ssü¹

Selfish, private.

德

Tê²

Virtue, power.

投

T'ou²To hand in, sur-
render.

降

Chiang⁴

To descend.

抵

Hsiang²

To surrender.

抗

Ti³

To resist.

侵

K'ang⁴

To resist, oppose.

略

Ch'in¹

To invade.

被

Liao²

To plunder.

炸

Pei^{3 4}A coverlet, sign
of passive.Cha²To smash, ex-
plode.

Characters 1181—1200

彈	Tan ⁴ Bomb, bullet.	宣	Hsüan ¹ To proclaim.
壞	Huai ⁴ Ruin, destroy, spoil.	組	Tsu ³ To organise.
盟	Mêng ² Covenant, alli- ance.	織	Chih ¹ To weave.
勝	Shêng ¹ Victory, conquer.	聯	Lien ³ To connect, unite.
敗	Pai ⁴ Defeat, spoil.	陸	Lu ⁴ Dry land, six.
械	Chieh ⁴ Weapons.	議	I ⁴ To discuss, con- sult.
殘	Ts'an ² Injure, cruel.	複	Fu ⁴ Double.
暴	Pao ⁴ Violent, fierce, cruel.	雜	Tsa ² Confused, compli- cated.
受	Shou ⁴ To receive, suffer.	產	Ch'an ³ Property.
嚇	Hsia ⁴ Alarm, startle.	民	Min ² The people.

Characters 1201—1210

革

Ko²

To change, alter.

派

P'ai⁴Party, separate,
branch.

黨

Tang³Party, association,
faction.

眾

Chung⁴

All, a crowd.

楚

Ch'u²

Clear, sharp.

套

T'ao⁴A case, a wrap-
per, to harness.

朗

Lang³

Clear, bright.

班

Pan¹

A class, company.

武

Wu²

Military.

雹

Pao²

Hail.



HOW TO USE A CHINESE DICTIONARY
FROM THE RADICALS

HOW TO USE A CHINESE DICTIONARY FROM THE RADICALS

It has already been pointed out in the preceding Section that Chinese characters are readily analysed into two parts, Radical and Phonetic.

The Radicals number 214, while the number of Phonetics varies according to the predilection of the individual scholar. Soothill, as has already been noted, selects 888 to make up his Pocket Dictionary of Four Thousand Characters.

The list of Radicals is appended for the information of the student, and also to enable him to use it to find characters in any of the popular dictionaries designed to help the foreigner studying Chinese.

It will be noted that the Radicals are arranged in the order of the number of strokes of which they are composed.

The Radicals vary in importance according to the relative frequency with which they occur. It is desirable that the Radicals should be written out frequently and memorised, together with their number and meaning. The numbers are necessary, as dictionaries for foreign students are arranged on the principle of classifying characters under the Radicals in numerical order from 1 to 214.

In the list of Radicals appended the tones are indicated in the usual way, 1, 2, 3 and 4. But in addition another mark (*) is attached to some to indicate the fifth tone, or "Ju" shêng, to which reference is made in Dialogue 30. As the writer lived in Shansi province for eighteen years, where the "Ju" shêng is in common use, I have included this particular tone for the Radicals. The student will often find in text-books opinions expressed that the "Ju" shêng, in effect, is dying out, and that no

particular attention need be paid to it. But that is true only of certain provinces. If the student travels in the north and north-west he will hear the tone frequently used. In writing out the Chinese characters of this tone in Romanised it is usual to add an "h" to the end of the words.

A list of a few specimen characters from a dictionary is also appended, to enable the student to find characters in the dictionary from the Radicals.

First of all it is necessary to discover the Radical part of the character you wish to look up. If you have made yourself familiar with the 214 Radicals this should not present any serious difficulty. The bigger dictionaries, like Giles, give a list of characters, the Radicals of which are difficult to discover. Relatively speaking these are comparatively few.

The selected characters as appended all have Radical No. 61 in them. This is the "heart" Radical, and, as you will see, it is found in characters which express thought, emotions, personal characteristics and the like.

Notice that this particular Radical is written in three forms, only two of which, 心 and 忄, are illustrated. Notice further that the position of the Radical in the characters varies. It is sometimes at the left-hand side, sometimes at the bottom, and, in one instance, in the character "ai", 愛, to love, it is found, appropriately, at the very heart of the character.

Having found that the particular character for which we are hunting has the Radical "heart" as its root, we now count the number of strokes in the rest of the character. Note "in the rest of the character". You do NOT include the strokes of the Radical itself in your reckoning.

Take for example the first character on our selected list. It is the character "nu", 怒, anger. This has five strokes in it in addition to the Radical. So it is listed in the dictionary under the Radical No. 61, and

again under 5, the figure at the left-hand side of the character list. The same rule applies throughout.

Take another illustration from the character "k'ung", 恐, to fear. This character has six strokes in addition to the Radical, and so is listed under 6. "Wu", 懼 has seven, "hsi", 惜, has eight, and "I", 意, nine.

The numbers at the right-hand side of the character list refer to the numbers of the Phonetics, ranging from 1 to 888 in Soothill, under which the characters are classified again, with their meanings, and other characters with which they are commonly associated, making composite characters or phrases.

After the student has discovered the character from the Radical and number of strokes, he looks up the number on the right-hand side, in the body of the dictionary, and there he will find the meaning of the character and the way in which it is used.

With these illustrations and hints to guide him, the student should have no great difficulty in finding his way through a Chinese dictionary.

SPECIMEN CHARACTERS FROM SOOTHILL'S
DICTIONARY

5. 怒 553—Nu.⁴ Anger.
怕 804—P'a.⁴ Fear.
性 41—Hsing.⁴ Nature, temper, disposition.
思 379—Ssü.¹ Think on, ponder,⁴ thought.
怎 150—Tsên.³ How? what? why?
6. 恐 8—K'ung.³ To fear.
息 853—Hsi.² * Breath, sigh, interest, rest.
7. 悞 761—Wu.⁴ Neglect, hinder.
8. 惜 799—Hsi.¹ * Pity, spare, care for.
情 82—Ch'ing.² Feelings, passion for.
惡 247—O.⁴ Evil, wicked, low,* hate.
9. 意 91—I.⁴ Idea, intention, meaning, wish.
惹 182—Jo.³ Provoke.
愛 411—Ai.⁴ To love, to like.

LIST OF RADICALS

Arranged in order according to the number of strokes

1 Stroke

- | | | |
|----|---|---|
| 1. | 一 | I. ¹ * One, unity. |
| 2. | 丨 | K'un. ³ Downstroke. |
| 3. | 丶 | Chu. ³ A point, dot. |
| 4. | 丿 | P'ieh. ¹ * Stroke to left. |
| 5. | 乙 | I. ⁴ * One, second of ten stems. |
| 6. | 乚 | Chüeh. ² * A hook. |

2 Strokes

- | | | |
|-----|------|--|
| 7. | 二 | Erh. ⁴ Two. |
| 8. | 亠 | T'ou. ² Roof, cover. |
| 9. | 人。 | Jên. ² Man. |
| 10. | 儿 | Jên. ² Man, variant of 9. |
| 11. | 入 | Ju. ⁴ * Enter. |
| 12. | 八 | Pa. ¹ * Eight. |
| 13. | 冂 | Chiung. ³ Limits, boundaries. |
| 14. | 宀 | Mi. ⁴ * Cover, roof. |
| 15. | 冫 | Ping. ¹ Ice. |
| 16. | 几 | Chi. ¹ Table, stand. |
| 17. | 凵 | K'an. ³ Receptacle. |
| 18. | 刀。刂。 | Tao. ¹ Knife. |
| 19. | 力 | Li. ⁴ * Strength. |
| 20. | 勹 | Pao. ¹ To wrap. |
| 21. | 匕 | Pi. ³ Spoon, ladle. |
| 22. | 匚 | Fang. ¹ Basket, chest. |
| 23. | 匸 | Hsi. ³ Box, conceal. |

24. 十 Shih.²* Ten.
 25. 卜 Pu.³* To divine.
 26. 卩。巳。 Chieh.²* A seal.
 27. 厂 Han.⁴ A ledge, cliff.
 28. 厶 Ssu.¹ Private, selfish.
 29. 又 Tu.⁴ Again, also hand.

3 Strokes

30. 口 K'ou.³ Mouth.
 31. 口 Hui.² An enclosure.
 32. 土 T'u.³ Earth.
 33. 士 Shih.⁴ Scholar, officer.
 34. 久 Chih.³ A step, advance.
 35. 久 Sui.¹ Walk slowly.
 36. 夕 Hsi.²* Evening.
 37. 大 Ta.⁴ Great.
 38. 女 Nü.¹ Woman, female.
 39. 子 Tzu.³ Son, child.
 40. 宀 Mien.² A roof.
 41. 寸 Ts'un.⁴ An inch.
 42. 小 Hsiao.³ Small.
 43. 尢。兀。 允。 Wang.¹ Lamé.
 44. 尸 Shih.¹ A corpse.
 45. 屮 Ch'ê.⁴* A sprout.
 46. 山 Shan.¹ Hill.
 47. 川。 川。 Ch'uan.¹ Stream.
 48. 工 Kung.¹ Work.
 49. 己 Chi.³ Self.
 50. 巾 Chin.¹ Napkin.
 51. 干 Kan.¹ Shield.
 52. 么 Yao.¹ Small, tender.
 53. 广 Yen.³ Roof, cover.

54. 𠂔 Yin.³ To move on.
 55. 𠂔 Kung.³ Folded hands.
 56. 弋 I.⁴ * A dart.
 57. 弓 Kung.¹ A bow.
 58. 彘。𠂔。𠂔 Chi.⁴ Pig's snout.
 59. 𠂔 Shan.¹ Plumage, streaky.
 60. 𠂔 Ch'ih.⁴ * A step.

4 Strokes

61. 心。𠂔。𠂔 Hsin.¹ Heart.
 62. 戈 Ko.¹ A spear.
 63. 戶 Hu.⁴ Door, family.
 64. 手。𠂔 Shou.³ Hand.
 65. 支 Chi.¹ Branch.
 66. 支。𠂔 P'u.¹ To tap, rap.
 67. 文 Wên.² Literature, ornament.
 68. 斗 Tou.³ A peck.
 69. 斤 Chin.¹ Catty, axe.
 70. 方 Fang.¹ Square.
 71. 无。𠂔 Wu.² Not, without.
 72. 日 Jih.⁴ * Sun, day.
 73. 曰 Yüeh.⁴ * To say.
 74. 月 Yüeh.⁴ * Moon, month.
 75. 木 Mu.⁴ * Wood, tree.
 76. 欠 Ch'ien.⁴ To owe, short of.
 77. 止 Chih.³ To stop.
 78. 歹。𠂔 Tai.³ Bad.
 79. 殳 Shu.¹ Pole-axe, kill.
 80. 毋 Wu.² Do not!
 81. 比 Pi.³ Compare.
 82. 毛 Mao.² Hair.
 83. 氏 Shih.⁴ Family, clan.

84. 气 Ch'i.⁴ Breath, vapour.
 85. 水。𣶒。氷。 Shui.³ Water.
 86. 火。𤇀。 Huo.³ Fire.
 87. 爪。𠂇。 Chao.³ Claws.
 88. 父 Fu.⁴ Father.
 89. 爻 Yao.³ Crosswise, intertwine.
 90. 引 Ch'iang.² Frame, bed.
 91. 片 P'ien.⁴ A slip, strip.
 92. 牙 Ya.² Tooth.
 93. 牛 Niu.² Ox.
 94. 犬。𤝵。 Ch'üan.³ Dog.

5 Strokes

95. 玄 Hsüan.² Dark, obscure.
 96. 玉。王。 Yü.⁴ * Gem, jade.
 97. 瓜 Kua.¹ Melon, gourd.
 98. 瓦 Wa.³ A tile.
 99. 甘 Kan.¹ Sweet.
 100. 生 Shêng. Beget, live.
 101. 用 Yung.⁴ Use.
 102. 田 T'ien.² Field.
 103. 疋 P'i.³ * A roll of cloth.
 104. 疒 Ni.⁴ * Sick, disease.
 105. 𠂇 Po.⁴ * Back to back.
 106. 白 Pai.² White.
 107. 皮 P'i.² Skin.
 108. 皿 Min.³ Dish, platter.
 109. 目。𠂇。 Mu.⁴ * Eye.
 110. 矛 Mao.² Halberd, lance.
 111. 矢 Shih.⁴ Arrow.
 112. 石 Shih.² * Stone.
 113. 示。示。𠂇。 Shih.⁴ To indicate.
 114. 内 Jou.³ * Track, a step.

115. 禾 Ho.² Growing grain.
 116. 穴 Hsüeh.⁴ A cave, hole.
 117. 立 Li.⁴ * To stand.

6 Strokes

118. 竹 Chu.² * Bamboo.
 119. 米 Mi.³ Rice.
 120. 糸, 纟 Ssu.¹ Mi.⁴ * Raw silk
 121. 缶 Fou.³ Earthenware.
 122. 网, 罟 Wang.³ A net.
 123. 羊 Yang.² Sheep.
 124. 羽 Yü. Feather, wing.
 125. 老 Lao.³ Old.
 126. 而 Erh.² And, yet.
 127. 耒 Lei.³ A plough.
 128. 耳 Erh.³ Ear.
 129. 聿 Yü.⁴ * Pencil, brush.
 130. 肉, 月 Jou.⁴ * Flesh.
 131. 臣 Ch'ên. A Statesman.
 132. 自 Tzu.⁴ Self, from.
 133. 至 Chih.⁴ Reach to.
 134. 臼 Chiu.⁴ A mortar.
 135. 舌 She.² * The tongue.
 136. 舛 Ch'uan.³ Oppose, contradict.
 137. 舟 Chou.¹ Boat.
 138. 艮 Kên. Perverse, limit.
 139. 色 Sê.⁴ * Colour.
 140. 艸, 艹 Ts'ao.³ Grass, herbs.
 141. 虎 Hu.¹ Tiger.
 142. 虫 Ch'ung.² Insect, reptile.
 143. 血 Hsüeh.³ * Blood.
 144. 行 Hsing.² To go, to do.

145. 衣。衣。I.¹ Clothes.

146. 西。西。Hsi.¹ West.

7 Strokes

147. 見 Chien.⁴ See.
 148. 角 Chio.² * Horn, corner.
 149. 言 Yen.² Words, to speak.
 150. 谷 Ku.³ * Valley, gully.
 151. 豆 Tou.⁴ Beans, platter.
 152. 豕 Shih.³ Pig, swine.
 153. 豸 Chai.⁴ Reptile.
 154. 貝 Pei.⁴ Precious, cowrie.
 155. 赤 Ch'ih.⁴ * Flesh colour, red, naked.
 156. 走 Tsou.³ Walk.
 157. 足 Tsu.² Foot, enough.
 158. 身 Shên.¹ Body.
 159. 車 Ch'e.¹ Cart, coach.
 160. 辛 Hsin.¹ Bitter, pungent.
 161. 辰 Ch'ên.² Time.
 162. 走。走。Cho.¹ * To advance, run.
 163. 邑。邑。I.⁴ City, district.
 164. 酉 Yu.³ New wine, ripe.
 165. 采 Pien.⁴ Separate, discern.
 166. 里 Li.³ A Chinese mile.

8 Strokes

167. 金 Chin.¹ Metal, gold.
 168. 長。長。Ch'ang.³ Long.
 169. 門 Mên.² Door.
 170. 阜。阜。Fou.⁴ A mound.
 171. 隸 Tai.⁴ Reach to.
 172. 隹 Chui.¹ Short-tailed birds.

173. 雨 Yü.³ Rain.
 174. 青 Ch'ing.¹ Green, blue sky.
 175. 非 Fei.¹ Wrong, not.

9 Strokes

176. 面 Mien.⁴ Face.
 177. 革 Ko.² * Hides.
 178. 韋 Wei.² Leather, thong.
 179. 韭 Chiu.³ Leeks.
 180. 音 Yin.¹ Sound.
 181. 頁 Yeh.⁴ * A page.
 182. 風 Fêng.¹ Wind.
 183. 飛 Fei.¹ To fly.
 184. 食 Shih.² * To eat.
 185. 首 Shou.³ Head.
 186. 香 Hsiang.¹ Scent, fragrance.

10 Strokes

187. 馬 Ma.³ A horse.
 188. 骨 Ku.³ * Bone.
 189. 高 Kao.¹ High.
 190. 髟 Piao.¹ Hair.
 191. 鬥 Tou.⁴ Strife.
 192. 鬯 Ch'ang.⁴ Aromatic herbs.
 193. 鬲 Li.⁴ Cauldron, tripod.
 194. 鬼 Kuei.³ Spirit, demon.

11 Strokes

195. 魚 Yü.² Fish.
 196. 鳥 Niao.³ A bird.
 197. 鹵 Lu.³ Rock, salt.

198. 鹿 Lu.⁴ * Deer.
199. 麥 Mai.⁴ Wheat.
200. 麻 Ma.² Hemp.

12 Strokes

201. 黃 Huang.² Yellow.
202. 黍 Shu.³ Millet.
203. 黑 Hei.¹ Hê. Black.
204. 黻 Chih.³ Embroidery.

13 Strokes

205. 黽 Min.³ Frog.
206. 鼎 Ting.³ Tripod.
207. 鼓 Ku.³ Drum.
208. 鼠 Shu.³ Rat.

14—17 Strokes

209. 鼻 Pi.⁷ Nose.
210. 齊 Ch'i.² Uniform, all.
211. 齒 Ch'ih.³ Teeth.
212. 龍 Lung.² Dragon.
213. 龜 Kuei.¹ Tortoise.
214. 龠 Yo.⁴ * Flute, pipe.



INDEX TO CHINESE CHARACTERS
ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED

AI	733 盞	1022 吵	484 盛	251 七
20 哎	862 戰		547 稱	354 期
319 嫖	CH'AN	CHÊ	766 城	362 其
402 愛	1199 產	108 這	768 程	433 棋
797 碍	CHANG	186 者	1132 乘	537 器
798 礙	37 張	915 遮	CHI	543 齊
AN	689 掌	CH'Ê	77 給	597 淇
731 暗	709 丈	623 車	85 幾	655 豈
735 安	714 帳	776 捲	262 紀	656 戚
	722 賬	CHÊN	289 機	826 騎
AO	1045 章	93 眞	329 基	1043 奇
913 襖	CH'ANG	435 針	431 己	1146 旗
1025 傲	181 場	436 鍼	493 記	CHIA
CHA	259 長	971 鎮	504 濟	30 家
1145 插	292 常	CH'ÊN	572 記	149 加
1180 炸	457 敞	789 塵	578 雞	220 傢
CH'A	780 常	1110 趁	730 計	266 甲
42 茶	972 倡	CHÊNG	813 集	424 駕
223 叉	1107 唱	358 正	864 極	601 咖
320 差	CHAO	542 整	872 急	626 價
988 察	612 找	770 掙	937 濟	978 稼
CHAI	633 照	985 症	967 既	1019 架
648 責	637 趙	1152 政	1052 擠	1069 假
CHAN	CH'AO	345 爭	333 寄	CHANG
216 站	447 潮	CH'ENG	CH'I	92 獎
	846 炒	252 承	73 氣	243 醬
		307 成	78 沏	336 講
			202 起	

421 匠	1046 節	364 致	1177 侵	CH'IU
951 將	1186 械	501 至		405 球
1174 降	CH'IEH	737 枝	CHING	949 求
	801 切	926 指	201 京	1084 秋
CH'IAN	347 且	989 職	375 經	
674 强	CHIEN	992 治	479 井	CH'IUNG
890 墻	61 見	1086 綴	529 淨	933 窮
	255 賤	1130 隻	800 鏡	
CHIAO	491 件	1193 織	849 景	CHO
17 呌	932 健	CH'IH	900 晴	55 着
326 教	955 漸	65 喫	910 勁	231 棹
407 脚	965 減	226 匙	950 竟	232 桌
618 椒	1039 剪	555 尺	980 靜	CHOU
747 覺	CH'IEN	822 池	987 警	936 賙
825 驕	120 鉛	924 齒		CH'OU
1024 驕	204 錢	928 持	CH'ING	170 抽
1037 較	335 前		32 請	669 酬
1038 絞	342 千	CHIN	208 情	694 綢
	475 鉗	33 進	258 清	CHU
CHIEH	622 籤	103 盡	717 輕	347 助
185 街	819 欠	193 今		53 住
207 借	969 謙	205 緊	CHIU	497 煮
310 結	1114 牽	381 近	45 就	581 猪
571 界	CHIH	545 斤	337 九	664 主
610 戒	12 知	910 勁	607 酒	739 燭
620 芥	142 紙	1119 金	634 舊	1049 諸
638 姐	248 只	CH'IN	699 久	343 注
719 結	347 之	299 親	793 究	CH'U
993 介			1126 救	213 厨

276 處	512 重	CHÜEH	230 放	277 府
357 初	1204 眾	407 脚	796 妨	291 夫
462 出		747 覺		297 父
1205 楚	CH'UNG		FEI	396 伏
	868 充	CHÜN	287 非	534 咐
CHUAN	1020 衝	865 軍	288 飛	647 負
467 轉			472 費	666 服
889 磚	CHÜ	ERH	602 啡	1008 副
	219 句	51 兒	986 匪	1197 複
CH'UAN	221 具	62 二		
711 穿	671 據	897 耳	FÊN	HAI
871 船	791 居		159 分	311 孩
	850 局	FA	374 份	832 害
CHUANG	940 矩	128 法	533 吩	886 海
488 裝	1060 鞠	446 發	1010 粉	
977 莊		763 乏		HAN
	CH'Ü	866 閱	FÊNG	285 漢
CH'UANG	14 去	920 髮	325 奉	286 旱
442 窗	461 取		449 縫	753 汗
751 牀	1165 趣	FAN	696 封	
		67 飯	803 風	HANG
CH'UI	CHÜAN	339 繙	979 豐	1149 行
1124 吹	166 捲	340 翻		
	306 眷	976 範	FO	HAO
CHUN	930 絹	1016 煩	1091 佛	34 好
416 準				723 號
	CH'ÜAN	FANG	FU	HÊN
CHUNG	318 犬	146 方	19 福	132 很
81 中	474 全	214 房	256 甫	
380 鐘	947 勸			
511 種				

HO	469 匣	199 鞋	HSIU	1082 湖
46 喝	566 狹	515 歇	417 修	1128 虎
145 和	901 睛	1006 瀉	452 鏽	HUA
463 合	1190 嚇	HSIEN	513 休	44 話
470 盒	HSIANG	23 先	916 袖	708 花
659 何	316 相	137 現	HSIUNG	HUAI
1081 河	468 箱	401 閒	269 兄	673 壞
HOU	477 向	437 線	HSÜ	HUAN
211 候	518 想	438 綫	272 虛	69 還
423 後	662 詳	615 鹹	351 須	141 歡
962 厚	851 像	870 縣	388 許	527 換
HSI	1070 鄉	968 限	935 恤	HUANG
118 西	1075 響	1118 險	HSÜAN	240 黃
140 喜	1076 响	HSIN	1191 宣	HUI
304 惜	1103 香	104 心	HSÜEH	50 會
514 息	1169 項	368 新	97 學	57 回
536 席	1174 降	668 信	1078 雪	788 灰
538 洗	HSIAO	966 薪	HSÜN	1150 滙
663 細	271 小	HSING	938 訓	HUN
721 係	532 曉	26 姓	HU	309 婚
888 希	856 消	131 行	161 壺	820 昏
996 習	945 效	209 形	443 戶	HUNG
1108 戲	279 校	353 星	617 胡	808 紅
HSIA	HSIEH	728 興	1051 護	HUO
234 下	40 謝	873 幸		70 或
394 夏	139 寫			
	153 些			

168 火	JÊN	K'AI	860 靠	757 顆
683 貨	7 人	456 開	KÊN	KOU
729 夥	420 認	KAN	130 跟	244 夠
767 活	649 任	47 敢	680 根	K'OU
I	1014 忍	195 幹	K'ÊN	5 口
2 一	JIH	392 趕	834 肯	925 扣
76 以	769 日	528 乾	KÊNG	KU
96 易	JO	792 干	225 羹	502 雇
101 意	1028 惹	1147 桿	265 庚	583 骨
370 藝	JOU	K'AN	393 更	961 故
385 已	576 肉	15 看	K'ÊNG	K'U
516 椅	JU	KANG	840 坑	495 苦
705 宜	576 肉	172 鋼	KO	562 褲
772 衣	720 縛	487 缸	109 個	773 窟
816 醫	944 入	824 剛	645 哥	KUA
909 胰	1032 儒	K'ANG	745 隔	762 刮
995 益	JUNG	931 康	795 各	786 挂
1095 蟻	95 容	1113 扛	904 胳膊	802 颯
1196 議	750 絨	1176 抗	1033 割	917 掛
JAN	KAI	KAO	1201 革	1121 瓜
506 然	415 改	135 告	K'O	KUAI
JANG	428 概	267 高	3 課	1044 怪
526 讓	480 蓋	K'AO	72 客	K'UAI
JÊ	628 該	237 烤	75 可	143 塊
584 熱			391 刻	

246 筷	990 愧	595 啦	183 裏	654 臉
293 快	KUN	686 拉	279 離	716 簾
KUAN	681 棍	738 蠟	282 里	1120 煉
119 管	K'UN	LAI	355 禮	1122 蓮
444 關	964 困	21 來	541 俐	1194 聯
837 館	KUNG	LAN	546 釐	LIN
841 館	290 工	712 懶	604 梨	598 淋
876 慣	296 共	LANG	636 力	790 鄰
1050 觀	323 公	317 郎	785 璃	LING
K'UAN	691 恭	882 浪	831 厲	300 令
565 寬	1061 躬	1207 朗	1012 立	341 零
KUANG	K'UNG	LAO	LIA	540 伶
434 逛	389 恐	398 勞	188 倆	614 另
848 光	517 空	520 老	LIANG	697 領
1160 廣	KUO	814 落	171 兩	LIU
K'UANG	66 過	LEI	549 量	212 六
448 框	82 國	1077 雷	550 糧	490 留
660 誑	242 果	1164 累	585 涼	LO
KUEI	548 裹	LÊNG	624 輛	465 螺
25 貴	K'UO	748 冷	734 亮	809 蘿
410 規	867 擴	LI	LIAO	814 落
690 櫃	LA	27 李	35 了	1017 囉
779 歸	360 腊	74 理	564 料	1099 駱
K'UEI	361 臘	182 裡	1178 略	1101 騾
874 虧			LIEN	LOU
			641 憐	499 樓

744 爐	184 賣	MIAO	1003 脈	NEI
LU	981 麥	1088 廟	1041 磨	1153 內
283 路	MAN	MIEH	MOU	NÊNG
573 錄	414 慢	758 滅	1135 謀	418 能
744 爐	485 滿	MIEN	MU	1007 濃
1195 陸	MANG	238 麪	298 母	NI
LUN	217 忙	379 面	332 牧	106 你
625 論	MAO	701 免	338 目	173 呢
LUNG	174 毛	771 勉	450 木	726 泥
18 隆	197 帽	911 棉	991 模	NIAO
774 隆	654 貌	MIN	NA	1133 鳥
899 龔	1136 貓	1200 民	59 那	NIENT
LÜ	MEI	MING	154 拿	125 唸
608 呂	144 墨	192 明	715 哪	261 年
836 旅	373 每	260 名	983 納	NAI
1102 驢	644 妹	999 命	599 奶	NIN
MA	743 煤	MO	698 耐	254 您
31 嗎	877 美	68 沒	NAN	NIU
613 媽	MÊN	112 麼	99 難	589 牛
685 馬	4 門	144 墨	275 南	NO
887 碼	122 們	359 末	312 男	679 挪
906 麻	MÊNG	799 抹	NAO	NUAN
1094 媽	1183 盟	907 摩	818 腦	1067 暖
MAI	MI	981 麥	1109 鬧	
179 買	982 米	991 模		

NUNG	582 排	P'AO	661 碰	704 便
1007 濃	1202 派	41 泡		852 變
NÜ	PAN	569 跑	PI	921 辦
314 女	322 辦	912 袍	88 敵	P' IEN
O	345 半	PEI	121 筆	71 偏
1140 惡	498 搬	80 備	350 必	588 片
1157 餓	1208 班	156 盃	395 避	704 便
PA	P'AN	157 杯	567 比	P'IN
22 吧	229 盤	200 北	746 壁	603 蘋
102 把	650 盼	810 荷	973 畢	1002 品
294 八	PANG	905 臂	1054 彼	PING
630 罷	218 幫	1026 卑	1142 閉	98 並
953 拔	1013 榜	1105 背	P'I	445 病
P'A	P'ANG	1166 輩	724 皮	596 冰
249 怕	839 旁	1179 被	1011 脾	600 餅
PAI	PAO	P'EI	1115 匹	P'ING
281 百	239 包	426 陪	1158 啤	177 瓶
356 拜	305 寶	665 佩	PIAO	278 平
557 白	927 保	1005 配	377 表	603 蘋
611 擺	963 薄	P'EN	P'IAO	PO
1185 敗	1068 飽	113 本	843 票	593 菠
P'AI	1104 抱	P'ÊN	PIEH	784 玻
411 牌	1141 報	929 盆	160 別	881 波
412 拍	1188 暴	P'ÊNG	PIEN	963 薄
	1210 雹	175 朋	494 邊	1161 播

P'O	678 色	SHÊN	334 士	1138 鼠
574 破		111 甚	382 視	
830 簾	SHAI	376 身	454 試	SHUA
1087 坡	678 色	1031 深	464 式	371 耍
			510 拾	923 刷
PU	SHAN	SHĒNG	551 石	SHUANG
11 不	399 山	24 生	639 識	198 雙
352 補	775 衫	484 盛	667 失	1079 霜
530 布	1074 閃	553 升	919 嗜	
559 步	1139 善	817 剩	954 室	SHUI
805 簿		827 牲	1065 食	8 誰
	SHANG	885 贍		151 水
P'U	89 上	941 聲	SHOU	759 睡
605 葡	324 商	975 省	268 壽	
718 鋪	815 傷	1034 繩	509 收	SHUO
821 普	908 裳	1184 勝	594 熟	43 說
	943 賞		765 手	
SAI	1090 尙	SHIH	939 守	SO
460 塞		10 是	1189 受	451 鎖
	SHAO	86 時		486 所
SAN	163 燒	94 實	SHU	1018 唆
107 三	227 勺	110 什	114 書	SSŭ
833 傘	349 少	180 市	264 數	155 四
1053 散	702 稍	226 匙	397 暑	215 司
	994 紹	245 十	594 熟	367 思
SAO		247 使	727 舒	466 絲
507 掃	SHĒ	303 世	922 梳	777 廁
SÊ	590 舌	321 事	1066 樞	1137 死
460 塞	707 捨	333 師	1080 樹	

1171 私	1129 踏	TANG	524 堯	TIEH
SU	TAI	48 當	732 燈	228 磔
136 訴	206 帶	725 擋	T'ÊNG	741 疊
328 穌	554 袋	1203 黨	883 騰	1001 跌
893 俗	676 歹	T'ANG	1004 疼	T'IEH
922 梳	914 戴	302 堂	TI	1154 貼
1064 素	957 待	372 糖	I 第	TIEN
SUAN	T'AI	577 湯	60 的	116 典
505 算	64 太	752 躺	270 弟	150 點
SUI	148 台	844 趟	348 地	632 店
263 歲	503 抬	TAO	1175 抵	736 電
365 隨	958 態	13 道	T'I	829 顛
706 雖	TAN	87 到	406 踢	T'IEN
SUNG	378 但	222 刀	419 替	191 天
58 送	386 耽	250 倒	670 提	496 甜
609 宋	646 擔	1048 導	754 屨	761 添
TA	787 揮	T'AO	823 題	TING
83 大	806 蛋	606 荀	934 體	196 頂
403 打	956 淡	1096 討	TIAO	308 訂
1030 達	1181 彈	1206 套	525 掉	422 定
T'A	T'AN	TÊ	T'IAO	473 釘
63 他	439 談	56 得	224 調	T'ING
194 她	440 譚	1172 德	523 條	127 聽
1089 塔	535 毯	TÊNG	1106 挑	531 廳
	742 炭	54 等	1162 跳	672 挺

838 停	TS'A	TSAO	TSU	1029 聰
TIU	782 擦	482 早	1155 祖	TU
521 丟	TSAI	760 澡	1168 族	38 都
TO	29 在	1144 造	1192 組	126 讀
236 多	49 再	TS'AO	TS'U	273 度
898 朶	1131 栽	257 草	619 醋	330 督
			682 粗	1156 肚
T'O	TS'AI	TSÊ	TSUAN	T'U
315 托	91 才	648 責	892 鑽	455 塗
652 妥	169 柴	TS'Ê	TSUI	591 土
1059 脫	563 材	777 廁	425 最	1021 突
1100 駝	586 菜	TSÊN	657 罪	TUAN
	640 猜	210 怎	1023 嘴	539 端
TOU	693 財			675 短
38 都	710 裁	TSO	TSUN	1036 斷
552 斗	1116 睬	39 坐	301 尊	TUI
592 豆	TSAN	123 作	998 遵	52 對
740 抖	1073 讚	124 做	TS'UN	688 堆
T'OU	TS'AN	190 昨	556 寸	854 隊
344 頭	845 餐	413 座	842 村	
458 偷	1187 殘	1062 左	TSUNG	T'UI
1173 投	TSANG	TS'O	476 總	587 腿
	489 髒	134 錯	997 縱	1058 退
TSA	TS'ANG	TSOU	TS'UNG	TUN
187 咱	1092 蒼	203 走	400 從	1040 鈍
1198 雜				

1071 頓	WAI	558 文	579 羊	1097 厭
TUNG	519 外	713 蚊	749 陽	YIN
84 懂	WAN	764 溫	YAO	331 音
117 東	138 完	859 聞	133 要	408 因
366 冬	158 碗	880 穩	453 鑰	522 蔭
500 動	233 晚	WO	755 藥	783 銀
1083 凍	343 萬	9 我	756 葯	942 陰
T'UNG	369 玩	WU	861 謠	YING
295 統	1009 丸	189 五	884 搖	274 英
471 筒	WANG	235 午	1098 咬	627 應
483 桶	28 王	387 誤	1123 遙	895 硬
642 通	284 往	658 無	YEY	1093 蠅
847 銅	404 網	684 物	178 也	1148 影
229 同	492 忘	687 屋	327 耶	YO
TZŭ	651 望	855 伍	441 夜	384 約
115 字	WEI	1085 霧	812 野	453 鑰
129 子	313 位	1163 舞	974 業	755 藥
430 自	409 爲	1209 武	1047 頁	756 葯
643 姊	700 未	YA	YEN	869 約
878 滋	703 微	36 呀	147 硯	1159 樂
TZ'ŭ	794 衛	621 牙	152 研	YU
695 次	879 味	811 鴨	164 煙	6 有
1055 此	1117 危	902 啞	165 烟	176 友
1125 疵	1167 維	YANG	383 眼	241 汕
WA	WÊN	162 樣	616 鹽	1042 由
918 韞	253 問	167 洋	631 言	1063 右
			677 顏	

1151 郵

217 又

YUNG

16 用

95 容

1111 湧

YÜ

79 預

363 餘

544 於

580 魚

804 雨

807 芋

894 語

970 育

YÜAN

100 願

280 遠

478 園

508 院

960 緣

1170 原

315 圓

YÜEH

90 月

635 越

1159 樂

YÜN

853 運

875 暈

